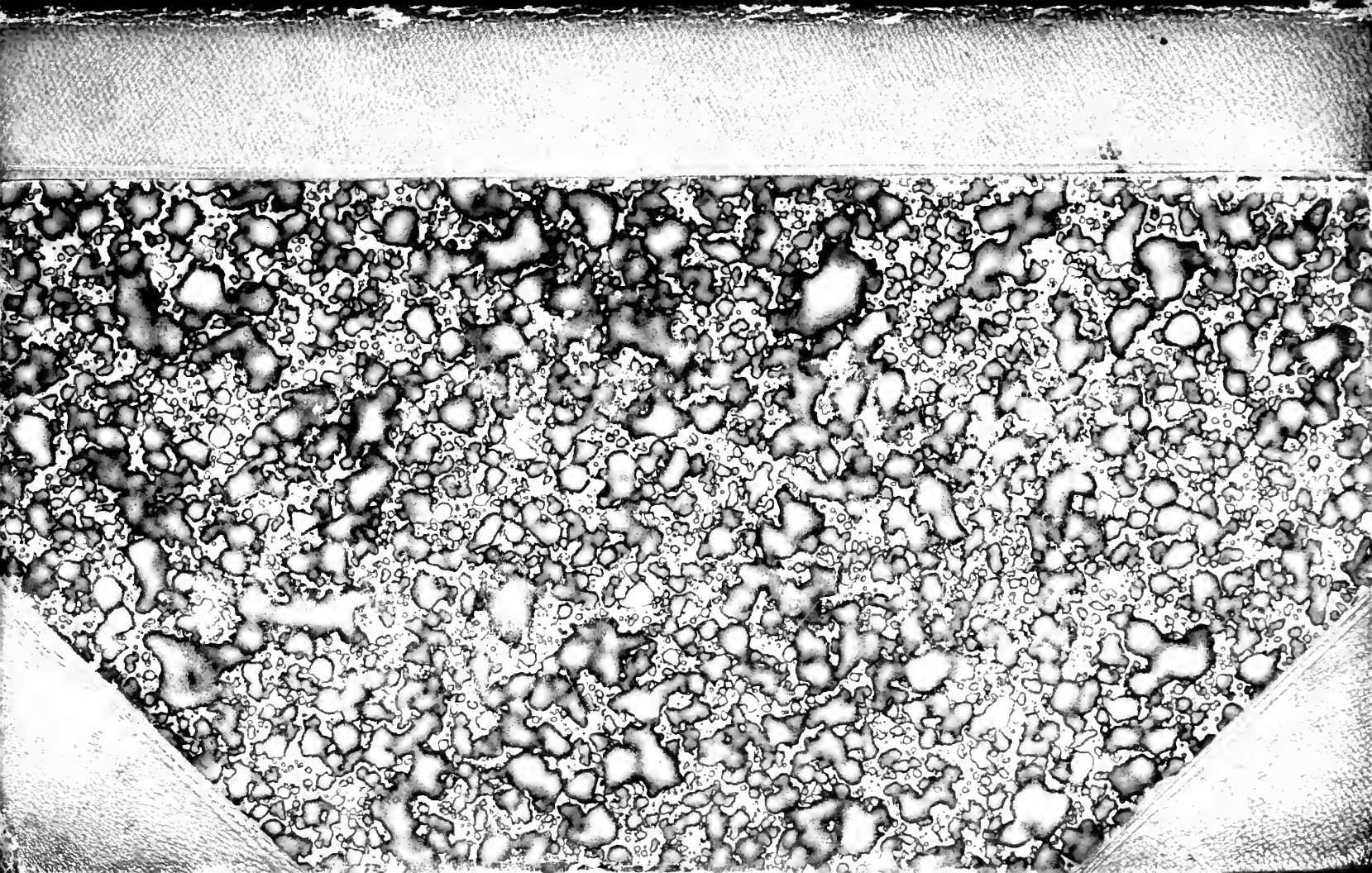
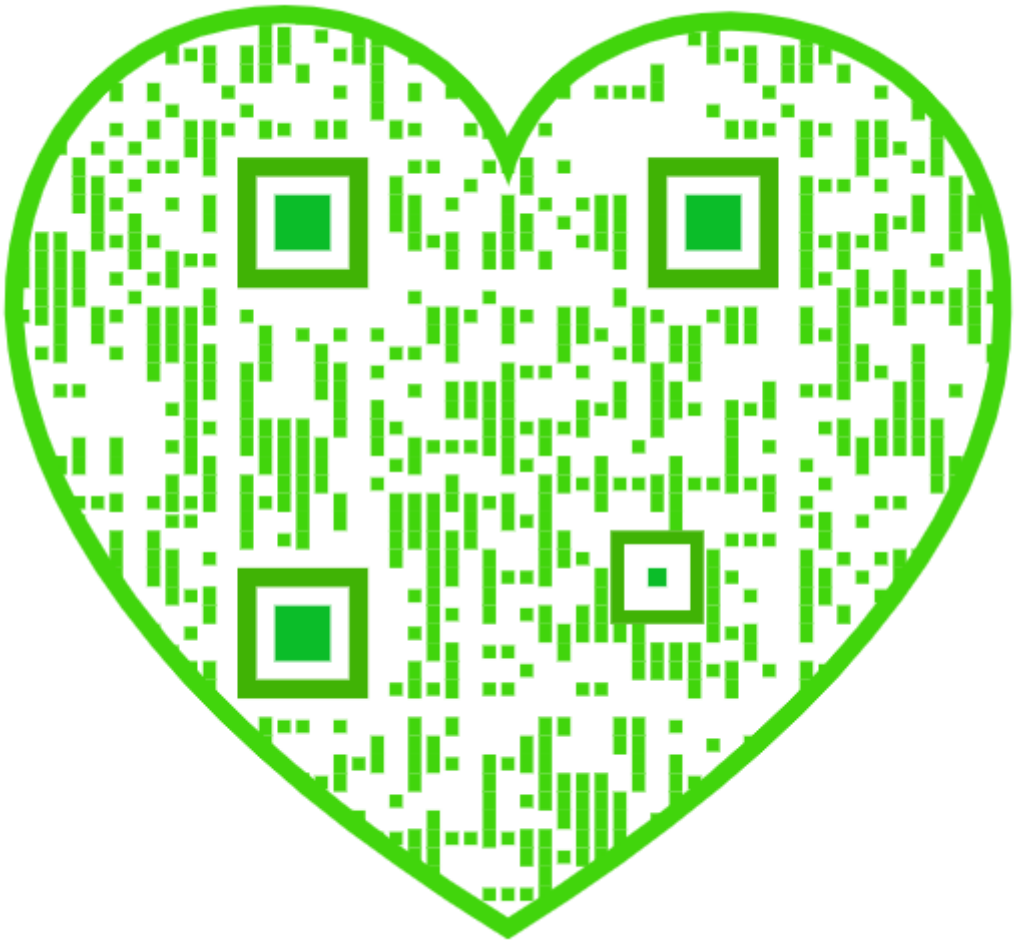
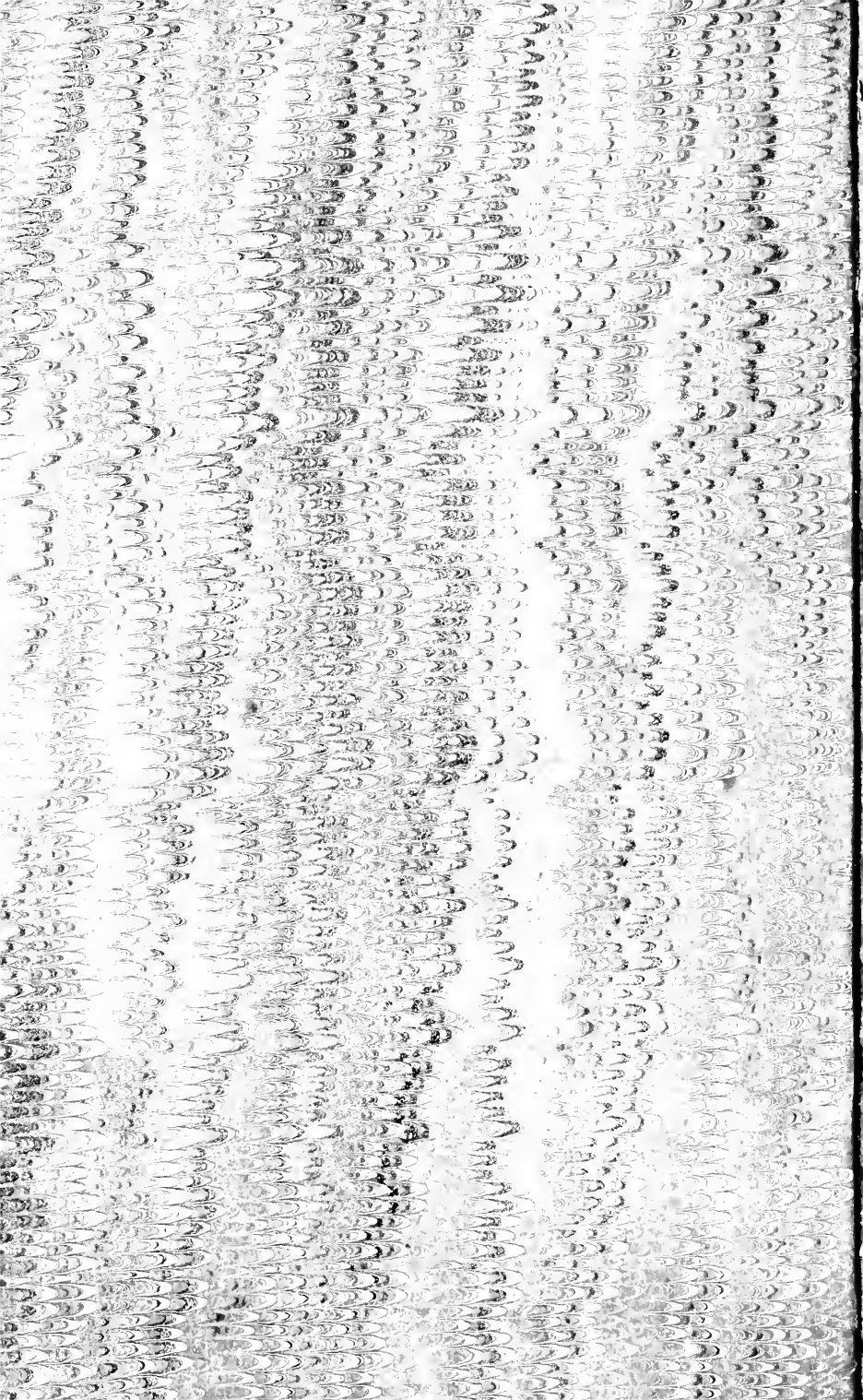
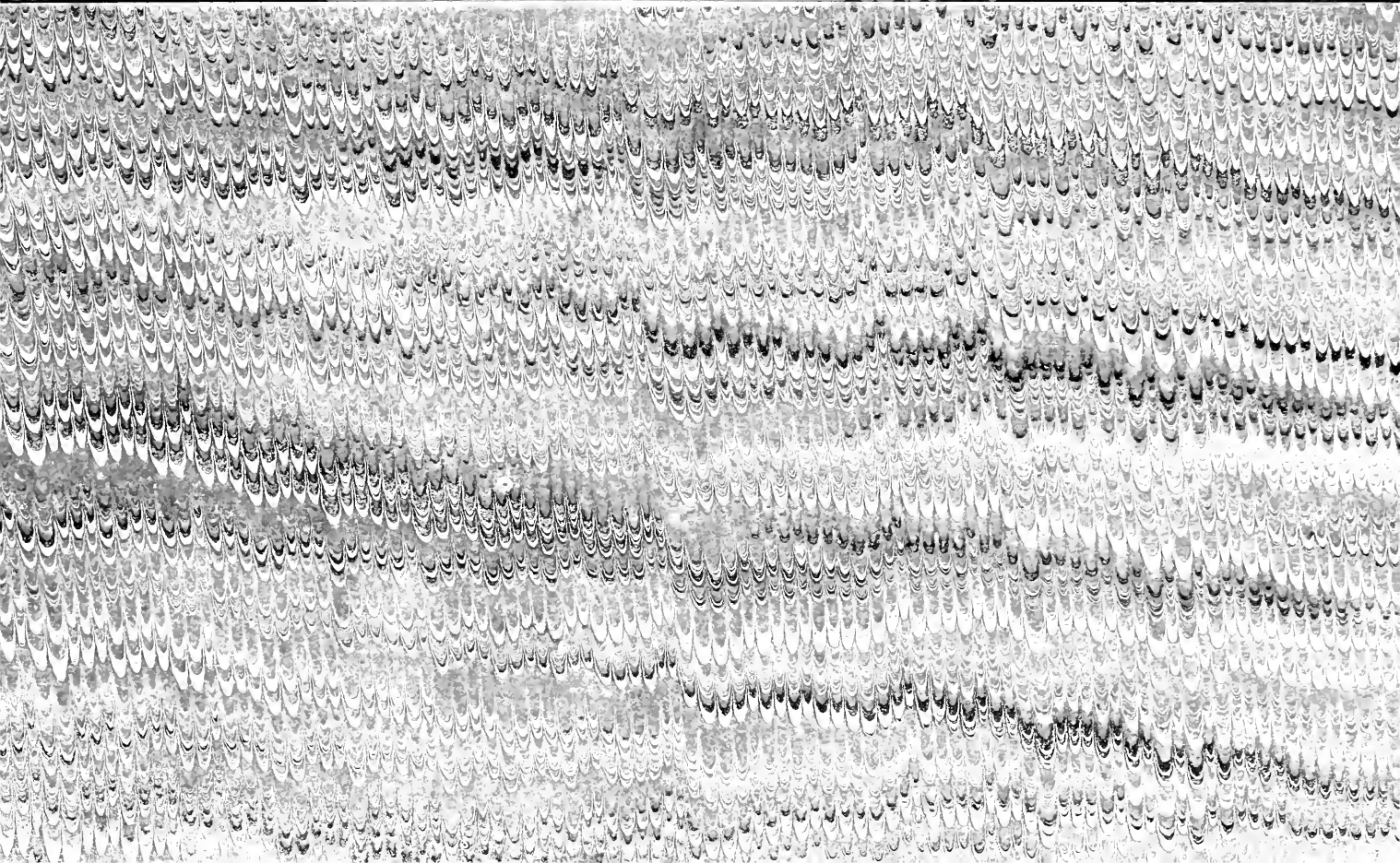








A TREATISE

ON THE

CARE, TREATMENT, AND TRAINING

OF

THE ENGLISH RACE HORSE.

R B Forbes Jr
The Slices East Milton Nov 85

A TREATISE

ON THE

CARE, TREATMENT, AND TRAINING

OF THE

ENGLISH RACE HORSE:

IN A

SERIES OF ROUGH NOTES.

BY

RICHARD DARVILL, V. S.

LATE OF THE 7TH HUSSARS.

IN TWO VOLUMES.

VOL. I.

SECOND EDITION.

LONDON:
PUBLISHED BY JAMES RIDGWAY, 169, PICCADILLY.
1840.

LONDON:
BLATCH AND LAMPERT, PRINTERS, GROVE PLACE, BROMPTON.

DEDICATED, BY PERMISSION,

TO THE

NOBLEMEN AND GENTLEMEN

OF THE

JOCKEY CLUB.

TO THE

MEMBERS OF THE JOCKEY CLUB.

MY LORDS AND GENTLEMEN,

DEEPLY impressed with gratitude for the honor you have conferred, by permitting me to dedicate to the Members of the Jockey Club, the first, or introductory part of my Work, on Training the English Race-Horse, I avail myself of that permission, satisfied that none can so well appreciate any merit which it may possess.

The early part of my life was passed in the employ of persons versed in Racing, and I should indeed feel proud, could my humble endeavours add to the art so highly patronised by you.

In the present Volume, I have promulgated those

ideas on the subject, which were imbibed in youth, and matured at a more advanced age, by long and serious reflection. Should I have succeeded in attaining the object of my wishes and ambition, it is only from you, who will fairly judge of my exertions, that I can hope for approbation. Others, I will admit, might have treated the subject with more ability; but I am confident that none can have the science of Horse Racing more truly at heart than he who has the honour to subscribe himself,

My Lords and Gentlemen,

Your most obliged

And very humble Servant,

R. DARVILL.

Jan. 1838.

CONTENTS.

Introduction iii

CHAPTER I.

On the Stables, &c. 21

CHAPTER II.

On Gentlemen's private Training Stables . . . 70

CHAPTER III.

On Ventilation 77

CHAPTER IV.

On the Distemper 82

CHAPTER V.

On Food 90

CHAPTER VI.

On Water 101

CHAPTER VII.

On Physic 107

CHAPTER VIII.

On Physic (continuation) 129

CHAPTER IX.

On Clothing, &c. 155

CHAPTER X.

On Training Ground 182

CHAPTER XI.

On the Race Course 201

CHAPTER XII.

On Saddle-horse Grooms, and Boys 217

CHAPTER XIII.

On Training Grooms, and Exercise Boys . . . 228

CHAPTER XIV.

On Dressing Race Horses 238

CHAPTER XV.

On the size of different Reins 248

CHAPTER XVI.

On Riding a Craving Horse in his Sweat . . . 253

CHAPTER XVII.

On Riding a Free-going Horse in his Sweat . . . 259

CHAPTER XVIII.

On Riding a Flighty Horse in his Exercise and Sweat . 270

CHAPTER XIX.

On the Pull and Hustle 274

CHAPTER XX.

On the Duties of the Head Lad 283

CHAPTER XXI.

On the Duties of Public and Private Training Grooms and Jockeys 285

CHAPTER XXII.

On the Treatment of Horses' Feet, and on Shoeing . . 290

CHAPTER XXIII.

On Plating Race-horses 328

CHAPTER XXIV.

On Breaking Racing Colts 347

INTRODUCTION.

It may appear strange to my readers, and I confess it has appeared so to me, that, among the numerous works which, from time to time, have issued from the press, on the nature and general treatment of Horses, no treatise should have been given on the TRAINING of the English Race-horse. Such an omission, I am convinced, could not have arisen from an unbelief in the importance attached to the subject; it may, I think, be rather attributed to a conscious deficiency in practical knowledge among authors, who, in other respects, might be competent to the task.

The training of race-horses at the establishments at Newmarket, and at various other well-conducted race-horse stables, has long since been ranked as a science, and it may, perhaps, be said to have attained perfection. Yet the public are comparatively unacquainted with the manner in which that noble animal, the race-horse, is brought into the admirable condition in which he is exhibited at the post.

The secresy observed by training grooms (and which is highly necessary) in the management of their horses, as well in the feeding and working of them, as in attending to their different tempers and constitutions, and to the nature and length of the ground on which they are either to exercise or run, would appear almost incredible. Indeed, so remarkable is this, that it is quite impossible for any one who has not been brought up in racing stables, even to form a correct idea of the discipline and precision observed.

I beg, however, that it may be understood, I do not presume to write for the information of such training grooms as are found in the stables above-mentioned. These men enter the stables at an early period of life; and if they have been so fortunate as to have been under training grooms of experience and sound judgment,—and if they have made their observations correctly,—nothing can exceed their practical knowledge. Should, however, any part of the following work be found to contain information that may be deemed acceptable by trainers in high practice, I shall be extremely happy.

My readers are aware, that of late years, it has been the custom with many gentlemen, belonging to different hunts about the country, to make up races for the purpose of running their horses in the spring, at the conclusion of the hunting season. Some of these gentlemen, from the good opinion they may have formed of the breed and speed of their hacks,

have been induced to enter them in hack-stakes; and where there have been conveniences for the purpose, such horses have generally been trained at home, by hunting or saddle-horse grooms. I have known some gentlemen who, from the attention they have paid to their horses during the hunting season, have considered themselves judges of their condition; and from this circumstance, have now and then been induced to superintend the training of their hunters or hacks. Other gentlemen, who have not entertained quite so good an opinion of their own knowledge in this particular have wisely sent their horses to regular training stables; whilst others, again, have, on similar occasions, kept their horses at home, and have confided the entire management of them to their hunting or saddle-horse grooms.

It is for the information of such gentlemen and their grooms, that this work is principally undertaken; and although I have adhered, or rather shall adhere, strictly to the practical rules and regulations of training thorough-bred horses, yet the line may be drawn so as to enable hunting grooms (aided by the experience they have had) to train either half-bred or thorough-bred horses, and to bring them into a much more fit state to race, than, as far as I have generally perceived, they are in the habit of doing.

But I will just remark, that whenever gentlemen have their horses engaged to run in a match of any importance,—when the powers of the horses may be deemed nearly equal, or when they may have been

brought to that point by the weights to be put up;—or more particularly, if such horses should be entered to run for public money at any of the annual meetings, where they would, of course, have to meet horses trained by regular trainers, whose practical knowledge must naturally surpass that of a hunting groom,—it would be advisable, under such circumstances, for gentlemen to send their horses in due time to regular training stables to be got ready to run, unless they keep a private training groom of their own; not only because men in high practice of training are better judges of the art, but because they have more convenient stables, and good riding boys, with proper ground to work their horses on.

Before I proceed further, it may be well to give some little account of myself, to enable my readers to judge of the opportunities I have had of becoming acquainted with the art which forms the subject of the following treatise. This I deem necessary, as it might otherwise appear rather extraordinary that a person holding the appointment of Veterinary Surgeon in His Majesty's Service should possess the knowledge requisite to write upon the training of race-horses. From the brief account, however, which I propose giving of the early part of my life, it will appear that the experience I possess was acquired in the ONLY school where it could by possibility be obtained, namely,—in THE STABLES, in which such horses are kept.

When between thirteen and fourteen years of age,

I was disposed to ramble, and not choosing to follow the advice of my parents, or to subject myself any longer to their control, I ran away from home, and was shortly after taken into the employment of Mr. Crooke, who kept race-horses. Mr. Crooke had a farm at Redland, in Gloucestershire, at which place his horses usually wintered. There was also at this season of the year, a large breeding establishment for racing produce. The stallions which at that time composed part of the stud were *King Fergus*, *Aurelius*, and a third young stallion by Highflyer. There were also a number of brood mares and foals, together with several weanlings and yearlings. The string of race-horses which were at this time in the stables, were *Prizefighter*, *Brush*, *Harvest*, *Needle*, *Victory*, *Euphrosyne*, and *Thalia*, (the two last mares.) Besides these, there were two or three young ones in the string, which were not named.

It was autumn when I went to live in the above-mentioned stables, in the humble but active capacity of stable boy. I had every thing to learn, and as I could not be immediately entrusted with the care of a race-horse, I was taught, or rather ordered, to do those things in which boys are generally employed on first coming into stables of this description,—such as merely rubbing the legs of the horses, assisting in setting the stables fair, and in cleaning up the yard. Sometimes I was sent out with a horse to walking exercise, to work off his physic,—at other times, I had to ride a steady one at the tail of the string,—and now and then, I had

to attend to the head of a quiet horse, while he was undergoing the operation of being scraped and rubbed after his sweat.

There being, as I have already observed, a breeding establishment here, other duties besides those of the race-horse stables were required; and these were discharged between the stable hours—such as carrying hay and corn to the different paddocks, filling the water troughs, cutting carrots for the mares and foals, leading out some yearlings, and breaking and forwarding others for their trials. In this way, by order of the groom, were the boys daily employed; and I, of course, had my share of such parts of this drudgery to which I was equal.

Progressively advancing from one thing to the other, until the approach of spring, I became of rather more importance, being then ordered by the groom (who was master of the boys) to look after a race-horse, and ride him in his exercise—two things which, for a boy to be well acquainted with, so as to put the groom's orders into practice (particularly the riding), are no very easy tasks. From the directions, however, which were given to me by the head lad, and from the observations I had made on the manner in which other boys performed their parts, I in a short time became acquainted with the whole of my duties as a stable boy; and with the rest of this young tribe, I was soon initiated in all the little, low, mischievous tricks and gambling amusements, to which boys in racing stables were, in my time, so much addicted.

When, however, I left my stable companions, I had the good sense to discontinue all such improper practices.

In the above-mentioned stables, at the period of my life of which I am speaking, and at which particular time impressions on the expanding mind of youth become permanent, was I taught that experience, which nothing but such a situation could have afforded; and from this source, as also from subsquent residence in different stables, under various grooms, I have derived the practical information I possess on the subject. Without such opportunity at this early period of my life, I could never have acquired the information which I am now in a situation to communicate; and as far as my talent for observation went, I may say that I lost very few opportunities, either as boy or head lad, of obtaining all the knowledge which the circumstances afforded.

As I approached the state of manhood, I began to think that I had lived quite long enough under the immediate control of different grooms. Being aware that the daily system of working and feeding race-horses was invariably conducted on the same general principles, differing only in application according as the tempers and constitutions of the horses varied; and finding that I had nothing more to learn, I left the training stables, and shortly afterwards engaged myself as groom to a single gentleman, who kept some well-bred horses as hunters. One or two of these were now and then engaged to run in the spring at such gentle-

men's races as I have already mentioned. When my master's horses were thus engaged, the training of them was entrusted to me; and at times, on the same ground with other horses with which they had to come to post. It was, therefore, natural to suppose, that when out at exercise, I should quietly make my observations on the treatment of horses which were to be opposed to those under my care. Having so recently left the stables, in which the practical details of training horses were at all times most strictly observed by the grooms, whose orders were daily to be put into practice by the different stable boys; and having been employed for several years in executing such orders, I had not forgotten how horses were to be treated when in training; and from the way in which I now saw many hunting and saddle-horse grooms working their horses when at exercise, I was quite satisfied that they were far from being well qualified for the task of getting them into racing condition.

Meeting these men every day at morning and evening exercise, I became known to some of them. They confessed that they were unacquainted with the system of training horses to run, and they invited me to go with them to their stables. I visited two or three of these stables at different stable hours, and from the observations I there made, I will do these grooms the justice to say, that nothing could exceed their diligence and attention to the horses in dressing them, &c. and in other respects; their fault indeed was excess. They appeared equally zealous in endeavouring to make their

horses as comfortable as possible. Judging from what I saw, the masters of these men were not sparing of expence, as there seemed to be an ample supply of the best food and clothing, so that an inexperienced observer would naturally have concluded that no horses could be more properly treated. But, as I have already observed, these grooms, from their ignorance of the practical principles of training, wanted confidence in themselves; and from such deficiency, I have known them bring horses out very unfit to run.

When I had attained the age of thirty, I left the stables, as the gentleman with whom I was living at the time was going abroad; and as I had then no inclination to leave England, I gave up my situation as groom. A horse belonging to the above gentleman having fallen lame at this period, it was thought advisable to send him for recovery to the Veterinary College, to which place I took him. Observing here a large establishment for the treatment and cure of diseased horses, and having heard so much of the value of the Veterinary Art, I asked Mr. Sewell (who had just been questioning me relative to the horse I had brought in) whether I could be admitted into the College as a pupil—to which he replied in the affirmative; observing, at the same time, that men of a similar description to myself were the most fit persons to become Veterinary Surgeons. Such information as was necessary at the moment Mr. S. very kindly gave me. He also named the amount of the entrance fee, which I immediately paid; and I remained in the College as a

pupil for about two years, after which, I passed my examination and received my diploma.

From the expence I had incurred in passing through the College, I found, on looking into my finances, that they were not in the most flourishing state; so that there was no chance of my being able to enter upon my profession, nor did it appear that there was any thing left for me but to return to my former situation as groom. I therefore began to look out for a place of this description; thinking that as I had received my diploma from the Veterinary College, I should be considered a valuable acquisition to a nobleman or gentleman who might have a large establishment of horses. But here, to my great astonishment, I was disappointed; for, after seeing several noblemen and gentlemen on the subject, I found that what I thought would have been an advantage to me, proved quite the reverse. I was considered by those noblemen and gentlemen as being of too great importance to be taken into the stables again. This produced great embarrassment in my mind; and as I have already noticed, not having it in my power to set up in my profession, I began almost to despair of obtaining the means of supporting myself even with that degree of respectability which I had formerly enjoyed when a groom, prior to my entering the College.

As I was one day walking in London, brooding over my ill-fortune, I accidentally met Major-General Sir Hussey Vivian, then Lieutenant-Colonel of the 7th Hussars, who knew me when I was acting in the capacity of

groom to an officer of that regiment. As the General had often spoken civilly to me, I took the liberty of mentioning to him that I had passed the College, and was in want of a situation. He immediately asked me if I had any objection to enter the Army as a Veterinary Surgeon. I told him, that if he thought me equal to the post, I should be very glad to accept of it, and that I should feel obliged to him if he would interest himself in my favour. The General promised to mention the subject to the Marquis of Anglesea (then Lord Paget), to whom I was also known. Indeed, prior to my going into the College, his Lordship had been pleased to notice me on several occasions; in short, he had been extremely kind to me, and when I was mentioned by General Vivian as a proper person to become a Veterinary Surgeon in his Lordship's regiment, he was pleased to approve of the proposal, and I was immediately recommended to His Royal Highness the Commander in Chief. I shortly after received my appointment, and an order from Mr. Coleman, principal Veterinary Surgeon, to join the 7th Hussars.

Having now got into a far more respectable situation—that of Veterinary Surgeon in His Majesty's Service—my mind became immediately occupied with my new profession; and for my own interest and reputation, I persevered in endeavouring to obtain that practical knowledge which I conceived indispensably necessary, in order properly to treat the diseased horses of the regiment which were entrusted to my care. My

mind being thus engaged for some years, I had given up all thoughts respecting the management and condidition of race-horses, until the year 1815; at which time, the regiment, in which I have still the honour to serve, was on foreign service, forming part of the British Army of Occupation on the Continent. Horse-racing being one of the great sporting amusements of Englishmen, it soon became the order of the day among many of the British Officers of the Army of Occupation, both at Valenciennes and at St. Omer, during the stay of our Army in France. The subscriptions of the officers were liberal, and the plates and stakes which were made by them were thought worth winning; so much so, that race-horses were sent for from England: and during the last year of the Army's being stationed on the continent, I think I shall not exaggerate if I say, that altogether there were not less than from thirty to forty race-horses (cock-tails and hacks), in training at one time, on a heath called the Bruyere, near the town of St. Omer. On this heath was made a pretty good two-mile race-course, with a stand, a rubbing-house, and other conveniences.

As it was known to the officers of the regiment to which I belonged, that in the early part of my life I had been brought up in the stables, it also soon became known to several of the officers of other regiments; and those of them who had horses engaged to run, often applied to me for information how they were to get their horses into a fit state for the race; nor do I hesitate to acknowledge, that from my having so long

left the stables, I was asked questions, some of which I was at the moment at a loss to answer. Observing this to be the case, I was immediately led to think, that the training of horses properly was a much more important art than I had at first imagined; and although I had been so perfectly well acquainted with the entire management of feeding and working horses, I was surprised to find, (what I thought was impossible,) that the practical part of the subject appeared to be almost obliterated from my memory; but a circumstance, which I shall here relate, put me in a train of soon bringing the matter to my recollection.

One day, as I was riding from the race-course to St. Omer, I was met by General Vivian, who spoke to me on the subject of getting out a horse from England to run at St. Omer races, observing, at the same time, that he was unacquainted with the business of training, nor did he think his groom competent to undertake the management of a horse intended for this purpose; adding, that if he got a horse out, he might be beat for want of being properly prepared. As I had some years previous to this time trained a horse for the General, he asked me, in case he should succeed in getting one out to run, whether, as I was quartered so near the course, I would superintend his training? Aware that the hours of attending to a horse in training would not interfere with my regimental duties, and that there were several other officers doing pretty much the same thing, I told the General, that if my commanding officer had no objection, I

should be most happy to attend to his wishes in this respect. Indeed, I was delighted in having an opportunity of convincing the General, that I was not ungrateful for the kindness I had long ago experienced at his hands. I assured him I would do all in my power to bring his horse to post in the best possible condition; and, if I was successful, it would be very gratifying to my feelings. General Vivian immediately sent to England for a horse, and a brown gelding (a cock-tail), named *Lustre*, was sent out to him; and shortly after that, another, a chesnut mare, was also sent out, named *Momentilla*, and both of them were placed under my care to be trained.

Having these two horses to get ready to run, and one or two other stables now and then to superintend, I began to regret the loss of that practical knowledge I formerly possessed, and which my change of situation had for so many years deprived me of the opportunity of cultivating. This was a circumstance which brought me to think very seriously, not only of what I had undertaken, but, also, how it was to be effected. Calling to mind, however, the regularity of the stables, and the treatment adopted in the working of different horses standing at such stables as I had been accustomed to live in, I speedily regained confidence, and soon began to understand tolerably well what I was about; and by carefully attending to the different constitutions and tempers of the horses under my care, I cautiously put in practice that treatment by which I

thought I should be most likely to bring them into a fit state to run.

It was at the time of my getting horses ready to run on the same ground with others with which they were engaged, that I again observed great irregularities practised by grooms belonging to different officers, who were entrusted with the training of their masters' horses.

The treatment generally adopted by these men, (an instance or two excepted), in the working of their horses, amounted, although, I believe, not intentionally, to little less than downright abuse. The hours of their arrival and departure to and from the exercise ground, were, by many of them, often badly timed; and the unreasonable length and pace at which some of them went with their horses in their gallops and sweats, appeared to me, from the daily observations I made, to be but ill-adapted, either to the constitutions or tempers of the horses under their care, or indeed, of any others. Some of their horses were to be seen running away, and thereby laming themselves; others throwing their riders, and going home to their stables. Indeed, all such accidents may be expected to take place in the preparing of horses to run, when they are entrusted to the care of persons who are totally unacquainted with the regular method of training them. So ignorant, indeed, of this subject are some grooms, that at the commencement of the business, they never once think of the conveniences necessary for the purpose—such as proper stables on or near to such ground

as may be fit to work horses on. During my stay in France, I recollect being informed of an instance of two horses being what was called *trained* in an orchard of three acres in extent; and the men who were riding them at their exercise, were at least twelve stone each. These horses were exercised in this orchard for several weeks, although there was tolerably good ground at a distance of about a mile and a half from the stable; nor were these horses brought to the course until about three weeks before they had to come to post.

I will here mention one more instance of improper management in the training of a horse to run. One evening, after the conclusion of a day's running, I was asked by a gentleman to go with him to his stable to look at a horse of his, which was to run the next day. The same horse had been under my care to be trained some months previous to this time; I was therefore aware that there was some nicety required in *setting* him. As we were riding towards the stable, I was led to talk to the owner on the subject; and he, to my great astonishment, informed me that the horse was then on the muzzle, and that he did not intend to have any food or water given to him until his race was over on the following day. I said but little, but confess I was much surprised, as the owner of the horse was considered, and in my opinion, justly considered, by those who knew him, to be a clever man. He had been in the habit of keeping horses the greater part of his life. The horse in question having two miles to walk to the course, I recommended that, to a

certain extent, he should be indulged both in food and water at proper intervals, up to the period of his coming out of the stable to run.

Now, those of my readers who may be experienced in the training of horses, will at once see the folly of such absurd, or I may say, such cruel treatment as was here intended to be carried into effect. No matter what description of horse it may be, as to constitution or temper,—as to the length he may be going to run,—the distance he may have to walk to the course, or the time of day he is to start; —there is no one circumstance with which I am acquainted, that would make it requisite to keep a horse for eighteen or twenty-four hours, without food or water; and more particularly, one that could bear but little *setting*, which was the case in the present instance.

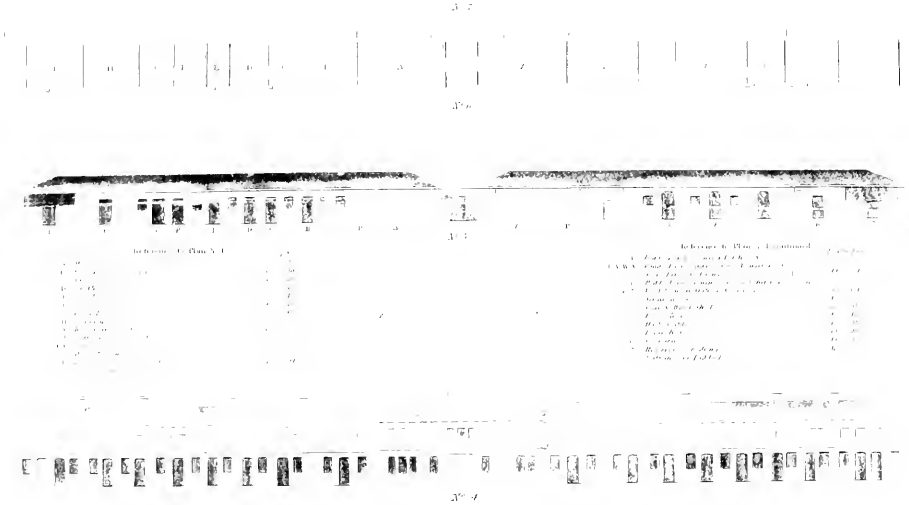
Where horses are pretty equally matched, there can be but very little chance for those which have been badly trained, to win against others which have been moderately well-trained; for, even in the inferior sort of training which takes place among hunting and saddle-horse grooms, some men's ideas are superior to others on this, as on other subjects; and in a race, the best horse may be easily beat for want of being equally well prepared to run, according to his constitution, with those opposed to him.

It was from such examples of abuse as I have

described, and others of a similar nature, and also from my often being asked by gentlemen, if there was no book published on the Treatment and Condition of Race-horses, that I was first induced to turn my thoughts on writing a Treatise of this kind. With this view, I have minutely studied every particular circumstance, relative to the subject, or that is connected with it; but to what extent I may have succeeded, in bringing this first part of the Art of Training Race-horses into a correct and regular system, I must leave to that portion of the public, who are competent to judge of the practical instructions here attempted.

In this *first* part of my work, I have stated many minute circumstances, which, although apparently of little value, will, in their general application, be found to be of the highest consequence; and the rules which I have laid down, will, I trust, appear so just and simple in their principles, and the explanations which accompany them, so clear, that grooms who are able to read, may, by a frequent reference to them, and by a particular attention to the minute circumstances to which I have alluded in this first part, and to which I shall also refer in the second, gain a perfect acquaintance with the whole economy of training stables, and with the most correct and proper method of training such horses as may be entrusted to their care. By gaining such knowledge, I hesitate not to say, that they will

not only become good and efficient grooms, but what should be the leading object of their ambition, they will, by their increased skill and acquirements, provide the highest gratification to themselves, and yield the greatest advantage to their employers.



A TREATISE,

&c.

CHAPTER I.

ON THE STABLES, ETC.

When horse-racing first commenced in this country I imagine it must have been introduced by noblemen and gentlemen of fortune, who kept their race-horses as they did their hounds, as a part of their sporting establishment, and who occasionally ran them for different public prizes, as much probably for the amusement it afforded, as for the value or honor of the prize they might win. I believe there are some *few* noblemen and gentlemen, who still maintain their racing studs much upon the above mentioned principles; but if we take a view of horse-racing upon the general scale of the present day, we shall find that it

is now followed by many thousands in the different ranks of life, rather as a business of a deep speculation. Where there are such enormous sums of money depending on the result of any great stakes, or heavy match, we ought to bear in mind that no pains which promise any chance of success should be spared, nor any accommodation that might in any way be advantageous to horses in training, should ever be lost sight of. The first object to which I shall direct the attention of my readers is that of *Training Stables.*

Although I have lived in different stables, I never remember to have seen any that I could consider in every respect as being perfectly complete. It is, however, a matter of importance, as well for the health and comfort of the horses, as for the convenience of the training groom and his boys, that proper stables should be provided for race-horses to stand in, not only during the time of their training, but also during the winter, at which period of the year many of them are out of training. There are tolerably good stables, both public and private, at Newmarket, and at many other places where race-horses are trained. Trainers know how stables should be constructed, for the purpose of carrying on their business with facility; yet there are some of these stables so very badly arranged with regard to convenience, as to render them very inferior to others, the circumstances of those who own them probably not admitting of their making them as perfectly commodious as they ought to be.

Having lived both in good and bad stables, I am

so well convinced of the very great benefit derived from the former, as well in regard to the health of the horses, as to the advantages obtained in favor of the trainer in the carrying on of his business, that I shall here endeavour to describe how a range of stables may be planned, suitable in all respects for race-horses to stand in at all times.

If the stables, house, and offices I am about to propose, cannot be conveniently built on the downs, where the horses are to be trained, they should not be at any great distance from them. A mile, for example, is a distance that would be sometimes attended with inconvenience, from the uncertainty of the weather at some periods. Should the horses be on the downs at such a distance from the stables, and heavy rain come on suddenly, they would not, in all probability, be able to reach the stables (in a walk) before their clothes would be nearly, or, perhaps quite wet through; an occurrence which, for various reasons, should, if possible, be avoided. Another great objection to this distance, is, that some race-horses, although excellent runners, are, at times, found to be but very indifferent travellers on the road. Accidents might, therefore, happen; a careless horse might tumble down and break his knees, and this I have known to occur more than once. It would be running too great a risk, with valuable horses in training, to allow them to walk even half a mile twice a day in summer, over a dry hot road, particularly with horses that may have engagements of great importance to their owners. A

piece of ground between the downs and stables, of the length I have been speaking of, unless made on purpose, would, I fear, from constant use, very soon resemble a high road.

It may be thought, by some of my readers, that the horses may be led from the stables to the downs; and I admit that race-horses should almost at all times be led, when travelling on the road; but in this instance, and for this distance, there is an objection, and for this reason,—that horses, from having been indulged, as they most of them are in winter, are, in their first coming out in the spring, much too calfish to allow the boys to lead them with any degree of safety. A trainer must be a bad judge, indeed, to suffer his boys to make the attempt. But, although I have objected to horses in training going from the stables to the downs on a hard road, yet I am fully aware that this cannot, at times, be avoided with the best of horses, and it is a thing that frequently occurs to country plate horses and others, which are being led through different parts of the kingdom, in travelling from race to race, and are often obliged to stand at inns, a mile, or perhaps, two or three miles distant from the course on which they are going to run.

Recurring now to the subject of building training stables, I wish to be understood that those I intend to propose, are what is generally called the home stables of a large public racing establishment. These I shall consider as being placed under the direction of a regular training groom, who is in business for himself, and

who takes in race-horses to train for noblemen and gentlemen; say, for example, at Newmarket, or any other part of the kingdom, where the business of training horses is carried on to a great extent.

Training stables should be built on a dry, level surface, either on or close to the training ground. It is to be observed, also, that they should be at a suitable distance from where the horses pull up after sweating, trying or running. Being thus situated, they not only answer every convenient purpose, but as all trainers know, horses, like other animals, when making towards home, come more freely in their sweats, and will give their trials and races more kindly in running to their stables than from them. Were I to build training stables at Newmarket, I would place them somewhere about the centre of the fields at the back of the White Lion public-house, and in a parallel line with His Majesty's rubbing house, with the front of them to a full southern aspect. I strongly recommend the front of all stables being placed to the above aspect; for from the observations which I have made in attending sick horses, I am of opinion that horses, when constantly standing in stables, in which the doors and windows are placed so as to front to the south, are not so liable to constitutional diseases (the distemper, for example), as those which stand in stables, the front of which may have a northern, or perhaps a north-eastern aspect. Indeed, there is something so cheerful and animating in the enlivening rays of the sun (which horses enjoy in common with other animals) that I cannot too strongly

advise the front of stables, generally, to be placed as above mentioned.

I do not pretend to any knowledge of architecture as a science; nor am I but little acquainted with its technical terms: I have, nevertheless, ventured to sketch a plan and elevation of what appears to me, a proper building for a large training establishment for race-horses. Bred up, as I have already said, from an early period of life, in the stables, and having for many years since that period, enjoyed opportunities of observing and comparing the advantages and defects of several of these establishments, I may venture to consider myself acquainted with their minute details; while I trust that the advantages that I have since derived from my practice as a veterinary surgeon, and the opportunities afforded me, of studying the treatment of horses, in disease as well as in health, in the various situations and trying circumstances of a military life, will enable me to appreciate better than I could otherwise have done, the value of my early experience; and to form more correct and decided opinions, as to the propriety and impropriety of many of the practices in the management of race-horses, which custom or experience may have introduced. I must bespeak the patience of my readers, in following me into details on this part of my subject, which may to some appear unnecessarily minute, and to others unimportant or trifling; but those who are aware how delicate and high-bred a creature we have to deal with, in the training of a race-horse, and how much the circumstances of air and temperature, and

methods of feeding, clothing, watering, and exercising this noble animal, may affect his powers for the race, will be ready to excuse my minuteness, or rather, I hope, to applaud me for it.

Nor in the establishment I propose, have I consulted only the treatment of the horse; on the contrary, I have endeavoured to provide and arrange the apartments and accommodations, which to me appear the most suitable and convenient, for the training groom, head lads, and exercise boys, which such establishments necessarily require; and such, I hope, as will best enable them to execute their duties with ease and credit to themselves, and satisfaction to their employers.

No establishment can be said to be complete, in which any person or thing, necessary to execute any work in the best manner, is wanting; nor even if these be all present, can it be said to be well conducted, unless every person about it is suitably accommodated, and everything so well adapted to its proper use, and set in its proper place, that it may always be ready at the shortest notice, to do its office in the most perfect manner. I shall not, therefore, neglect to enumerate the instruments and utensils, which early experience and subsequent reflection have taught me are necessary to be provided, in the several departments of duty; nor to assign the places where they should be kept, in order to be readiest at hand. Those who, like myself, have actually performed those duties, will know how much their labours will be facilitated, and their com-

forts promoted, by due attention to these regulations; while those who are uninstructed may learn what things ought to be provided, and how they can be most commodiously arranged, so as to carry on the establishment with the best prospect of success. I beg, however, to intimate to those whose situations will not permit them to follow all the particular and minute instructions which I shall lay down, that where the end proposed can be equally well attained by slight changes or deviations from the instructions I shall give, such changes or deviations may be adopted, to suit the circumstances, habits, or opinions of the party.

I am aware, too, that modifications of my plans and arrangements may be required in large establishments, maintained by private individuals, or in small public establishments in various parts of the country; or in those situations where a hunting establishment may, to a certain extent, be combined with that for the race.

To follow such modifications, however, would be at once very tedious, and but of little use, since the ordinary judgment and experience of individuals can best suggest what may best suit their peculiar plans, circumstances or situations. My aim is to sketch, both in outline and detail, the plans and practices of a public racing establishment, according to the principles on which I think they should rest, rejecting nothing which appears to me necessary to conduct it in the completest manner, without, however, presuming to say that nothing superfluous has been introduced, or

that something more may not be hereafter added, by future experience. I shall also, by and bye, make some few remarks on the private stables of noblemen and gentlemen.

I now proceed to describe the stables, as represented in plate No I. In that plate is delineated a front view, or elevation of a range of stables, offices, paddocks, &c.

REFERENCES TO PLAN.—*No.* 1. is the approach to the front yard by a door in the centre of the wall, outside of which there are two troughs, one on each side the door. These troughs being thus placed, will have the benefit of the sun on them, during the day. These are for the horses to water at, which go to their daily exercise on the downs, so that they may not have to pass through the front door oftener than is necessary, in going in and out of the stables. These troughs should be kept locked, and it may be necessary, when the horses are in training, to keep live fish in the troughs.

The frame of the door here, is to be five feet in width, by nine in height; and for the space of about two feet in the centre, it would be better if the sides of it were rounded. Rollers let in would be still preferable, that in case any of the horses passing through should, by accident, come in contact with the door-frame, they would not be so liable to receive so great an injury as they otherwise might, were there no rollers, or were the edges of the door-frame not round-

ed. From this door, as it is the entrance into the front yard, there must, of course, be a bell.

The yard within the walls, is one hundred and eighty feet, by three hundred and fifty-four. In the centre, is a turf ring, one hundred and forty feet in diameter; round which should be formed a sort of coach-road, made of fine gravel and sand, or any other materials of this kind that may be thought to answer the purpose better. All I want here, is a smooth, level surface for the horses to walk on, soft enough to allow them some little foot-hold, as there will occasionally be horses ordered to walk in this yard at certain times and for certain periods in the course of the day, and not to go out on the downs, that they may be watered while at exercise. I have here fixed two troughs, one in the centre of the wall in the east, and the other in the centre of the wall in the west, in which situations each trough of water will, when opened morning and evening, have the benefit of the sun; and the groom will of course, order the boys to water the horses in the morning at the trough in the west, and in evening at the trough in the east.

The wooden frame on which the troughs are to stand, should be eighteen inches from the ground; the length of each trough should be twelve feet, and the breadth over the top should be eighteen inches; fifteen in the width at the bottom, and fifteen in depth. At one corner in the bottom there should be a hole with a plug in it, so that the water may be let off occasionally to cleanse them. There must be lids to these

troughs, with hasps and staples, as it will be necessary, at times, to lock them up. Under them, in the summer time, may stand the buckets; in winter, while the horses are out of training, these may be kept in the stables, or in any other more convenient place.

No. 2. Ground plan of the stables.

No. 3. Plan of the second floor, and dwelling apartments.

No. 4. A front view of a range of stables, made to front the south. It consists of a centre building for the grooms; house, forty-two feet by sixty-two, and two extending wings, each twenty-four feet by one hundred and forty-eight, divided into separate stables, stalls, and boxes. This building is entered through an archway in the centre (eleven feet wide) beneath which are the door-ways leading right and left to the stables in either wing, and also into the apartments of the grooms' house, boys' hall, &c. &c. Over the stables, is the second story, divided into chambers and sitting rooms (with closets to each), for the different training grooms and head lads that may occasionally come to reside at the establishment. The other small chambers are for those boys who look after horses that may be standing in the boxes. The galleries leading to these several rooms are in width, four feet six, and are entered by doors on the top of the stairs erected in the back yard. Through the front yard, we pass into the back yard. *(See plan, No.* 5.*)* The range of building forming this yard is one story high; it is of the same extent as the building in front of it. *(See plan, No.* 6.*)*

but to be only twenty feet in breadth. In this range are situated the straw and hay barns, granary, domestic offices, and other accommodations required in such an establishment. At each end of this yard are large folding gates, with wickets in them, and are for the entrance of waggons, carts, and foot people. There should be a bell at each gate, as they are at all times to be kept locked.

Through the centre of this building is a large passage, leading to seven inclosures or paddocks. *(See plan, No. 7.)* The centre paddock is seventy-eight feet, by two hundred and forty-four feet, with rails ranged round by the wall, for the drying of the horses' sweaters. Adjoining the entrance, inside the walls, are two water troughs. This paddock is intended for the horses to walk in occasionally, as ordered by the groom. The two paddocks on either side of the centre one, are forty-four feet in width. The two outer ones are fifty feet in width, but they are all of equal length, separated by walls nine feet high. The ground on which the stables, offices, &c. stand, is enclosed on every side by a stone wall of the same height. The four paddocks of forty-four feet in width have troughs in them. These paddocks are intended to turn into occasionally, those yearlings which may not have to come to post till they are two years old, to get a little spring grass, after they have been broken; or for the same purpose for a country-plate horse, that may require his constitution, as well as his legs, to be refreshed; or for turning out a sick horse, such as may

be labouring under constitutional disease, as inflamed lungs, or the distemper; or when these paddocks are not used for any of the above purposes, they may be useful to turn the hacks into, to take the staleness out of them. But as colts, as well as horses, are apt on being turned out to range wildly about, it may be advisable to bank these four paddocks round, to prevent them from coming in contact with the walls, and thereby injuring themselves.

These banks placed round where the wall and ground form a junction, on a basis of from three to four feet, raised against the walls in a gradual, but oblique direction, and of the same height as the basis, may have the desired effect—that of preventing the horses coming in contact with the walls. I strongly recommend this plan of banking, as I remember a very fine colt having his shoulder fractured, from coming suddenly in contact with the wall of the paddock in which he was ranging. In one of the outer paddocks, of fifty-five feet each in width, should be grown tares, vetches, lucerne, or clover-grass. The seeds of these plants should be sown on different portions of the ground, of sufficient dimensions to supply two or three horses at a time, for ten days or a fortnight, with a succession of crops, and at intervals during the summer. I allude to such horses as are stationary during the summer, as many of those at Newmarket are; and if it could be done, these green meats, as they are termed, should be grown till autumn, at which time the country plate horses generally arrive at the home stables, and to them, this sort of food

would be very refreshing. Of the other outer paddock, a sufficient portion should be sown with carrots, for the supply of such horses as may not be in strong work during winter. The other parts of this paddock may be converted into a kitchen garden, to supply the inhabitants residing on the premises.

The principal entrances to the outer paddocks are by doors in the wall of the back yard; and the four paddocks, of forty-four feet in width, are entered from the back doors of the loose boxes, the paddocks all communicating with each other by doors in the side walls. I have planned this for convenience, yet there is rather an objection to this plan; for colts and horses winding each other at the doors, are apt to paw and knock at them, and soon get them out of repair; and unless they are properly secured, they are much inclined to play with the common sort of fastening, till they get the door open.

As these paddocks are not arranged or intended for breeding stock, but merely for the purposes just mentioned, it may, perhaps, be doubtful whether these communications are an advantage or not; if it is thought that the doors should remain as I have put them, they might be fenced round, in order to meet the objection I have urged.

Having, in the preceding section, given a general outline of the plan of building, &c., I now propose to follow it more in detail, as far, at least, as regards the forms, dimensions, and use of the various apartments for the groom, head lads, and boys (who consider

the establishment as their home) ; as also the different stables, and the conveniences they should be supplied with, leaving matters of mere taste and embellishment to the fancy of others, consulting only what regards propriety and use.

The centre building consists of two stories, and is entered through an arch, beneath which are four doors, immediately opposite each other. The two first open into two large saddle rooms, communicating with the stables. I shall first speak of the dwelling apartments, which are to be entered by the two farthest doors. The one on the right may be the entrance with a passage, or small hall, to the groom's own private dwelling ; on the left of this passage are the kitchen, larder, and scullery ; on the right is a small parlour. It will be evident from this disposition, that there is to be an under-ground cellar. The door on the opposite side of the arch, is the entrance to a large kitchen, or servants' hall, for the boys to take their meals in, and also to occupy at intervals during the day. This room should have a fire-place of suitable dimensions, in which a large fire may be made, not only for the comfort of the boys, but for the purpose of drying the sweaters, when the weather does not permit of this being done in the open air. To dry them conveniently before the fire, long wooden horses, three and a half, or four feet high, should be provided. This room should be furnished with all the conveniences the purposes for which it is to serve may render necessary.

Having thus finished what relates to the apartments

on the first floor, or ground plan of our centre building, I shall now proceed to describe the upper or second floor, which forms six chambers with a passage leading to them, from which they may all be entered. The room to the front and over the centre of the arch, I have supposed to be the private saddle room, or if you will, the study of the resident training groom. One part of this room should be fitted up as a laboratory for keeping such medicines, instruments, and other articles as will hereafter be noticed, together with the apparatus necessary for compounding the medicines; a writing desk with a cupboard over it for books, such as the stud-book, racing-calendar, and books of reference, those on medicine and the veterinary art. The trial book should also be kept here. Another cupboard or press should be fitted up with racks, for putting away the trial saddles, trusses, small weights, horses' plates, &c. The trial jackets and caps, which should be all of one colour, may be kept here; and it is also to be observed, that these saddles and trusses should never be handled, if it can possibly be avoided, by any one but the training groom or head lad. A third cupboard, fitted up with shelves for the best of the spare cloths, should also be provided. Racks and pegs for the racing saddles, bridles, running reins, girths, martingals, and surcingles, should be fixed up in some convenient part of this room. There should also be a dial, a weighing machine, and a weather glass. This room will require a good sized fire-place. The best description of locks should be put on the

cupboards, and there should also be a good one on the room door, nor should the keys ever be out of the possession of the training groom. The other rooms on this story, with a fire-place in each, may be allotted for sitting and bed-rooms for the training groom, to suit the convenience of the establishment. If it be thought necessary, two or three rooms for the servants of the training groom, may form an attic story in this part of the building.

The several apartments which compose the central building being thus allotted to their different uses, I shall describe how the interior of the two saddle rooms, for common use, are to be fitted up. It has already been noticed, that these rooms are entered by the two first doors, right and left, opposite to each other under the arch; and from each of these, a door should open into each range of training stables. These rooms are designed for the exercise saddles and bridles, belonging to horses in the boxes. They should also be furnished with presses or cupboards, having shelves to receive such spare cloths as may be in frequent though not in constant use. The sweaters, for example, after being well dried and folded up with the scrapers in them, may be kept here; indeed all the articles that are frequently used about the horses, and many of those in the stable, may, when not in use, be kept in these rooms. A large corn bin should also be fixed in each of these rooms, for the resident training groom to feed such horses as may be under his care. Each room should also contain a boiler, sufficiently large to hold half a

dozen buckets of water, and furnished with a cock at the bottom. Warm water may thus be kept ready to take the chill off the cold water occasionally given to the horses when in the stable, or to render the cold water sufficiently hot for a fomentation for the legs of such horses as may have been sweating, trying, or running long lengths at a severe pace. The boilers should be put up so that the steam they give off may escape by the flue of the fire-place, or by an aperture in the wall, to prevent, as much as possible, the room from becoming damp.

I shall now describe the range of stables, which occupies the ground floor of each wing, and which is continued from the centre building. The height of the stables within, should at least be twelve feet in the clear. I shall leave to the better judgment of the architect, to decide on the height of the exterior walls, as also of those in the interior, used as partitions. In erecting these walls, spaces are of course to be left, as I shall hereafter direct, for purposes which will be then explained. It is also to be observed that the exterior walls are to be built of a sufficient substance to prevent, as effectually as possible, the heat in summer or the cold in winter, from affecting the temperature of the stables. The openings first to be noticed in the front walls, are, of course, for the doors and windows, as exhibited in the plan. There must also be small openings for the admission of air, in that part of the wall (in each stable) which approximates to the ceiling. Now, as it is the custom, and indeed a very proper one,

for the boys to mount the horses in the stable, and ride them out to exercise, and in again on returning, it will be advisable, in order to prevent accidents occuring either to the boys or to the horses, to make these door-ways, as well as all the others on the premises, very large.

The space to be left for these door frames (the edges of which should be rounded off at the centre about two feet) should be in width, four feet, eight inches, by nine feet eight, and to be somewhat arched at the top. The door frames should be seven feet eight inches high, so as to leave a space above the door for a moveable window, about a foot and a half deep, which may be hung so as to turn on a central pivot, and occasionally permit the ingress of air. If also, the said door frames be made four inches thick, and rounded off as above mentioned (as all stable doors should be) they will leave a full four feet in the clear. The number of windows to be in each stable, are two; the spaces left for them are to commence six feet from the ground, and should be four feet four for the sash frames, in the four and three-stall stables; but those in the loose boxes and two-stall stables are to be made proportionably less. The lower half of the whole of the windows should be formed by two ranges of flat wooden rails, let into the wall a little on each side, and made to slide over each other, so as to admit air when required, in the manner of drying houses of paper manufactories; and the upper part should be glazed to admit the light. These glazed parts in the loose boxes must be protected

by strong wire, to prevent the horses from breaking them. There are to be shutters outside these windows; and if they were made to resemble the Venetian blinds, which are so generally fixed outside the windows of houses on the Continent, and not unfrequently in England, they would most effectually exclude the sun's heat, and at the same time permit the admission of air. I see no objection to cavities or recesses being left in convenient parts of the front walls, and of suitable dimensions for the formation of cupboards for the forks, brooms, and shovels; and other small recesses may also be formed into cupboards about a foot square, for each boy to put away his comb and brush, his damp wisp, picker, sponge and main-comb; but the fastenings of the cupboards in the boxes should be made in such a manner as to prevent the horse from opening them.

The partition walls which divide the stables into separate compartments, are to be placed at different distances from each other, in the following order:—No. 1, twenty-seven feet, No. 2, thirteen feet, No. 3, thirteen feet, No. 4, thirteen feet, No. 5, twenty feet, No. 6, thirteen feet, No. 7, thirteen feet, No. 8, thirteen feet, and No. 9, thirteen feet. In each of these walls, there must be a space left for a door-way at a suitable distance from the horses' quarters, to admit occasionally of a communication from one stable to another, so that the resident and principal training groom may, whenever he has the entire management of all the horses in his stables, proceed from one to the

other to superintend his boys, and see that they dress their horses properly, and without abusing them by kicking or striking them.

This building being intended as a public establishment for the standing of race-horses, as well as to afford proper accommodation for them, there must be rooms for the grooms, head lads, and boys who are sometimes sent with horses; and the sitting rooms, and chambers placed over the stables, in both wings and extending through the entire range, are intended for this purpose; so that the partition walls dividing the stables, being continued up to the roof, will principally form the rooms on the second floor. These large rooms over each of the four, and three-stall stables, are to be partitioned off, in which partition there is to be a doorway; this will give in each wing two sitting and two bed rooms, communicating with each other. In such an establishment as I have here traced, there ought to be living, to assist the resident training groom, a steady man and one head lad, or otherwise two head lads; and it is for them, and the grooms and head lads who may occasionally be sent with the horses, that the communicating sitting and bed rooms are intended; the others are for the boys whose horses are in loose boxes, or in two-stall stables. In each of the bed rooms of the resident head lads, there should be an alarum clock. This arrangement of the second floor in each wing, will give nine bed rooms, and two sitting rooms; the whole of them are to have fire places, and to be conveniently fitted up with pegs, cupboards,

presses, &c. At the back part of the building, or along its northern front, a sufficient space is left for a passage, from which the entrance to the several chambers may be made. This passage is lighted by windows in the back, and is entered by an outside staircase to each wing. The remaining portion of this floor in the centre building may be converted into two bed rooms, for the use of the private servants of the resident groom, and over these rooms the clock is to be fixed, as may be seen in the plan. Having described the exterior walls of the stables, as well as those in the interior for partitions, I now proceed to explain the plan of the interior of the stables. In each wing are nine separate spaces of ground partitioned off, and of different dimensions; but as the two wings exactly correspond with each other, the description of the interior of the stables in one wing will suffice for both.

Proceeding from the centre, the first plot of ground is for a four-stall stable, allowing for each stall a space of six feet in the clear of the wood work. Such should be the breadth of every stall on the premises, but by no means wider; if it be, the horse will often be standing across it. In my opinion, a racing stable should never consist of more than four stalls; as it seldom occurs that in one establishment, there are more than four horses which require to be worked and treated so exactly alike, as at all times to be placed in the same class. As a guide to my observations on the arrangement of the interior of the stables, let us suppose the horses to be standing in the stables. I would

advise that each stall-post behind the horse's quarters should be placed at a distance from the north wall of the building (or that which fronts the heads of the horses) of ten feet, which will form the length of the stall. Its height, commencing from the post, should be five feet and a half. The workman, in erecting the stall, must observe, that as he approaches the centre of it, he should begin gradually to raise it in a curve direction, until he has reached within about a foot of the wall, and from that part to its insertion into the wall it should be straight. The top rail being fixed, the stall, when completed, should measure in the highest part, at least eight feet and a half, which is sufficiently high to prevent the horses from smelling to each other. The whole of the wood-work should be of oak; if all the wood-work cannot be of oak, the racks, the manger-rails, cribbing boards, and the first six planks in each stall from the post should certainly be of this sort of wood. There is to be fixed in the centre of each of these stalls, in front of the horse's head, and two inches above the manger, a cribbing board, two feet six inches square; and six inches from the upper edge of it, should be attached a ring, to which should be affixed a chain with a swivel and some round links in the centre; and at the bottom part of it there should be a piece of iron, something in the form of the letter T. This chain being thus made, will allow of being let out or shortened to a convenient length, for the purpose of chaining up the horse's head in a proper position, at the time of being dressed. The

length of the chain should be three feet, which, when let out to its full extent, will be of sufficient length to admit of the horse's reaching the bottom and every part of the manger with ease; but it must not be made to exceed the above length, or the horse will have the power of reaching his bedding at the time of his being fed; a thing, which for various reasons, should be avoided. The manger, with regard to its depth and breadth, may be made as most others are. To prevent the horses from injuring themselves by getting their legs into them (which they will sometimes do when the mangers are very low, the top rail of the manger ought to be three feet ten inches from the ground. I think the fixed mangers according to the old plan are to be preferred; they are more convenient than those which are made to draw in and out of the wall; but on this point I do not speak from experience, as I never remember to have lived in any stables where those of the latter description were used. Some are of opinion that horses cannot conveniently crib-bite, when there is no manger rail; but horses that are much inclined to this habit, will be at no loss to put it in practice while they have the bottom rail of the rack to lay hold of. It may, therefore, be advisable to put a horse that may be much inclined to crib-bite, into a stable or box where there is no rack; a drawer manger may then be an advantage. Wainscotting should be continued from the bottom and outer edge of the manger, down to where the wall and ground meet.

In regard to the rack, if one be placed, it must be

fixed in the left hand corner of the stall, resting on the top rail of the manger; for from the position in which the horse stands in the stall, it will be more out of the way here than if it were placed either in the right hand corner or in the centre; for the boy who looks after a race-horse, from custom and for convenience, invariably goes up to him on the near side, no matter what he has to do with him; and as invariably, when leaving him, comes away on the near side also; so that the horse, although standing straight in himself from habit (except now and then, when eating his corn) almost at all times stands somewhat across the stall, with his head towards the rack, and his quarters inclined to the off-side, more than to the centre of the stall.

The racks, as it has already been observed, are to be made of well-seasoned oak, and should measure eighteen inches from the bottom to the top, or at farthest not exceeding twenty. The space from the corner of the stall and the wall to which the rack is fixed, to the front of the rack, should also measure eighteen inches, the top and bottom part of the rack being brought out and arched for this purpose.

This one rack will be sufficiently large to hold the quantity of hay a race-horse may require at any one time during the day, or to serve him the whole of the night; for few racers, when in training, eat more than six or seven pounds of hay during the twenty-four hours. It may be thought by some of my readers that I have placed the racks too low; indeed I have

no doubt they would look much better if placed a foot higher. I know that appearances are much studied in hunting and saddle-horse stables; but in stables for race-horses, the first objects to be considered are comfort and utility, and the rack placed at the height I have above directed is convenient for the boy putting in the hay, and equally convenient for the use of the horse in pulling it out to feed himself, and which he can do in an easy natural position. The plan of tying up the horse in the stable is a circumstance to which, in order to prevent accidents, some attention should be paid. For this purpose, one collar-rein is quite sufficient. I do not approve of the practice of attaching two reins, one to each side of the collar; for when a horse is rubbing his head with his hind foot (as he sometimes will do), should he unfortunately get his leg over either of the reins, it might be attended with serious consequences, more particularly if such occurrence should happen to the horse near the time he was going to run. He may, in struggling, cut his pastern joint with the rein, to such an extent as to prevent his coming to post. Whatever method is adopted for the purpose of securing the horse in his stall, the more simple it is, the better. I should advise its being done by having a hole made in or below the manger rail, for the rein of the collar to pass through; this might run on a pulley into a sort of case or trunk fixed inside the waintscotting, and if it be necessary to give length to the collar-rein, this case or trunk may be sunk below the surface

of the stable floor. It should be large enough to allow the log or weight to move up or down with facility; this weight should, however, be sufficiently heavy, so as at all times to prevent the collar-rein from hanging loose. No inconvenience will arise from attending to these directions, if the rein be long enough to allow the horse to lie down at full length, with ease and comfort to himself. A trap-door may be made in the waintscotting on one side of the case, to afford the facility of removing any obstruction that may occur. There may also be a trap-door under the rack, for the purpose of removing the short hay and seeds that fall through the bottom of it. In most race-horse stables there is a thin wood work attached to the ceiling, and forming an arch over each horse's stall, the outsides of which arches are made to meet. It must be observed, that the bottom part of these arches should correspond in breadth with the top part of the stable post, the posts forming the bases upon which the arches rest.

Although I have lived in stables where the wood-work I have here described has been placed over the stalls, I confess I do not know, nor do I remember ever to have heard of its being of any particular advantage, unless it be that, in effect, it gives the stalls a neat and finished appearance. If the centre of the arches were dropped sufficiently low, they might in this way form a sort of curtain, and prevent the sun for a short period during the day, from shining too powerfully upon the horses' heads; but this can be

better regulated by window shutters. Rings should be fixed in the stall posts for the purpose of buckling on pillar-reins: but generally speaking, pillar-reins are not used in race-horse stables, unless it is when the young ones are breaking in. There should be saddle-racks in each stable, and as boys are short, they should not exceed a height of six feet from the ground. Their place should be in the partitioning walls, in the centre of that part of the wall between the communicating doors and the ends of the horses' stalls, with a peg under each. In each four-stall stable there should be four of these racks and pegs; in each three-stall stable there should be three; and two in each two-stall stable. On these racks are put aside the seven-pound saddles which the boys ride on to exercise, and the pegs are for the bridles and dressing muzzles. Nor do I see why boys in racing stables should not be called upon to pay a little more attention to the cleaning of the irons of their exercise saddles and bridles, than they were accustomed to do in my juvenile days.

At the back part of each three and four-stall stable, there should be in one corner, a corn bin, and in the other, a hay crib. These bins and cribs should be of the same dimensions, measuring in height from the ground three feet, the front part of them projecting from the centre of the walls two feet six. Each bin should be divided into two compartments, the one for corn, and the other for beans. In front of each corn bin a trap-door should be made, a foot and a half

broad and a foot in depth, to admit of the corn being easily got at when it gets low in the bin. A sieve would naturally find a place in each bin for the purpose of cleansing the corn, and a small wooden bowl will also be kept in each as a measure. It was formerly the custom with training grooms to measure the quantity of corn their horses ate by quarts, and not by quarterns, which being a very good plan, I hope they still adhere to it.

Strong constitutioned horses are good feeders, but in their feeding, as in their work, they may be overmarked, if the groom be not careful; for it is with these horses as with the light flighty ones, their food must ever regulate their work. A good groom is aware that he must get the corn into his horse if possible, but he is also aware that he must do it cautiously, and that he must be regulated by certain calculations, of which I shall have occasion to speak hereafter; and this it is that makes me rather particular as to what quantity of oats this little wooden bowl should be capable of containing; when filled, it should hold just a quart.

In each of the three and four-stall stables, close under the stable window (which may be said to be behind the stable door when it is open) should be placed a moderate sized bed settle, for two of the boys to sleep in. These settles are, or were so universally known in all race-horse stables, as to obviate the necessity of my giving a very particular description how they are made. The settles, when turned up during

the day, form themselves into seats, for noblemen or gentlemen to whom the horses belong, to sit upon; this they often do, to see their horses brushed over, and when talking to the training groom on business. The boys who sleep in the stables are, of course, those in whom the groom places implicit confidence; and to be enabled readily to obtain a light in the night in case of accident, a tinder box and matches should be left with them. The boys sleeping here are easily awoke by anything unusual occurring among the horses, and are immediately ready to render assistance to any horse that may be cast, or to tie up any one that may have got loose, which is a thing that sometimes happens. By taking these precautions, accidents are prevented, or often remedied at once; in short, these are precautions which should on no account be neglected, considering the very trifling accidents by which a horse may be prevented from performing his race, the disappointment of which might be of very serious consequence to the owner.

I will take the liberty here of digressing a little from the subject, merely to state, by way of illustration, an instance which occurred in the same stable in which I was living when a boy. I shall also give a short sketch of the life of a stable boy, to point out to my readers the impropriety of allowing the whole of them to sleep *over* the stables.

One morning on the groom's entering the stables, the horse I then looked after was found cast in his stall. How long he had been lying in that situa-

tion could not be ascertained, as none of us heard him in the night; but from the appearance of the horse's coat (although dry when he entered the stable), he had been sweating most profusely, and he must, no doubt, have been struggling for some hours, or perhaps the whole night. Fortunately he had not to run for some time afterwards. A horse, if cast a night or two before his race, no matter whether by accident, or from inattention in the groom not tying him up properly, and especially if he be a flighty one, might be put off his feed a day or two, which would greatly decrease his powers for the race. Indeed, from such a circumstance, he may come to post 7lbs. or a stone below his proper form, a weight which a horse in public running cannot easily give to those of his year, unless he has to run in bad company, or is himself a very superior horse. Grooms who have been long accustomed to the care of horses, are all aware, that amongst a number of horses, one will now and then, by rolling in the stall, get himself cast. Indeed, there are some horses, that soon contract the habit of rolling every night.

At the time of my having horses under my care, whenever I found one addicted to this habit, the method I usually adopted to prevent his indulging in it, was to make his bed perfectly level; that is, as high in the middle as on the sides, and then to tie his head up so short with the collar-rein as only to admit of his laying his body down, without the liberty of putting his head to the ground; in this way I have mostly succeeded.

Boys who live in race-horse stables are generally obliged to rise early in the morning during the summer months, but more particularly during July and August. At this season of the year, should any of the horses in the establishment require strong work, the groom must get such work into them before the sun has too much power. On such occasions, the groom himself, or the head lad, opens the stables at three o'clock in the morning; the boys are instantly roused up, and while the head lad is giving a double-handful of corn to such of the horses as are usually allowed this small portion, the boys are hurrying on their clothes. Nor have they much time allowed them for their toilets; few of them waiting even to tie up their stockings, but content just to pull the tops of them over the knees of their breeches, when each boy immediately betakes himself to his duty in the care of his horse. This duty in the course of the day, together with the great desire he has, when at liberty, to indulge himself with different games of play (which he is allowed to do during those intervals of relaxation and amusement which intervene between the stable hours), prevents the weary boy from getting but a small portion of rest. At night, therefore, he is so fatigued, that when he gets to bed, he sleeps much too sound to be easily awakened by any noise that may be made in the stables from a horse getting loose, or being cast in his stall. This I know from experience; besides, a boy's ear is so accustomed to the noise made in the stables by the horses, at the hours of brushing

them over, that he is not so readily awakened out of a sound sleep in the night, when sleeping over the stables. I have, when a boy, on getting up in the morning (I may say between sleeping and waking), often promised myself the gratification of sleeping between stable hours in the day time; but when that period of recreation arrived, like the rest of my companions, I have allowed my little pleasures and amusements to take place of my rest.

But to return. The floors of the stables should be made of large flat paving stones, or bricks, as the architect shall think best. Each stable floor should be perfectly flat, with the exception of the least possible declivity in each horse's stall, and in that part of each loose box on which the horse stands at the time of his feeding.

If the broad flat paving stones should be preferred, they must all of them be fluted, so as to give them a rough surface, to prevent the horses from slipping when going in or out. For the sake of cleanliness, a certain portion of the stable walls should be wainscoted; and the wainscotting which covers the part in front of the horse's head, should be carried from the top edge of the manger, to the top part of the stall. If this wood-work were continued a foot higher, it would probably look much better. The wainscotting against the side walls, forming one side of the stall, should correspond in appearance with the wood-work which separates the stalls from each other. At the end of these side stalls, close to the oak stall-post, the

wainscotting should again commence, and be continued along the walls behind the horses, to the corresponding stall post at the other side of the stables; and in height, the wainscotting should be even with the lower edge of the stable windows.

After every stable hour during the day, still more particularly at night when the horses are fed, dressed, and their beds set fair, wooden bails are put up in the back part of the stable, between each of the horses. Cavities to receive the ends of the bails are made in the stall posts, and in the wall at the back part of the stable, into which the bails are put, and secured at the end in the wall. Chains were formerly used instead of bails; but the latter I think preferable. Ash is the best sort of wood to use in making these bails. The use of the bails is to prevent accidents, in case of any horse getting loose; he cannot then get into the stalls of those that are tied up. In some stables there are two bails thus fixed, one above the other. Some grooms give the preference to one: I think there is an objection to two, for a horse, when loose, may easily put his leg over the lower one, and injure himself.

The common method of fixing these bails is as I have above stated; but as they are unwieldy to handle in the stable, an improvement is practicable in arranging them. For instance, I see no objection to the boards of the stall being, as they sometimes are, double; in which case, they might be set a couple or three inches apart, and boxes with rollers might be

formed between them, for the bails to run upon—I think this would be much more convenient.

The spaces left for the loose boxes should be fitted up in a manner somewhat similar to that of the stables. The wood work on each side wall is to be put up in form of a stall, precisely as I have directed. It is to be put on each side of the side walls, as in the stables. Racks must be fixed in the left and right-hand corners, and in every respect like those in the stables. The manger should extend the whole length of the box in front of the horse's head, with proper conveniences for tying up two horses, upon the same principle as the mangers in the stables. There should also be two cribbing boards, so that occasionally either of the boxes might be converted into a two-stall stable. It is to be observed, however, that there is not to be in any of the boxes either racks or pegs, for putting away the exercise saddles and bridles of the horses that stand in them. These bridles and saddles, with the horses' spare cloths and muzzles, are, at all stable hours, to be taken to the common saddle-room.

It is also to be observed, that there are to be no encumbering projections, such as bins or bed-settles. If the latter could be conveniently let into the walls, such an arrangement would be a decided advantage in these boxes; as it would also be in the two-stall stables, if practicable: otherwise, a night or two before running, a temporary bed of clean dry straw and some horse-clothing may be made up at night in a corner of the box, for the boy who looks after the horse, to lie down

upon to sleep. His sleeping there will not disturb the horse, nor will the horse disturb him; unless the animal be a very vicious one, and in that case it may be advisable to tie him up, in the usual way, the night on which he is set.

As the horses will generally be loose in the boxes, precautions should be taken by the workmen effectually to secure the cupboards and stable doors. They should be made sufficiently fast to prevent the horses opening any of them; they are to be let into the walls, and not to project so as to hold out an inducement to the horses to play with them, as most race-horses will do with almost any thing they can get at.

Tin sconces, on each side the door of every stable and box, can be hung up for putting in lights, and I think they will answer quite as well as patent lamps. I remember when patent lamps, and large curtains were used in some stables that I once lived in; but I see no necessity for this sort of costly splendour. I think the tin sconces will answer every purpose of the former; and the window shutters, of which I have made mention, will answer equally well that of the latter. Whether the doors in the dividing walls, which admit of a communication from one stable to the other, be made to slide back into the wall when opened, or whether they should open in the common way, is a matter of little consequence. Although the former mode appears most convenient, I fear they would be often out of repair. The better plan is certainly that which may be executed with the greatest facility, and

this may with safety be left to the decision and better judgment of the practical man.

Some noblemen and gentlemen who keep race-horses prefer having them wintered at home, where they forward them in their condition, previous to their being sent to the public training establishment. For this purpose, they keep their own training grooms, in whose honesty, and judgment in training, they necessarily place the most implicit confidence; yet, under certain circumstances, such as the convenience of getting better ground, or of being near the place of running, noblemen and gentlemen occasionally send their horses and boys to public training stables; and, considering their own grooms better acquainted with the constitutions and tempers of their horses than a stranger could possibly be, they are sometimes sent with them to large public racing establishments, in which the groom of course wishes to have the stables his horses are to occupy, entirely to himself; and in order to meet this proper request, the communication from one stable to the other must be effectually cut off. Whenever it becomes necessary to close these communicating doors, it must be done effectually and satisfactorily to each party, so as to prevent any unpleasant suspicions from arising. It is, however, but just to observe, that grooms, though animated by a laudable feeling of rivalry towards each other, generally speaking, agree tolerably well as neighbours, even when they are living together in the same stable-yard, as they often do, for some time previous to their horses running at any par-

ticular meeting. Yet, if once their suspicions are roused by any unfair advantages attempted to be taken by their opponents, their minds are instantly set to work with a view to guard against all kinds of stratagems, and they watch every movement on the premises, with a jealous eye; in short, "diamond cut diamond" then becomes the order of the day; nor do they discard the feeling, which, under such circumstances, once becomes the inhabitant of their breasts, while they continue in the stable-yard together. To prevent such unpleasant occurrences, there should be strong locks and bolts on each side of each communicating door.

I believe I have now made mention of every thing that is necessary to an establishment of this sort, as well for the convenience of the groom and his boys, as for the comfort of the horses while in training. But as many of the horses will have to be treated differently in the winter, and as some of them will occasionally have to stand in different descriptions of stables and boxes; and as there will be wanted barns and granaries for stores of hay, straw, corn, &c., and other offices for the use of those residing on the premises, I shall now trace the plan of different stables and offices to be erected for the above purposes, in the rear of the training stables.

This building is to be in height, fifteen feet, by twenty in breadth. In the centre is an open passage leading to the paddocks. In each side wall of the passage is to be a door ten feet in height, by five feet in

breadth, as entrances to two barns; the one for a store of hay, the other for one of straw. Proceeding now from the barn in the west wing, *(see plan A.)* we come to a brew-house and a wash-house *(see plan B.)*; following these is a shoeing stable, *(see plan C.)* and smith's shop, *(see plan D.)*

In the front wall of the smith's shop, and of the shoeing stable, two spaces are to be left, one for a common sized door into the smith's shop, and the other for a door of the same dimensions as those of the training stable. There are also to be two spaces of five feet by five, each, in the front wall of the shop, and of the shoeing stable, for windows; and in the partition wall which divides the smith's shop from the shoeing stable, must be a door for the smith to pass through from the one to the other.

In the shoeing stable, the rack and mangers may be placed as in the two-stall stables; but this stable is not to be divided by a stall. Here there must be a temporary division, which can easily be fixed or removed, as occasion may require. This will be found practicable, by making, at a proper distance from the manger, a square hole in the ground about two feet deep, and a wooden socket of proper dimensions to fix into it, which is to receive the lower part of the stall-post. This socket must be filled up with a plug, whenever the stall-post is taken out. There should also be a bail attached in a temporary manner to the stall-post and centre of the manger, by a safe and well-constructed hook at each end of the bail.

To the under surface of the bail, must be affixed a thick oak board, enclosing the whole open space from the stall-post to the manger, hanging down from the bail, within one inch of the ground. There should also be a board projecting out between the horses' heads for about a foot and a half from the centre of the wall, to prevent them from interrupting each other, while standing here to be shod. To provide for occasional wants, a rack-chain may be fixed in the centre of the stall as in the other stables. And to give the smith plenty of light to work by, there should be a window over the door, besides that behind the horse.

In erecting the walls in the interior of the smith's shop, the workman must place the fire-hearth on the left hand, attached to the back wall, and in the centre of it. The fire-hearth is to be raised from the ground, on a basis of four feet square, and is in height to be two feet eight. An opening of one foot square, is to be left in the centre, for the purpose of removing the cinders and ashes, as they accumulate. On the surface, beginning at the edge, and in the centre of the left angle of the hearth, there should be a round space gradually sunk, of sufficient dimensions to contain the fire. A foot to the right of the fire, and within one foot of the back wall, is to be an opening, communicating with that of a foot square below, so that the smith may conveniently throw off the cinders and ashes, as occasion may require. To the right of the hearth, attached to each other, there should be two cast-iron troughs, each two feet ten inches long, by ten inches

wide, and one foot deep; the one for coals, and the other for water. The fire irons and tongs can be kept, as is the usual custom, on the vacant space left in the centre of the earth. The two side walls to be raised from the ground, and let into the back wall of the building, are also to be connected with the right and left angles of the hearth, and brought forward to each corner of the front angles of it; and in the rear of this left-hand wall, is to be fixed the bellows, and an opening will be left in the wall for the pipe, from the lower part of the sunken hearth which contains the fire.

On the interior surface of this wall is to be fixed a cast-iron toe iron; and near to the end of this left-hand wall, on about a level with the hearth, may be left a hollow space to contain sand, for the use of the smith. These side walls are to be carried up to a height of four feet seven, from the ground. The chimney piece being put across, and the chimney built up, the opening left for the smith to work by, will be four feet, by two feet in height.

The anvil (moderately small) should be placed opposite the centre of the hearth, at a distance from it, of three feet six inches. The wooden block on which it is usually put should be sufficiently broad, on its upper surface, to receive the tools with which the smith works at the anvil, namely, the turning hammer, fuller, stamp, chisel, and pritchel. When making plates, a crease is used for the purpose of fullering them, which

on such occasions is fixed in the anvil; the sledge generally remains in front of it when not in use.

A piece of ground in the right hand corner of the shop, might be fenced in by a wall three feet high, for the purpose of keeping a store of Swansea coals, for the use of the smith.

To the right, under the window, and close against the front wall of the shop, should be fixed a window or working bench, three feet from the ground, six feet long by two in breadth; to the right of which should be fixed a pointing stake, three feet two high; and on the left, the vice, the top surface of which should be three feet three from the ground. Under, and in the centre of the window bench, there should be a drawer three feet long by two wide; this drawer to be partitioned off into six compartments, and to be numbered from 4 to 9, both inclusive. A store of nails is to be kept in it at all times, ready for use: the size nails generally used for shoeing race-horses are Nos. 4 and 6, and for plating them, Nos. 4 and 5; those numbered 7, 8, 9, will occasionally be wanted for the hind-feet of large sized horses. When the smith is not at work, the shop should be locked up, to keep the boys out.

E, in the plan, is a gig house; *F* and *G*, adjoining each other, are two loose boxes; the dimensions of these boxes are to be twenty feet by twenty, fitted up with a rack in each corner, and the manger to be the whole length of the box, so that when it is found necessary, these boxes may be converted into three-stall stables. In order that they may communicate with

the paddocks, they are to be so fitted up, that the length of them will take the breadth of the building. There are to be doors at each end, cut through the centre, so as to have, when requisite, the top parts open, for the admission of plenty of air. *H* is a granary, twenty feet by twenty-six: apertures are to be left in the walls of this building, for putting in a sort of Venetian blind, for the admission of air and light. Partitions, to contain corn, should be formed round the walls; they should be made moveable, as occasion may require, so that the boys, in turning the oats to keep them sweet, may easily shift them from one place to the other. There should also be some small partitions for beans, bran, chaff, and oatmeal: in this granary may be kept a chaff machine, and a mill for splitting beans. *I* is a space, left as a reservoir, for the accumulation of manure, with a wall raised to a sufficient height in front. *J* is a door leading to the paddock, in which the green food is grown.

In the east wing, No. 1 is a barn for straw. No. 2, a coal and wood house. No. 3, a loose box. No. 4, a four-stall hack stable, in which apertures are to be left in the front wall, for a door in the centre, and a window on each side, as in the other stables, and of the same dimensions as those in the front yard; and on the top of the stall posts there should be rings, to fasten pillar-reins to. There should also be the same description of ring, properly placed near to the top on both sides of each stall, as this stable may be occasionally wanted for colts to stand while being broke.

There will be no occasion for a bed-settle here. No. 5 is a loose box. No. 6, a granary, fitted up as the one in the west wing; and besides corn, here may also be kept carrots, for the supply of such horses as may require them during the winter. A mill should also be kept here for the cutting or slicing of them. No. 7, are reservoirs for manure. And No. 8 is a door, leading into a paddock, which is for the growing of carrots.

That there may be a sufficient supply of water on the premises, wells must be sunk, and pumps fixed, with moderate sized stone troughs in front of them, and placed against the barns, as may be seen in the plan; but if it can be avoided, they are not to project beyond the parallel line of the building.

It may probably appear to some of my readers, that I have made an arrangement for more boxes than is necessary; but these last mentioned will answer very well for stale country-plate horses to winter in, or as hospital boxes whenever such may be required. As for example, in case of the training stable being full, and any horse that may be standing in a stall falling amiss, he can be immediately removed into a box. If the nature of his complaint be such as to require his removal from other horses, and that the horse that is to be moved will be happy in the box, persons unacquainted with racing might think it a very easy matter (provided the disease the horse laboured under was not contagious) to change the situation of the sick horse, by bringing one that may be healthy, from his

box to the stall where the sick horse stands, removing him into the box. This, in case of emergency, might certainly be done, if the horses changed belonged to the same person, or to two different persons, provided they were confederates; but it must not otherwise be attempted, for reasons which I made no doubt the reader will discover as he proceeds.

Good training grooms are, in all respects, particularly careful of the race-horses entrusted to their care, and are very cautious as to their health, being fully aware of the consequences that must naturally arise from any of them being ill. They take every precaution they can to prevent them from taking cold, and one of these precautions is, that no horse in training is allowed to be shod out of the stable in which he is accustomed to stand. This intentionally is very good, and in some few instances, it cannot be well avoided; but, as I shall presently show, such objections exist, as induce me to recommend the discontinuance of the general practice.

It is the custom with training grooms, the day previous to any horse's being shod, to send to the neighbouring smith and order him to attend (perhaps at the afternoon stables) to take measure, and make the shoes for the horse that is to be shod. Early on the following morning, it is usual for the groom to leave the horse in, or if he takes him out with the other horses, to arrange his work so as to send him in an hour earlier than the rest, that his shoes may be put on and the stables shut up at one time.

It has frequently happened under my own observation at the time of my living in the stables, that on the smith's arrival to shoe a horse, and having cleaned out his foot and made it perfectly level, he has found on placing the shoe on the foot, that it did not exactly fit. This is a thing which grooms are aware is not at all uncommon, the shoe being at times too broad, or what is worse too narrow, or perhaps too long; the former of these faults may be more easily rectified than either of the two others, when the shoe is cold; but the proper way to rectify such defects, would be for the smith to return to the shop, where, by heating the shoe again, he may make it something better, but even then perhaps not quite perfect. But the shop may be a mile or more from the stables, to walk which distance would occupy too much of the smith's time; therefore to save himself both time and trouble, he alters the shoe and makes it what he calls "fit the foot." If the shoe is too broad, he places it on the ground, and if too narrow, on some more convenient place, and by giving it two or three blows with the shoeing hammer, alters a light shoe, either by closing or widening it a little, as the case may require, leaving to chance how the length may answer, or how the horse may be able to go in the shoes thus improperly altered.

I have known horses in strong work, go immediately tender on the foot from their shoes being thus carelessly put on, and the smith has been at last obliged to take them off, return to his shop and heat them, in order to make the further necessary alterations.

Another objection to horses being shod in the stables is, that the smith selects, as he imagines, a sufficient number of nails, which, when he has straightened and pointed, he thinks will very well answer the purpose for the feet he is going to drive them into; but, on his arrival at the stable, and when proceeding with his work, he finds that he has not sorted them exactly as he could have wished. Some are too small, others too large; but, as I have already observed, rather than go back to his shop for such sized nails as he might want, the smith makes use of those he has with him, again leaving to chance the effect they may produce.

Some may be so large as to break a thin shelly foot more than there is really any cause for; and others may be so small as not to render the shoe sufficiently secure. If even the smith goes back to his shop, to make a better selection of nails, the horse is kept waiting, and that is a thing which ought to be avoided. A race-horse should not be put out of his way, nor made anxious, nor kept waiting, on any such occasion. Shoeing horses in the stables is not only slovenly, but unsafe, and more particularly with respect to race-horses; for, if from any of the causes above stated, a horse should be lamed, and perhaps severely so, his work must immediately be stopped, and not unlikely for a week or two: such a thing happening to a craving horse would occasion a great loss of time, in consequence of his putting up flesh from laying by. This might prevent him from coming out to meet his engagements. To prevent accidents arising from the in-

convenience of shoeing horses in the stables, is my reason for having arranged a smith's shop and shoeing stable in the back-yard of the establishment which I have been describing; and to shoe and plate the number of horses that may be supposed to be kept on premises of such dimensions, there will be full employment for a good shoeing smith. In all racing establishments, a smith's shop and shoeing stable will be found very convenient for the smith, to make the shoes and plates fit properly to the horses' feet to which they are to be applied. If the groom is afraid, that from bad weather or any other cause, his horse might take cold from being moved out of his own stables and standing in the shoeing stable during the time of his being shod, he may, before the horse comes out, order an additional sheet or two to be thrown over him; or it would be very easy, a night or two previous to the horse's being shod, to order a couple of hacks to sleep in the shoeing stable to air it; they could be moved out in the morning; one of them must, as a matter of course, to make room for the horse to come in to be shod; and if the horse should be a shy or irritable one, the other hack may be found useful to walk before him from his own stable door into the shoeing stable, and, if necessary, to stay there with him in case of his being restless, as many such horses are when being shod.

A training groom who has been brought up in the stables from an early period of his life, is fully aware what may, at times, be done by making use of a hack in this way, in getting flighty horses sometimes to

stand quiet to be shod or plated; and by the same means, some of them are brought to stand quiet at the time of saddling, when, for want of a rubbing-house on the ground for that purpose, the horses are necessarily obliged to be saddled on the course.

While a race-horse is being shod, the boy who looks after him will have to stand in the stall, attending to his head; and, if the horse be at all restless, it may be well to give him, at intervals, a little corn out of a sieve, merely to draw his attention a little from what is going on, and to prevent his becoming impatient. I have often had this done; by such means, and by gentle usage, I have succeeded in getting very troublesome young horses, as well as old ones, shod.

CHAPTER II.

GENTLEMEN'S PRIVATE TRAINING STABLES.

THE stables of our noblemen and gentlemen, are most of them uniformly built, some of them forming very neat squares. In erecting them, there is generally a space of ground reserved in the front or centre of the building, which forms a convenient stable-yard, with a reservoir of water in the centre. Such stables for hunters, carriage-horses, and hacks, are commodiously arranged, and are so lofty, that when properly ventilated, they readily admit of a free circulation of pure air, which, at the present day, is tolerably well understood to be highly essential to the health of all animals in a domesticated state.

Many noblemen and gentlemen who keep race-horses, keep their own private training grooms. If they have ground in their own park or downs, near enough to their own houses, that will answer the purpose for their horses to train upon,—some prefer having them trained at home; and as their stables are ge-

nerally on an extensive scale, they appropriate a certain portion of them for their race-horses to stand in. Although their stables may be very good, and such as I have described, yet for many reasons, this is a bad plan; the farther their race-horse stables are from those of their hunters and hacks, the better. As the expense can be but of little importance to gentlemen of fortune, I should advise their being built on a convenient piece of groud, at least half-a-dozen miles from their mansion. One reason for this is, that the boys could not so easily talk to their neighbouring companions, of what they see or know of the horses when they are training. I should also recommend noblemen and gentlemen of the turf, in erecting their training stables, to build loose boxes for most of their horses. Any number of them might be arranged according to the establishment of horses kept, on the dimensions of twenty-two feet by thirteen, clear of the walls; and if fitted up as I have directed, a box or two, as occasion may require, (for such horses as may do better in stalls) may, with little expense, be converted into a one or two good stall-stable.

Men vary in their opinions on the management of horses, as they do on other things, and, as I am an advocate for loose boxes (for horses of a certain class), in preference to stall-stables, it may not be here much out of place, to assign my reasons for that preference, and to shew in what instances I recommend the use of the one rather than the other. Horses which are valuable, good runners, such as are engaged at Newmarket,

Doncaster or Epsom, but more particularly such of those horses as may be required to be in strong work, are the horses which will benefit most by being kept in loose boxes. The objection that is made to the use of them is, that when country plate horses are travelling, boxes are not often to be met with at inns on the road, neither are they at all times to be had at many of the inns where horses go to stand at the different country meetings; and that horses which have been accustomed to sleep in loose boxes, do not do so well when standing in stalls. This is correct: but the objection is more than counterbalanced by the advantages that arise. It would be attended with very little expense to landlords, on such roads as race-horses generally travel, and at such other inns, near to the different race-courses at which the horses stand, were they to arrange in their stable-yards a certain number of loose boxes; this would be a great accommodation to noblemen and gentlemen of the turf, and would be but a trifling inconvenience to a landlord, as such boxes, when not wanted for race-horses, might, with very little trouble, be converted into a bail stable, for a pair of post horses. Were such accommodations as these to be had at inns, there could be no objection made to certain race-horses standing in loose boxes at all times; but even the objection above stated, is not to be put in competition with the advantages which horses derive from being kept in boxes, if it were only that of avoiding the inconvenience arising from some horses unnecessarily disturbing others on sweating days, or

at other times when some may be in physic, and others not.

But before I proceed further with my observations on private stables, I will take an accurate view of both sides of the question; my readers will then find out what horses ought to stand in stalls, and what horses ought to stand in boxes; and which, in some measure, may guide the owner in the building of his private stables.

Now, the advantages to be derived from the use of boxes, are principally for such horses as may have returned in the autumn to the home stables, from a summer's country running. They have some of them become not only stale and round on their legs, but stale in themselves. All such horses are much sooner refreshed, by being allowed to range loose in boxes than they would be by standing in stalls; and it is in boxes that such horses should stand during winter, as well as while they are training. In regard to craving colts and horses that are in strong work, some of them will stand whole days in stalls, and may not lie down until night; from which circumstance I have known their legs fill, and get a little round; but if they are kept in loose boxes, although they may not lie down during the day, they will range and walk about, and thereby exercise their limbs, which would not only keep off the stiffness the work occasions, but prevent their legs from filling and getting out of shape. It is a great advantage to country platers, to get into boxes when travelling on the road, for such horses are mostly

craving ones, and in training, they are often in strong work; and not unfrequently when the ground is hard, most of these horses are long comers, and long comers are generally voracious feeders, and whether they stand in loose boxes or stalls, they feed equally well; therefore, for all such horses, loose boxes are the most proper. There can be no objection to loose boxes, except that which I have already stated; and I repeat that it cannot be put in competition with the advantages obtained by the use of them.

I shall now make my observations on stall-stables, and point out to my readers the horses that are likely to do best by being kept in them. The principal advantage of stall-stables is, that when three or four delicate horses are standing together in one stall, they feed better than they would do, were each to be kept alone in a loose box; for, generally speaking, such horses are not very good feeders; yet, at feeding time, when they hear the corn rattle in the sieve, they begin to neigh, and seem anxious to be fed, and they certainly do eat what corn is given them, with apparently a better appetite than they would if standing alone.

Another thing to be observed is, that horses of this description are seldom in physic; they are never in strong work, neither do they sweat, nor often run; and being treated pretty much alike, they do not disturb each other, by going out at any particular time. These are the horses that (unless at such times when they are sick) are better standing in stall-stables than in boxes; only, it is to be observed, they are to be

kept strictly in their own class. Mares should also be kept in their own class, not only in their own class in regard to their constitutions and tempers, but there should be no horses standing in the same stable with them, as mares are often enough horsing, out of temper, and off their feed, without being made more so, by being put to stand in the same stables with the horses. Any craving mares that do well in loose boxes, should be kept in them; those that are restless and flighty when alone, should be kept in stall-stables.

It was formerly the custom, not only to put horses and mares in the same stable together, but it was also usual to work them together in the same class, without paying sufficient attention to their various constitutions and tempers; and when, from such improper treatment, delicate horses or mares have gone off their feed, it was usual with the trainer to stop their work.

This is a bad practice, and should be abandoned. If anything of this sort, through an oversight, does take place, the cause should be immediately removed, by removing the horse from the class in which he is not able to work; and the manner of bringing him again to his feed, I expect is not entirely forgotten by competent training grooms; at least I hope they do not deviate from the good old system (in this one particular) of arranging the feeding of their horses in such a manner, that the whole of them feed well at all times, (unless when sick,) according to their different constitutions. Of the constitutions and tempers of horses, and how different horses are to be fed, watered,

and worked, I shall treat more at length when speaking of their shape and make.

I have made these observations on the advantages of loose boxes for some horses, and stalls for others, merely as a guide to any nobleman or gentleman of the turf who may choose to build a range of stables for his race-horses to stand in. In regard to the situation in which the stables should be placed, as to aspect, the substance of the walls, and the different offices necessary to be attached to a private establishment of this kind,—such as a house for the groom, a hall for the boys, granaries for corn, barns for hay and straw, saddle rooms, &c, &c.—a plan and description of the whole of these may be taken from the arrangement of the public training stables, but on a reduced scale.

CHAPTER III.

ON VENTILATION.

HAVING, in the preceding chapters, pointed out all the arrangements necessary for an establishment of public training stables, I shall now treat on a very important point, that of ventilation.

One of the principal objects to which grooms should pay the most scrupulous attention, is that of the health of their horses; indeed, they have discovered that this object is, in a great measure, to be attained by keeping their stables much cooler than they formerly did; yet, as there may be some of the old school, who still adhere to the former practice, (that of hot stables,) I shall make a few observations on the impropriety of their so doing.

It was formerly the common practice among grooms, in the winter and spring, to regulate the temperature of the stables agreeably to their own feelings; and it was their custom, (at least, with those I lived under,) if the weather was at all cold, to have the long dung laid at

the bottom of the stable-door, and to have every aperture in the stable closed; this, together with the heat from the breath of the horses, and the fumes arising from the wet dung under them, made the stables, what was called by the groom, "comfortably warm;" for in those days it was the custom (to use the language of the stable,) "to muck out only twice a week." This temperature, I should say, if allowed to speak from my own sensations, far exceeded, in all probability, that of a hot-house, to say nothing of the impurity of such air. Indeed, at the time I am now alluding to, I could mention many proofs, in a variety of instances, of the inconsistency of a number of grooms in the management of horses; but I have great satisfaction in stating that the generality of these men now understand the thing much better than they formerly did. I may therefore be spared the unpleasant task of finding fault with such of them as were pursuing a wrong course, more particularly as they conscientiously considered that they were acting on principles which they thought strictly correct.

It is now pretty clearly understood, and indeed almost universally admitted by them, that a constant supply of fresh, pure air, is not only beneficial, but absolutely necessary for the preservation of the health of all horses taken from a state of nature, and placed in an artificial atmosphere; and this necessity becomes more absolute with regard to race-horses.

A race-horse must perform his *own* engagements; if he falls amiss, his work must be stopped, and his en-

gagement, which may be a heavy one, will most likely have to be done away with. This may prove not only a disappointment to the owner, but it may also be a great loss to him. As our breed of race-horses has originated in a hot climate, it becomes necessary when they are in training and have been drawn fine, independently of clothing them, to keep the stable they stand in in winter, up to a certain temperature of heat; and that it may be properly regulated, there should be kept in all race-horse stables a small self-regulating thermometer, by which to ascertain any variation of the heat in the stables that may arise from the changes in the atmosphere, or from any number of horses being taken out of the stables, or from others being brought into them. Either of these causes will more or less produce a change in the temperature of the stables, which may be observed by the rising or falling of the quicksilver in the glass.

Any change of temperature being ascertained from either of the above mentioned causes, the different apertures for the admission of pure air, and those for carrying off the foul, should be opened or closed as circumstances may require, until the quicksilver rises or falls to that degree in which the temperature of the stables may be considered by the groom comfortable and wholesome for the horses.

The degree of heat which I have generally found to answer this purpose, is, in winter and spring, (if the horses are properly clothed) at about sixty-two. In July and August, the stables are generally very hot;

but this, of course, arises more from the heat of the atmosphere than from that of the horses. At this season of the year, the shutters should be closed by day, to keep out the sun, but the apertures for the admission of pure air should all be kept open, as should also those for letting out the foul air. At night it may be necessary to close them to a certain extent, but the groom in this respect should be guided by the appearance of the night, as well as by the indications of the thermometer; and, on such occasions, he is to use his own judgment accordingly.

It is in the hot summer months that the summer clothing comes into use, *in* the stables as well as *out* of them, for such horses as may require the change; and it will, of course, be necessary to diminish the quantity, in regard to such as require the winter clothing to be continued; to a single quarter piece, for example; but when they go out, a hood and breast-cloth can be added, either a linen or a woollen one, as the groom may best approve. When clothing the horses up at night, it may perhaps be requisite for the whole of them to sleep in their woollen clothes; but in this case, the groom must again be guided partly by his own judgment of the appearance of the night, and the delicacy or strength and constitution of the different horses, as also by the appearance of the thermometer; but at the season of the year to which I am alluding, race-horses have, most of them, been drawn fine by physic and strong work. From these circumstances, they are generally in good health, or rather they are

not so liable in this state to fall constitutionally amiss, as they would otherwise be likely to do from the different changes of the weather early in spring, at which time many of them are pretty lusty.

But the stables that young ones are first to occupy on their leaving their paddocks, should be perfectly cool. The windows and different apertures in the walls and ceiling, should be kept open for the first ten days or fortnight; and when it is thought necessary to increase the warmth of the stables, it should be done very gradually, by closing a window at a time; as it would be extremely dangerous to subject young ones, full of flesh, to the usual temperature of heat in a race-horse stable.

Having, in the preceding chapters, arranged the stables, and in this, described how they ought to be ventilated, I will, in the next, offer a few remarks upon a disease by which horses now and then become affected, and which is, at times, occasioned by irregularities, both *in* as well as *out* of the stables.

CHAPTER IV.

ON THE DISTEMPER.

RACE-HORSES, like all others, are of course liable to become constitutionally amiss, and they are very often subject to a disease commonly called the distemper, with which some of them are at times severely affected, much to the annoyance both of their owners and trainers, as they are thereby thrown back in their condition, and are often prevented from running for the different plates and stakes for which they may have been entered.

It has been a rule with me whenever the disease has made its appearance among horses in the regiment in which I am serving, to remove those which have been affected from those which were in health; as I have frequently observed, from horses standing next to each other in bail stables, (the custom in his Majesty's service), that those which have been labouring under the disease have not been removed more than a day or

two, before those which had stood next to them have become affected; and in the space of a fortnight, I have had a hundred horses affected with the disease, while the remainder of the regiment has continued in a healthy state. These are circumstances which of course have happened to other Veterinary Surgeons, in similar situations, as also to grooms, (although, to these, not to the same extent,) who may have had the care of horses, and which circumstances may have led these last mentioned to suppose the disease contagious. This, perhaps, is doubtful. That a peculiar state of the atmosphere often produces the disease, I believe is not to be questioned, and that exposure to the same causes will occasionally produce the same effect, will be readily allowed. Young horses are not only more liable to become affected by the disease, but they suffer more severely from it than old horses generally do.

From the observations I have made during the time of my living in the stables, I am of opinion that horses sometimes become affected, in a slight degree, with this distemper, or something very like it, as coughs and colds, attended with fever, when they are in what is so commonly called, high condition—that is, very lusty, as some race-horses (country platers) are, early in the month of March. I am induced to think they become thus affected, from grooms not paying sufficient attention to the regularity of the temperature of the stables, as well as to the clothing of their horses; more particularly so, when in the mornings at the

commencement and the close of spring, they are going out upon the open downs to exercise. At this season of the year it is that horses are most liable to be amiss from such complaints, and if not immediately attended to, such complaints become worse, and terminate in the distemper, or what is often more difficult of cure, inflammation of the lungs.

Training grooms are very watchful over their horses, and the moment they find them coughing, they have recourse to bleeding; and in slight cases of colds and fevers, they were much in the habit of giving their horses morning and evening an ounce or two of the sweet spirits of nitre in some warm gruel or beer. By the early application of the above medicine, (which in such cases is a very good one) they often put a stop to the further progress of the disease, and thereby got their horses well, so as in a short time to have them at their work again, which to the groom is an object of great importance.

But when the distemper comes on, attended with the usual symptoms—as the horse being taken with a shivering; being off his food; having a slight cough; the glands of his throat enlarged, his mouth hot, and his legs swollen: if a groom takes upon himself the treatment of a horse labouring under the above slight symptoms, he generally has recourse to the constitutional remedies already mentioned, and his local applications are poultices, or a mild embrocation to the throat, with warm clothing about the head. Nor in slight cases of the distemper are those external

remedies by any means injudicious. But in his constitutional treatment of the disease, I should advise his dispensing with the use of sweet spirits of nitre, and to give, in lieu thereof, medicines which will gently relax the bowels; and when the horse appears to be in a convalescent state, he may then give the spirits of nitre, morning and evening, with considerable advantage.

The symptoms attending the distemper will, of course, occasionally vary in different horses, depending much on the violence of the attack. Those symptoms first mentioned will most of them be present, but in a more violent degree; the respiration and pulse is much increased, the latter often from sixty to seventy; the eyes sometimes appear inflamed and watery; the parotid and maxillary glands, or in other words, the glands about the throat and under the jaws, are inflamed and enlarged; the membranes of the nostrils, throat, and wind-pipe, are also highly inflamed. The throat being very sore, the horse has great difficulty in swallowing his food and water, but more particularly the latter, if given cold; he sips and slavers in the pail, and coughs repeatedly; added to the above symptoms, great debility often ensues in the course of a few days. The horse sometimes becomes so weak, that in moving in his stall or box, he is near falling. I have known some horses so well aware of their debilitated state, as to place their quarters against the wall of the box, in order to support themselves while standing.

When a horse first becomes affected with this disease, if, at the time, he is standing in the stable with other horses, he should immediately be removed to a well-ventilated loose box. A good bed should be given to him, and he should be comfortably clothed. The next step to be taken is bleeding; but, as the disease is so often followed by debility, neither bleeding nor purging should be carried to too great an extent. The quantity of blood taken should be regulated according to the age, size, constitution, and condition of the horse, together with the appearance of the symptoms under which he labours. When a horse in good condition, or perhaps lusty, is labouring under the effects of the distemper, provided he be immediately attended to, no great debility will have taken place. In which case, the horse may be bled with safety to the extent of five pints or three quarts, only observing to attend to his age, constitution, &c. The next thing is to get the horse's bowels gently relaxed, but brisk purging must be avoided. If the horse should be a flighty, delicate one, the better way of relaxing his bowels, is by giving him a pint of castor oil; but, if he should be such a horse as, in training, is termed "a hearty one," the more effectual way of relaxing his bowels, is by adding aloes to his oil, in the following proportions—

Barbadoes aloes . 2 drachms
Castor oil . . . 6 ounces

Dissolve the aloes in four ounces of warm water, then add the oil. There is a third description of horse, which, in training, is called "a craving one." It is, at

times, rather difficult gently to relax the bowels of a horse of this description. In order, however, to reduce it to as near a certainty as possible, it is advisable to make a further addition to the aloes and oil; to the former, one drachm; and two ounces to the latter. The above medicines, given in their different proportions, according to the delicacy or strength of the horse's constitution, will have the desired effect—that of relaxing or of very gently purging him. If a groom observes that a horse, on his being first taken ill, is costive in his bowels, he should rub some oil or lard over his hand and arm, and, compressing the former, he should gently introduce it up the fundament, and remove any hard excrement with which his hand may come in contact, after which, he should administer a clyster of milk-warm thin gruel, for the giving of which, an ox's bladder with a wooden pipe (well oiled) attached to it, is, I think, preferable to the pewter syringes used for this purpose.

With regard to diet, a horse in this, as in most other constitutional diseases, feeds but sparingly; yet hot bran mashes should often in the course of the day be put into his manger, and his head should be held over them, with a view to promote as early as possible, a healthy discharge from the nostrils, which, when it takes place, gives great relief. His hay should be wetted, but not put in the rack; he should eat it off the ground; but if his throat be very sore, it may be put in the manger. Green meat, fresh cut, is to be preferred, if it can be had; his drink should be warm

gruel, given to him often during the day, the bucket being held up for him to take it; or, perhaps it would be better to secure the bucket in the stall at a convenient height from the ground, so that the horse may take it as often as he likes.

The progress of recovery, after the operation of the medicine ordered, will depend on the constitution of the horse and the nature of the attack. In slight cases, some horses shake off the effects of the disease in seven or eight days, while others remain labouring under the debilitated effects of it, for two or three weeks. Under these last mentioned circumstances, as the soreness of the throat and cough become much better, and the pulse approaches to the natural standard of health, the groom may with great advantage have recourse to his favourite medicine, the sweet spirits of nitre; an ounce of which, in beer, or in moderately thick gruel, may be given to a horse three times a day. The horse now appears more lively in his countenance, and may be most likely inclined to feed. If he is much debilitated, his strength should be recruited by giving him plenty of gruel; and any thing by way of change that he is disposed to eat, should be provided for him,—as malt mashes, scalded oats, good sweet clover or other hay, or green meat.

If it be a light delicate horse, and have been but slightly attacked with the distemper early in the spring, the groom may have some hopes of bringing him out in time, to run according to his engagements. But if the horse be a craving one, and have suffered long

from a severe attack of the disease, great good will not be done with him much before the autumn. When a horse has recovered from the disease, the manner of his feeding, together with his general appearance as to freshness, are the criterions by which the groom must be guided in gradually bringing the horse again into work, so as to have him in his usual or proper form.

I have here laid down such a course of treatment as I would advise a training groom to follow, in the case of a horse affected with the distemper, and to an extent which I think is as far as a man of his experience can safely be trusted. If a groom finds, in the course of his treatment, that unfavourable symptoms are approaching, as that of a horse's respiration becoming increased, his ears and extremities being cold, and his pulse much quickened (which latter, by the bye, a groom should endeavour to make himself acquainted with), it is the lungs, in all probability, which are becoming affected. Under such unfavourable appearances, a groom should lose no time in calling in the aid of an experienced veterinary surgeon.

CHAPTER V.

FOOD.

The sort of hay the most proper for horses in training, is the hard upland hay; which if it has been well got in, will not only retain much of its natural colour, but will also possess that agreeable flavour and sweetness, which is invariably observed in that which has been well made. It may be used for horses the following year. Neither new hay nor such as may have been much heated in the rick should ever be given to craving horses: neither should they have clover hay, for if those horses generally in strong work, be allowed to eat new hay, they become relaxed in their bowels, and will sweat profusely with very little exertion. Hay that is much heated in the rick is sweet in its taste, and from the quantity horses are inclined to eat of it, it produces great thirst. This is a sufficient reason for its not being given to such horses in training as may be in strong work.

Clover hay, well made, may be given to some of the

light delicate horses, by way of a change; but it should not be given to craving horses, which are apt to feed too voraciously on it.

Oats, which my readers know, constitute the principal food for horses of all descriptions when in work, are the cleanest, the best, and perhaps the most nutritious of any of the different sorts of corn, and they appear to agree with the different constitutions of all horses. For those in training, they should, of course, be of the very best quality,—sweet, heavy, and thin in the skin. They should not only be well winnowed, but particularly well screened before they are brought from the farmer's, so as to do away with all the small thin light oats, and tailings. It is better that the oats should be thus cleaned before they are delivered into the stables, than that they should be thrashed or beat in sacks by the boys between stable hours, a little at a time, and, as was the practice, afterwards winnowed by them, by letting them fall from the sieve into some spare sheets or quarter pieces laid on the heath for the purpose on a windy day.

Beans are very nutritious; they are of an astringent and heating nature, and if given too liberally, they produce great thirst, and make some horses very costive. Craving horses do not require them. These horses, when in training, eat from twelve to fifteen quarts of oats per day, by which their constitutions are sufficiently nourished; therefore beans need not be given them, unless when travelling. If a groom, when travelling with horses, observe the hay and corn at the inns to

be bad, or even indifferent, he may, under such circumstances, give beans to craving horses as well as to others, with a view to keep them to their mark; but strong constitutioned horses *only* require them on such occasions.

Very light delicate horses are mostly pretty clear in their wind, but are generally very irritable in their constitutions. Their bowels are almost constantly in a relaxed state, and whenever they are alarmed, they are much in the habit of what is termed "throwing off their meat." Beans being mixed with oats for such horses, as well to nourish them as by way of change, are at all times absolutely necessary, as there is not much danger of their becoming constipated in their bowels. Beans may be given more liberally to these horses than to any other, their digestive organs being always found adequate to perform the office of digesting the small portion of food taken into the stomach, at each time of being fed. Indeed, such light delicate horses as I am now alluding to, may eat and drink as much as they like, and of what they like that is wholesome, and will afford them nourishment; for if by the means of nourishing food they can be got to put up a little extra flesh, the groom may now and then steal an additional gallop into them, or let them come a little longer length in one, which would be the means of bringing them a little stouter, and thereby enable them to come the length they have to run, with rather more ease to themselves. If so, they will be the less alarmed when pulled up after their race. Horses which eat

from ten to twelve quarts of oats during the day, and drink moderately, may occasionally have beans given them in their corn.

When beans are given to such horses in training as require them, they should be hulled and split; and of such, a double-handful may be mixed in each feed of corn. They should not be given in large quantities, neither should they be given alone.

I remember an instance, about six years since, of a horse breaking loose in the stable, and getting at some beans, and eating a great quantity of them; from which circumstance he became very ill. I was asked by the owner to examine the horse, which I did, and the symptoms I observed to be present, were those of his being in a torpid state. He was very thirsty, his mouth hot, and his pulse was nearly a hundred; he was extremely costive, and his urine, when voided, was of the colour of strong coffee. I recommended to the owner such remedies for his relief as I thought most likely to succeed with him, and the horse eventually recovered.

White pease and wheat mixed with the oats were sometimes given, by way of change, to delicate horses, and to induce them to feed; but while they feed moderately on oats and beans, I should certainly not recommend the addition of either of the former.

Chaff is a mixture of about equal parts of the best sort of hay and wheat straw, cut short in a machine. This sort of food is mostly given to horses in common use, for the purpose of making some of them grind their corn, that would otherwise swallow it whole, by

feeding too voraciously. It is for this purpose sometimes given to race-horses, when laying by in the winter; but the straw is generally omitted.

The best sweet clover hay, cut into chaff, and a little of it mixed with the corn, given to the light delicate horses, even when in training, is not a bad thing, by way of change, and as an inducement for them to feed.

Bran is generally used in the preparing of horses for their physic, it being made into mashes with hot water, and suffered to remain covered up in the bucket until sufficiently cool, when it may be given them. In winter, it is a useful sort of food for such horses as are apt to be costive from the quantity of corn they eat. A mash of equal parts of bran and oats, given two or three times a week to such horses as may be laying by in winter, is very efficacious in keeping their bodies in a proper state. Some craving horses, from resting during the winter, are inclined to put up a great deal of flesh; this they may be allowed to do to a certain extent; but I am not aware of any advantage to be derived from allowing them to grow so very fat, as some of them will do. As far as my observations have gone on this matter, horses are certainly more liable to constitutional diseases, when in too plethoric a state.

Such horses as are inclined to put up a great quantity of flesh, should occasionally have mashes given them as I have above advised, and these, with an occasional half dose of physic, will keep them cool, and prevent them from getting too lusty.

When I was a boy, it was the custom with some grooms to make bread composed of equal parts of beans, wheaten-flour, and oat-meal, and not unfrequently, some stomach medicines, such as are generally used in cordial balls; these being mixed together into a paste with eggs and ale, and then baked. This sort of bread was given to the horses for a short period before they run; when sufficiently stale, it was crumbled and mixed with their corn. This practice, which is a most pernicious one, has, I hope, long since been done away with. When race-horses are once taken into training, they should be kept in the stables both summer and winter until they have completed their running. If turned out for three or four months, as hunters usually are, (but which, by the bye, is very injudicious, as I have often known those with large carcasses come up with very bad and sometimes incurable coughs) they would doubtless get rid of the staleness arising from the work they have had. Their constitutions would no doubt be much refreshed by the beneficial effects of the pure air and green food, provided the season were dry and the paddocks not too large. Their legs and feet would also be much benefitted, the former from the gentle exercise they would give themselves in this natural state, and the latter from the soft surface of the ground; yet these advantages are more than counterbalanced by the mischief which at times results. Those race-horses which require refreshing the most, are those of a strong constitution, and such as have been much abused by strong

exercise, travelling, and repeated running. But the objection to turning out horses of this description is, they have generally voracious appetites; not being satisfied with eating grass only, but they eat a quantity of dirt, or any other stuff about the grounds they meet with and fancy. If a horse of this sort were to be turned out for three or four months, he would at the end of that time have become very fat, soft, and bloated; and when taken up, he would be unreasonably coarse and out of form; the muscles of his body and tendons of his legs, from want of proper attention, would have become very much relaxed. To get the horse again into training condition, could not perhaps be done so effectually as it would have been in the first instance; and if it could, it would take as much time and trouble (exclusive of breaking) as when he first left his paddock as a colt.

In some stables in which I once lived, I remember an instance of a race-horse which belonged to my master being kicked in the hock, and the part becoming much swollen. Various were the remedies applied, without reducing the enlargement; at last, it was thought advisable to turn the horse out, night and day, into a large paddock, it being supposed, from the gentle exercise he would then give himself, that the hock might become fine. But this latter remedy had not the effect desired, that of reducing the enlargement. How long the horse remained out I do not remember; but I very well recollect, when he was taken up, that

he was in the plethoric state I have just described, and I believe he was not put in training after.

I have here related the above fact, merely to point out to those of my readers who may not be well versed in the management of race-horses, that there is no real advantage to be gained in turning them out,—at least, the craving ones. It is much against them, if they are afterwards intended to be trained. These horses require, when in training, to be kept in pretty strong work to keep them clean in their muscles, and clear in their wind. Such work being continued regularly for a long time (as it often is with country plate horses) brings them not only stale on their legs, but stale in their constitutions, and sooner or later renders them unfit to run in their best form. It therefore becomes necessary to refresh such horses during the periods which intervene between one meeting and another. Some of them, as I have already noticed, are refreshed by physic alone, but this is generally done to save time.

When all the conveniences can be had for the purpose, the most natural and judicious way of refreshing such horses is, by giving them rest for a sufficient time, and soiling them in the stables for ten days, a fortnight, or three weeks, as the judgment of the training groom may best approve.

The descriptions of green food given to race-horses for this purpose, are tares, vetches, lucerne and clover grass. These grasses should be sown so as to have a succession of crops in the highest perfection for the

supply of the horses, from early in the spring till late in the autumn. They should be cut just before they begin to blossom, when they are young and full of juice, and should never be given when rank and overgrown. Each stable-boy should cut for his horse a rubber-full or two every stable hour, so as to have them quite cool and fresh.

Depending on the constitutions of different horses, and the quantity of green meat given them, so will each horse become affected by its use. Such as may have become stale from strong work, or abused from country running, require the greatest quantity; and with a view to increase the action of their bowels and kidneys as much as possible, their green meat should be first given them alone—I mean, unmixed with hay. There is not the danger in purging them with it as with strong physic, although it has often, on those occasions, all the advantages of the latter. It is their natural food, and, as well as gently purging them, promotes, to a great extent, the secretion of urine, which is seldom effected by physic. If they purge for a day or two, they become a little light, as they would from the use of physic; but they do not become either weak or faint, nor lose their appetite, which is often the case with many of them, when purged by too large a quantity of aloes. The usual allowance of corn may be given to all of them, at the time of their being soiled, unless the groom is of opinion that from its astringent property, and the quantity craving horses eat, it may prevent the green meat (as it is termed)

from acting as a purgative. Under these circumstances, less corn may be given for a day or two, or it may even be discontinued for that time; for it is a great point carried, if a craving horse, when on green food, can be got to purge and stale moderately by its use; that is, provided he is not engaged to run again in a short period.

Those horses, which by some grooms are termed hearty or light-hearted ones, are by such appellations understood to be in the medium, as regards the strength of their constitutions; that is, they are between the very light horses, and the very craving ones. As these horses require less work to prepare them for running, they are not so frequently stale on their legs, or in themselves; yet, like those first mentioned, if abused by being too repeatedly run, they become so, and they then require to be refreshed, as directed above, with this exception, that they seldom require to be purged either by green meat or physic to that extent the craving ones do. Their green food may be given them mixed with their hay. As the very light delicate horses cannot stand work to run often, they are never stale on their legs, and are very seldom so in their constitutions; yet green food occasionally given to these horses, by way of variety, is an excellent thing for them. Green meat given to different horses for the period I have mentioned, or as occasion may require, in the spring, summer, or autumn months, is a most salubrious and refreshing sort of food, if cut when young and full of juice. It promotes the secretion of

the different glands of the body, and thereby renovates the whole mass of fluids. The bowels become for two or three days, not only relaxed, but often gently and effectually purged, from the effects of which the horse's legs become cool and in shape, and the stiffness of his limbs as well as the staleness of his constitution (occasioned by strong work) are carried off. A horse having been thus refreshed, he may be said to be in the highest state of perfection; that is, as far as regards his health; but how he is to be brought into the highest state of condition, will be fully explained in its proper place.

In winter, when green food is not to be had, carrots are an excellent substitute: they are cool, nutritious, and easy of digestion. When washed and sliced, they may be given daily in moderate quantities in each feed of corn, to any of the craving horses that may be laying by in loose boxes, and that do not go out to exercise during the winter months. They may be also given to the light delicate horses, or any others that are not in strong work in the winter.

The best wheat straw is the most proper for horses' bedding.

CHAPTER VI.

ON WATER.

Soft, fresh, wholesome, pure, rain, river, or pond water, is, of course, the most proper for horses; but the last mentioned being a stagnant water, should not be used, unless it be on a clear, clay, or chalk bottom. On such surfaces it is not likely to ferment from the heat of the weather. Pond-water, when thus tainted, should not be given to any animal.

All that may be necessary for me to mention, for the information of grooms, in regard to the properties of water beyond that of quenching the thirst of horses is, that it cools the habit, dilutes the blood and fluids of the body, promotes the natural secretions, and assists digestion.

Water is never to be given to craving horses in training, immediately before their food, nor immediately after. Horses of a delicate constitution, which feed very sparingly, may be allowed to drink almost at any time they like. Craving horses eat a great quantity

of food; water given to them immediately after, occasions the grain to swell, and this produces a distension of the stomach, weakens its contracting powers, and thereby retards the process of digestion. Nor should water be given them immediately before or after their work; it is never done by good training grooms.

If the day is wet, and the groom is obliged to water his horses in the stables, whether in the morning or the evening, the water should be given them just before they are stripped to be dressed, which is an hour before they feed; nor are they, when at exercise, to be watered on the heath until the strongest of their work is got into them; they are to be walked for an hour or more, or until they are perfectly cool, before they go to the troughs to drink.

The water on the premises of a racing, or any other establishment, is mostly well or spring water; and, whether hard or soft, it is generally made use of for the horses, unless it is observed to be any way detrimental to their health, which declares itself by their becoming chilly, trembling, or perhaps a little griped after taking it. To prevent hard water from producing these bad effects, it should first be put into the troughs in the yard, with some clay and chalk to soften it, and during the day, the lids of the troughs should be left up, so as to expose the water to the heat of the sun.

When the horses are kept in the stables from other causes than from the wetness of the day, whether in summer or in winter, such water as I have made men-

tion of, should never be given them cold from the pump or well. It should be taken from the troughs, and mixed with hot water, and given to them chilled.

A common wooden bowl, capable of containing about two quarts, with a handle to it, is as convenient a vessel as any for the purpose of taking the water out of the boilers, troughs, or cisterns, at the time of mixing it in the buckets.

In the heat of summer, if it has been exposed to the sun, or kept in the buckets in the stable for some hours, it will not, of course, require to be so much chilled as in winter.

When horses are out at walking exercise in winter, it is certainly preferable (unless the season be very mild) to let them have their water, as I have just observed, with the chill off. It can be got ready by the boys who remain in, and the horses may be walked up to the stable door to be watered.

Craving horses, and light delicate ones, should be watered often in the course of the day; the former should be thus watered, with a view to bring them to drink more moderately, and the latter, with a view, if possible, to induce them to drink more liberally. Those last mentioned, as they are at all times clear in their wind, may have some oatmeal or bran mixed in their water, as an inducement for them to drink. A craving horse eats a great quantity of food; he therefore requires a larger quantity of water to assist in the digestion of it; and if such a horse were watered only twice in the course of a day, he would (if allowed to

do so) drink an immense quantity at each time. Another reason for this horse's drinking more water than any other is, that when he is in training, he is mostly in strong work, and often sweating; and from these causes he becomes more thirsty. The best way to water such a horse, (in the *early* part of his condition, but not otherwise) is, to give it to him often and in small quantities, which is the most likely to bring him to be a more moderate drinker. If he stands in a box, it would be a good plan to leave a bucket of water with him, (unless immediately before or after either sweating or running); it may easily be judged what quantity he has taken, and if it is observed that he has emptied the bucket but a short time before he goes out to exercise, it is only to let him be at walking exercise for a longer period before he takes his gallop, and not to let his gallop be quite so severe; but this experiment is only to be tried in the *early* stage of his condition.

The light delicate horse is, in almost all respects, the very reverse of the craving one; he eats and drinks but sparingly, can take but little work in training, and is so very delicate that he seldom or ever has to sweat; and from fifteen to five-and-twenty, or thirty go-downs is as much as many horses of this description will drink during the whole day.

On all occasions, the greatest care should be taken not to let a horse of this class become alarmed. If at any time he gets frightened in his exercise, or is bullied, by the boy not being sufficiently patient with him, he will most likely not drink when he comes to the

trough, but will stand with his head up, staring and looking wildly about him. A horse of this sort should be tried with some water as soon as he goes into the stable, and as I have before observed, as an inducement to him to drink, a little oatmeal or bran may be mixed in it. If he will not drink it on its being offered, the bucket of water may be put down at the end of the stall, and when the horse is round, having his head and neck dressed, he will sometimes take it quietly of himself; the boy should allow him to do this without noticing him, for if the boy stops dressing his neck or fore legs, the horse will most likely stop drinking, which would be a pity, for if these delicate horses can be brought to drink but moderately, they will many of them feed much better after it, which is a matter of consideration.

Race-horses, like many others, are at times affected with diabetes, or what by grooms is more commonly called, the jawpiss. This disease is generally brought on either by the change of food or water. Horses in common use, as those of the army, when fed on ship oats, which may have been heated by lying too long in the vessel, become immediately affected with this disease in a violent degree. There are particular herbs in the hay which will sometimes produce it, as will also hard brackish water. The first step towards a cure is, to remove the cause which may have produced the disease, by changing either the food or the water; and the remedy generally had recourse to, is that of mixing lime in the water, by putting it either into the

troughs or buckets. The quantity of lime used, should be such as to produce rather a nauseous taste. The water being thus impregnated and given them to drink, generally puts a stop to the disease. Horses, so affected, are rather shy in drinking at first; but the complaint being attended with some degree of fever, they are mostly dry, and although the water is unpleasant to their taste, yet to gratify their thirst, they soon come to drink it.

If the above remedy does not shortly remove the disease, it would be advisable in the groom to call in the aid of a good *practical* veterinary surgeon, who will instantly have recourse to such other treatment as from the symptoms he will see requisite for the relief of the horse.

The remarks I have here offered, relative to water and the watering of horses, are the result of the observations I have made during my practice in the stables; and I have at all times adhered to the system which I have laid down, whenever I have had horses under my own care, and with the happiest results. I am aware that these precautions are scarcely necessary to good, careful, and experienced training grooms; but as I am writing for the information of grooms in general, they are such as, I deem, may at times be found available by many.

CHAPTER VII.

ON PHYSIC.

The autumn and spring are the two seasons of the year, in which most race-horses are to be physicked; but, what particular time in those seasons their physic should be given them, must depend on how late different horses may be engaged for the autumn, or how early their engagements may again take place in the spring.

It is not my intention to enter into a long detail here, relative to the physicking of horses labouring under the various diseases to which they are liable, as this subject has been already very ably treated by the different authors who have published on the veterinary art. I shall therefore confine myself to the accidents and diseases which are likely to take place in the legs of horses in training, and to point out the advantages of administering physic to them on such occasions. To this I shall add a few precautionary remarks, and point out how they are again to be brought into work.

I shall further explain the benefit to be derived by giving physic at various other periods, to such of them as may require it, when in a healthy state, to bring them into racing form.

The frequent necessity of purging race-horses, and the usual quantity of aloes prescribed in each dose by training grooms, do not appear to be approved by several of those who have published on the veterinary art. They appear to be of opinion, that the physicking system is altogether carried to too great an extent in race-horse stables. They may have been led to form this opinion, by observing that all horses in common use, when in health, do their work extremely well without being so repeatedly purged; and they also find in their private practice, that when it is necessary to purge horses of this description, a much less quantity of aloes will answer the purpose, than is generally given by training grooms to race-horses. As far as my experience has gone in the physicking of horses in the cavalry, I think those authors are perfectly right: they have therefore, very judiciously, recommended in their different publications, light doses of physic, to prevent the very bad effects of horses being over-purged; and since the establishment of that valuable institution, the Veterinary College, and the distribution of its pupils into different parts of the country, I have no doubt but the lives of some hundreds of horses, or perhaps thousands, may have been saved by the moderate doses of physic which have long since been prescribed, by veterinary surgeons, for horses in general use. I

allude to such horses as are employed either in business or for pleasure, as cart and carriage horses, hacks, and horses in the cavalry. Such horses as I have here made mention of, unless labouring under disease, will not, in all probability, have a dose of physic given them in the course of the year; and many cart and carriage horses may be in the possession of their owners for seven or fourteen years without ever having a dose of physic administered to them, or perhaps during their lives. Nor do I see that they require it, provided they are in good health. Hacks may require physic more frequently than cart or carriage horses, or horses in the calvary, as they are generally going a tolerable good pace, and in consequence of the weight being placed on their backs, they are more liable to become stale on their legs; and from these circumstances, may require physic and rest to refresh them, more frequently than the other descriptions of horses above-mentioned. Now, should any horse in common use fall amiss, we will say, on one of his fore legs, either from the leg having been violently strained or bruised, and from which the horse becomes so lame as not to be able to go on with his work, he is laid by, and the owner puts another horse of a similar description to work in his place; and this the owner may do without any very great inconvenience to himself. The horse which may have received the injury, may be treated, as the case may require, with the usual external applications of poultices, fomentations, bandages, and rest; and this sort of treatment may be sufficient, probably

without the assistance of physic. The horse being allowed to rest until the inflammation subsides, and the parts having recovered their former tone, he again becomes sound, and from his having lain by for a long time he gets lusty, and when perfectly recovered from the accident, the owner consoles himself by observing that his horse has become fat, and in fine condition.

This may be all very well with a horse in common use, but it is quite another thing with a race-horse. In the first instance, his engagements will not allow of his being replaced ; and I am fully aware, should any accident happen to a race-horse when in training, near the time of his coming to post, his race must be done away with, and the owner will have to meet his losses accordingly.

But before I conclude on this subject, I shall (as my readers may expect) point out to them, very minutely, the frequent necessity there is, from accidents and other causes which take place, of physicking race-horses, and why the physic given to them is so much stronger than is generally given to horses in common use. I have already described the treatment by which a horse of the latter description might be recovered in case of injury to one of his fore legs ; and, perhaps, as I have already observed, without the use of physic. But, in order to prove that the same treatment, without physic, would not effect the recovery of the leg of a race-horse in training, which may have met with a similar accident, let us take, by way of example, a very strong craving race-horse ; I mean, such a horse which, if he

do not sweat three times a fortnight, will certainly have to sweat once in five or six days. Let us also suppose this horse to have fallen amiss in one of his fore legs,—we will say, six weeks before his race; and as we would wish to bring him to post the day on which he is engaged, we will consider the injury which he may have received not to be of a very serious nature, but such as may have arisen from a blow he may have given himself on his leg with the opposite foot, perhaps in going along in his sweat, in changing his legs, or coming incautiously round a turn; or it may have occurred in the act of pulling up, if his boots should not be sufficiently thick to ward off a blow of this kind. The way by which the leg may have become injured is not very material; but I prefer representing an injury of this sort, as it is one which may soon be got the better of by proper management; yet it is of sufficient importance to shew the great necessity there is for administering physic to a race-horse under such circumstances.

A horse having received an injury of this kind, may not immediately go lame, nor may the leg immediately enlarge from it; perhaps not until the following morning. Now, it is the custom with a good training groom, in the morning, before he goes out with his horses to exercise, to examine the legs of such of them as may have sweat the day previous; and if he observe the leg of a horse out of shape, he immediately handles and examines it very minutely, and finds perhaps, that there is a great deal of inflammation present, which to him, is a

very unpleasant discovery;—more particularly so, with a craving horse, and one which may, perhaps, be heavily engaged. The first thing to be done with this horse, as with one in common use, is to stop his work, and such external application as may be thought best to answer the purpose of subsiding the inflammation, is applied to the leg by the groom; and with a view of assisting to relieve the inflammation, and to forward the cure with as little delay as possible, the groom also gives a strong dose of physic, for a mild one would not have much effect on such a horse, while he is at rest; but this will be more fully explained by and bye, when I treat of the physicking of race-horses generally. A veterinary surgeon would give a horse in common use a dose of physic, with a view also to assist in subsiding the inflammation of the leg; and if the horse be lusty, he would in all probability bleed him, which I think is a very good practice, and one which I have always followed; and generally speaking, it is very similar to that which I believe every veterinary surgeon in private practice, adheres to. But then the veterinary surgeon has only one object in view in physicking and bleeding his patient, which is that of relieving the inflammation in the local part; and should the horse in common use, put up flesh during the time of his recovery, it may be considered (as I have already observed) rather as an advantage than otherwise. Now, the groom in giving a dose of physic to a horse in training, with a bad leg, has the same object in view as the veterinary surgeon,—to relieve the inflam-

mation of the leg; but he has also another object in view, and it is one which he must not lose sight of—that of preventing a craving horse, when laying by, from getting too lusty; and the only chance he has of carrying his point, and bringing the horse to post on the day appointed, is, to give him plenty of physic to prevent his putting up flesh, and to keep him from getting fat in his inside, as well as to relieve the leg. From this treatment, the leg will in the course of a week or ten days have become cool and in shape, and the groom may then begin to think of bringing the leg very gradually to its former strength again. This he does by sending the horse to gentle walking exercise, on as level a piece of ground as can possibly be found for the purpose.

Now to prevent a similar accident from again taking place, I will just here remark, that when a horse has been laying by for some time, in consequence of an accident, he gets what is commonly termed in the stables, hearty and calfish, and on the first day or two of his coming out to exercise, he is generally inclined to begin his gambols, and bound about, and more particularly if he is taken immediately on the open downs. To prevent a thing of this sort from taking place, it may be advisable to take such precautions as will be likely to ensure safety, not only to the horse, but also to the boy. In the first place, the boy who may be put to ride the horse in his exercise, should be selected from among those who ride best; and in the second

place, instead of the horse going to the open downs to exercise, he should be taken into a well-fenced paddock; and it may be found needful, on the first day of taking him into it, to buckle on a leading rein to the bit, and either the groom or head lad should lead the horse, with the boy riding him to the paddock. It may also be found requisite to lead such a horse round the paddock during the whole of the time he may be at exercise on the first day, and this should be continued for the first two, or perhaps three days, if it be observed that the horse is much inclined to play and spring about. After the horse comes to walk quietly, unless there can be, in all respects, the most implicit confidence placed in the boy who rides him, it would be advisable for the groom or head lad to remain in the paddock while the horse is at exercise, as boys are apt to be tricky. Now during the time that the horse is walking in the paddock, his leg, from this sort of exercise, is gaining strength; and at different opportunities when the horse is in the stable, stripped, and being brushed over, the groom, if he is a good judge, makes his observations on the state of the horse's condition. He, in a way peculiar to himself, not only looks him over very minutely, but handles and feels him over in every part where he is likely to put up flesh; and if he finds from the rest the horse has had, that he has gained a certain portion of flesh, the groom, being aware that the leg is in too delicate a state to put the horse immediately into strong work, considers the best thing to be done is to give him an-

other dose of physic. Should this dose of physic not lighten the horse of his flesh as much as the groom could wish or expect, it will conjointly with the walking exercise the horse has, certainly prevent him from getting into a more plethoric state, and the leg is every day continuing to get stronger. Three or four days after the second dose of physic has set, the groom begins to think of giving the horse a few short gentle gallops, daily, on as level a piece of ground as he can get for the purpose—that is, it should be even and flat, free from any rises or falls in any part of it. And care should be taken with a horse which may have had a bad leg, to bring him by degrees to his usual gallops, gradually increasing the length and pace, until the groom observes the horse's wind is good enough to enable him to go through a gentle sweat with tolerable ease to himself.

The next thing the groom has to consider is, the sort of boy he is to put up to ride the horse in his sweat. He should be one selected from among the best riding boys he has, and one that is in high practice in riding of sweats. Such a boy knows how to carry the groom's orders into execution, according to the state of the ground, or the condition the horse may be in. And as soon as the boy has got the horse well away, and settled to the pace, he sits quietly down in the saddle, and keeps a pretty fast hold of the horse's head; yet, at times, by giving and taking at gentle pulls, he takes care to keep the horse's mouth alive. This gives him the advantage of always having a pull

over him, and which pull he takes whenever he sees a necessity for it; and in this way he prevents the horse from breaking way, and thereby over-marking himself, which might occasion a fresh accident. But this sort of thing is not very likely to happen, if the boy that rides the horse be such a one as I have described. He well knows how to rate the horse at a fair and even pace throughout the whole of his sweat; and whether such a horse will have to sweat by himself, or should have another horse to come home with him, will depend on the sort of horse he is. But the manner of sweating different horses will be fully explained in the second part of this work, when we are on the subject of training race-horses.

As soon as the horse in question has been brought home to the stables after sweating, and as soon as he is dressed, and his legs are well fomented, the leg which we have described as being amiss, should have the cold lotion, * with the bandage applied to it. This application should be continued to the leg while the horse is in the stable, until the groom feels confident that the leg has completely recovered its former tone, which he may observe from its continuing perfectly cool and in shape.

But, when the horse is at exercise, the boot on the leg, if well padded, is, I think, preferable to the ban-

* Such as was commonly used by trainers on such occasions; as the crude sal ammoniac, and sugar of lead; of the former, four ounces, and of the latter, one ounce, dissolved in three pints of vinegar and one pint of water.

dage, as it is better adapted to ward off blows, and to prevent a similar accident from again occurring.

We have been some time on the subject of this bad leg, with a view to shew the necessity there is for administering physic for relief, and also to shew how necessary it is to give physic, to prevent so craving a horse as we have described from getting too lusty when laying by. But this physic has another advantage which has not yet been mentioned,—that of taking the staleness out of the horse, from the strong work he has for some time been doing; and it is precisely what the groom must have done with him, at or about the time I have made choice of, whether he had fallen amiss in his leg or not; and this is what is generally called the commmencement of a second preparation, and is highly necessary at certain periods, in the training of race-horses which have been a long time in strong work. Now, had such a race-horse as we have alluded to, been allowed to lay by for the recovery of his leg, as a horse in common use may have been permitted to do, he would, without physic, have become so very lusty, as to put it quite out of the power of any training groom to have brought him to post, within the time I have mentioned. Were such a thing to be attempted, I suppose it would be done, by first giving the horse a dose of physic, and then putting him into strong and rapid work; but be this as it may, he never could be brought to post in such form as to enable him to compete with horses which may have been allowed a proper time to train.

Before I proceed further, it may be advisable for me to observe, that should a horse of strong constitution meet with an accident, and seriously strain or injure the tendons of his leg, he may as well be immediately put out of training, for it is more than a hundred to one, that a leg, thus injured, can ever be sufficiently recovered by any sort of means, so as to get such work into a strong-constitutioned horse, as to enable him to run with other race-horses.

I shall now proceed to treat of the physicking of race-horses more generally, commencing with those which are sound and in health. Such of them with strong constitutions, as may have become stale in themselves, and stale on their legs, or their legs being a little swollen from travelling and running during the summer, I shall not consider as being unhealthy. Others which I shall have occasion to mention, as young ones and light ones, will require but little physic; the former will not become stale until they have been some time in training, although their constitutions may be strong; and the latter are still less subject to this sort of thing, in consequence of their not being able to stand such work as would occasion it.

With the approach of autumn, the racing season concludes. Some meetings, however, in different parts of the country, are over much earlier than others; and when race-horses are supposed to have done running for the season, and have returned to their home stables to winter, such of them as may be allowed by their owners to remain under the care of public training

grooms, are put, as it is termed, into physic. To bring this point,—the physicking of race-horses generally,—before my readers as clearly as I possibly can, I shall commence with the physicking of such horses as may be standing at home public racing stables—say for example, at Newmarket, for there, either with young ones or old ones, training may be said to be always going on. The meetings at Newmarket conclude the latter end of October, which is, perhaps, too late in the season to get green meat for the horses, in such perfection as is requisite to assist in refreshing them. Therefore to refresh some horses, and to lighten others, the grooms begin in the month of November, to prepare them for their physic; and their custom was, with such horses as had been running and travelling the whole of the summer, to give each of them on his return to the home stable, three doses of physic, with an interval of eight or ten days between each dose; and in the spring, prior to their going into training (depending on how early their engagements may take place,) three doses more were given them, with the same interval of time between each, and this was termed putting the horses through their different courses of physic. The first course was to take the staleness out of them, and bring their legs in shape, which it did most effectually. The second course in the spring, was to carry off the humours and to assist in lightening the horses before they were put into training. But I hope by this time, that some of the training grooms, if not all of them, have seen the im-

propriety of repeating dose after dose in this way; if they have not, I will endeavour to point out to them by and bye, when on the subject of training, how physic may be administered in both instances much more to the advantage of the horses.

The preparing of race-horses for their physic in the autumn, may be done in much the same manner as with horses in common use; as more time may be allowed for those horses of strong constitutions to be kept on mashes, than when they are in training. Three or four mashes a day, of equal parts of bran and oats, for a couple of days, will relax their bowels, and thereby facilitate the action of the medicine on them; and a less portion of aloes in their physic than is generally given to them when in regular training, will answer the purpose of purging them equally well. It was formerly a rule with grooms, and it may, I have no doubt, be much practised by many at present, whenever they were going to physic several horses on the same day, to give the whole of them their physic early in the morning. With strong constitutioned horses this may be very proper; for in the common way of preparing those horses, the medicine seldom operates until the following morning; that is, it generally remains in the bowels of those strong horses for four-and-twenty hours before it begins to purge them. But with others, which may be more delicate, it will be seen to operate in the course of eight, ten, or twelve hours.

As we are not in so great a hurry for the medicine

to act now, as we should be were the horses in training, or were they labouring under disease, we prefer giving them their physic at different times, with a view to have them all purging on the following morning when at exercise. In endeavouring to accomplish this, the groom must bear in mind, when he is about giving physic to a number of horses on the same day, (say fifteen or twenty for example), that the constitutions of so many horses will vary, more or less; consequently, he must vary the quantity of aloes in each dose, according to the age, constitution, and condition of each horse; but he must also regulate the time of day that different horses should have their physic given them after they come in from exercise in the morning. Those of craving constitutions may have their physic given them immediately after they come in, at seven or eight o'clock in the morning. Those with constitutions not quite so strong, may have theirs given them at twelve o'clock in the day; and those which may be still more delicate (if it be determined to physic them), may have theirs given them at four or six o'clock in the evening; and by this method they may be got to purge pretty nearly at one time, which is an object worth attending to, as the groom can more readily judge how each dose of physic operates on each horse, in proportion to the quantity of aloes given.

Such horses as are known to the groom to be shy drinkers in physic, must be watered sparingly at twelve o'clock, the day before the physic is given, instead of at four or six in the evening. From this

treatment they are most of them inclined to drink pretty freely on the following day. And on the night previous to giving them their physic in the morning, it would be advisable to keep them short of hay, more particularly the craving ones. Instead of giving them their usual allowance, let them have half the quantity; and those which may be inclined to eat their litter may have the setting muzzles put on, when the boys go into the stables to go to bed. Let those that do this be set as sharp as they would be for their sweat or race. The groom, on first opening the stables in the morning on the day the physic is to be given, should give each of the horses a small portion of mash, before they go out to exercise, and when the horses return to the stables again, the craving ones, after their heads are dressed, before they are turned round in the stall, may have their physic given them; and the other light horses, at the different periods which I have already directed. All the horses, after having their physic, remain in the stables for the day, and the usual stable hours are kept, at which times they have their warm water given them, and they are afterwards stripped and brushed over, their clothes again put on, and their legs rubbed. Their mashes are given them, with small portions of hay, and they are shut up. Horses in physic, particularly those which may be a little sick, should be fed sparingly. When it is observed they are not inclined to eat their mashes, they should be taken from them; if they do not seem inclined to eat their hay, they may have a little clean sweet straw given them, to pick and

pull about, and amuse themselves with; many of them will eat it, when in physic, in preference to any thing else.

On opening the stables in the morning, the day the physic is to be worked off, as soon as the boys have set the beds fair, and brought them sufficiently back for the horses to purge on, each boy may then put two or three plats in his horse's tail, and tie it round at the bottom, to prevent it from becoming soiled whenever the horse purges. The whole of the horses should now have their warm water, each being allowed to drink as much as he likes; after which, they should be brushed over and got ready for exercise. They are to be comfortably clothed, according to the season of the year. In the autumn or spring, they should have good full-sized blanket-sort of rugs next to their skin, with a sheet and quarter piece on top; if there is much wind out, a breast sweater may be put on, to keep their clothes down in front, and their quarter strings should also be put on, to keep them from blowing up behind; or, what perhaps is to be preferred, is a piece of binding attached to the hinder part of the sheet or quarter piece, so arranged as to form a sort of crupper, to go under the horse's tail. The bridle and the hood should be put on each horse as he is standing in the stall, with his head to the rack. If a horse is brought round in the usual way, for the purpose of having those things put on, he may purge in the manger if his physic has begun to work. Each boy should be made to back his horse out of the stall, when he is going out to exercise.

Now, as exercise greatly assists the action of medicine, the groom should not only regulate the time each horse is to remain at exercise, but also how often each horse should come out on the day the physic is working off. Those which the groom observes to purge freely, may not be out more than once, or twice at farthest, the first thing in the morning, and at four o'clock in the afternoon. But others, which may be thought not to purge sufficiently, and which may be rather lusty, may come out to exercise three times in the day ; the first thing in the morning, at eleven or twelve o'clock in the day, and at four in the afternoon. Any of them that may require to be out for longer periods than others may be sent out half an hour or an hour earlier than the rest, so that they may all come in together, to admit of the whole of the stables being shut up at the same time. But on their first coming into the stables from exercise, it is necessary again to take the precaution with them, in regard to not bringing them round in the stalls to have their heads dressed. Each boy should ride his horse into the stall, dismount, take off his hood and bridle, wisp and wipe his horse's head, sponge his nostrils, and with a rubber, wipe them dry, then put on his collar, and chain up his head.

I have known some grooms, who would not have their horse's feet washed, or even have them dressed on the day of their physic working off. All they would allow to be done would be to have their clothes put straight, their quarters cleaned, and their legs well rubbed. I must confess I was rather particular in

this respect myself, when I was a groom. But since I have practised as a veterinary surgeon, I have physicked horses in various ways, and under such a variety of circumstances, that I am quite confident there is no danger to be apprehended from either washing their feet, or stripping them to be dressed. In the stables they are to be kept comfortably clothed, with blankets next their skin. The top clothing, which is put on them in physic, and also for them to sleep in, should be the old ones, which are fit for no other purpose. After their feet are washed, and before the boys strip them, such of them as may not have purged briskly, or drank freely before they went out, may be tried again now they are in, with a little warm water, and then let the whole of them be dressed, and their legs be well rubbed; and after the stables are set fair, give them their mashes and hay, strip their quarters, shut them up, and let the boys get their breakfasts. The groom, on coming into the stables at noon time, is to make his observations on such of the horses as may have purged repeatedly in the stables. Such of them as may have been affected in this way, should remain in until four o'clock in the afternoon; and those which may not have purged much in the stables, should be watered and sent out to exercise, with a view to get the medicine to act sufficiently. When they come in at twelve or one o'clock, they are to be treated as in the morning: and those which may have to stop in at this noon period, should be watered, their quarters cleaned, wisped over, clothed up, their

manes combed, and their legs rubbed. They are to be fed as in the morning, on mashes and a small portion of hay, and then shut up. The groom, on coming into the stables at four o'clock in the afternoon, is again to make his observations how each horse may have purged in the stables; and such of them as he may observe to have purged briskly throughout the whole of the day, he will order to be left in, and those which have purged moderately, he will order out to exercise with those others which were out in the middle of the day: and on their coming into the stables, they will be treated in every respect as they were at noon time. But the mashes and warm water should be discontinued to those horses which I have directed to be left in, in consequence of their physic having purged very briskly, most likely from its having been given too strong. Warm thick gruel, in small quantities, should be given to them, instead of their mashes; they may also have a little dry bran and oats, mixed in equal parts. Their beds being set fair, their heads should be let down so as to reach the manger, and those horses which may not have been so much purged, should have their mashes given them. The stables may then be shut up until eight o'clock, at which stable hour, the horses that have been purging briskly the whole of the day, may again be tried with a little more thick gruel, and if the groom thinks they will eat a little dry corn, he may give them a dish-full. The beds being again set fair, the whole of the horses' heads let down, their quarters

stripped (the boys being ready to go to bed, having previously got their suppers) the stables may now be shut up for the night, which will most likely be about nine o'clock. On the following morning, when the groom comes to the stables, he expects to find each horse's physic set; in other words, to have stopped working. Such of the light horses as may not have purged much the day before, and such others as may have stopped purging in the night, may, the first thing in the morning, have a dish-full of corn given them, which they will eat whilst the stables are setting fair; they may then be got ready to go out on the downs. But if the weather is cold, windy, or uncertain as to rain, they may be walked in the paddock at the back of the stables for an hour or so, merely to give them an appetite. When they return to the stables, they are to be fed and treated in all respects as they were prior to their going into physic. But those horses which we have already made mention of as having been briskly purged the day before, and which have not quite stopped purging the next morning, are to remain in the stables the whole of the day. They should be fed on dry food, and have some thick gruel given them to drink, at the different stable hours; and on the following morning, their physic being set, they may be taken out as the other horses were the day before.

I have, in the early part of this chapter, made mention of the necessity there would be for giving physic to a horse in training, that may have met with an

accident, and injured one of his legs, which injury may occasion such horse to be laid by for its recovery. I have also spoken of the manner in which race-horses in two different states of condition were physicked by grooms in the autumn; the first, being light and stale; the last mentioned, young, fresh, and lusty. But as at this season of the year, plenty of time can be allowed them to be on mashes, so as sufficiently to relax their bowels, a less quantity of aloes will answer the purpose of purging them. There is, therefore, not much difficulty or danger to be apprehended in physicking these horses. Those which I have made mention of as being stale ones, should be put into large loose places; the young ones should be taken into the training stables: and in a future chapter I shall state the manner in which they are repeatedly to be treated during the winter.

CHAPTER VIII.

ON PHYSIC.

In the last chapter I treated on the physicking of race-horses not in training; or rather, of those which, from various causes, may have been put out of training for a short time. In this, I propose to show how some of them are to be physicked, and for what purposes, when they are in regular training. But before I enter fully on this subject, it may be proper, in order to prevent errors, to make some few observations on the effects of aloes on the constitution of the race-horse, under certain circumstances. When I first went to live as a boy in the stables, I remember great mistakes to have been made by grooms, both in the internal and external applications of medicines; and I confess that when I became a groom myself, I fell into similar errors. Nor was it much to be wondered at, for grooms, generally speaking, were very little acquainted with the properties of medicine, not even of the few they made use of for the horses under their care. They

were in this respect principally guided by the recipes of their forefathers. I have known them give aloes in very large portions to horses in training, and at times, without paying due attention to their constitutions, or to the state in which their bodies were at the time; and from these circumstances, a valuable horse has now and then died in physic; and this is an error to which grooms have too frequently been liable. The aloes which were formerly made use of by grooms, were principally the succotrine; but for horses they are uncertain in their effect, and are seldom to be depended on, unless with delicate horses, or when given in very large quantities.

The Barbadoes aloes, being stronger than any others, are of course more active, and although given in a less quantity, they are more certain in their operation. If these aloes are given in proper quantities, according to the age, constitution, and condition of the horse, there is no danger to be apprehended from their use. Indeed, as far as my experience has gone, I think the Barbadoes far the best for all descriptions of horses, but more particularly for race-horses, which are at all times very difficult to be purged. It is by giving powerful physic that horses are much debilitated, and thrown back in their condition. I remember an instance of a large quantity of aloes being given to a three-year-old colt, which I looked after myself. The groom I was living under at that time could neither read nor write; nor could any boy in the stable except myself. Stable boys, at the period I am

alluding to, could not boast much of their education, nor had I much to speak of in this way myself. I could read and write, and knew some little of figures. The groom, poor man, was so unfortunate as not to know any thing of either the one or the other, so that, to prevent mistakes, it was a rule with him whenever he was going to physic any of his horses, to bring his recipes to me to read, which I did. As well as reading his recipes, I kept his accounts and wrote his letters, and read those he received; in short, I may be said to have been the groom's private secretary, and in that capacity, I had the good fortune to enjoy his most unrestricted confidence. But to return. The dose of physic which was made up for the colt just alluded to, contained twelve drachms of aloes; and, at that time, it was an invariable custom with grooms to add a variety of other ingredients in the making up of their physic. By these additions, a ball became so large, that it could not be given at once; the mass was therefore divided into two, and sometimes three balls. The three-year-old which had this dose of physic given him, I remember was purged to great excess, and he was several days before he recovered from the effects of it. I was not very capable of judging of the constitutions of horses at the time, but I expect he must have had a pretty strong constitution, or such a dose of physic would have killed him.

By way of caution to grooms, and with a view to prevent them in future from falling into similar errors, I will here state different causes from which I have

known horses occasionally die in physic. I have already observed that there are some horses much more easily purged than others; but the horse which now and then leads the groom astray, is the one of a craving constitution. A groom generally judges of the constitution of a horse, from the size of his carcass, and width of his loins, as also from the manner in which he feeds, and from the work he takes in training. From these points, he will be able to form a tolerably just idea. When a groom was about physicking a strong, craving, large carcassed horse, his practice was thence to regulate the quantity of aloes the dose was to contain, which, on such occasions, would most likely be from nine to ten drachms of Barbadoes aloes; and it has frequently happened, that a dose of physic of this strength, has had no effect whatever in purging a horse of a strong constitution, when in training. If such a dose of physic had been given to a horse in common use, it would have more than purged him sufficiently; it would, in all probability, have purged him to death. It also occurs at times, that a horse in training is purged for too long a period, or perhaps till he dies, and from the following cause. The groom having given him a dose of physic, such as I have described, and finding it to have produced little or no effect on the horse after a proper interval of time, considers it necessary to give the horse another dose; and in making up this second dose, he concludes it will be necessary to add a larger portion of aloes, perhaps two or three drachms more than was

contained in the first. Nor is this a very unreasonable conclusion for a man to make who is unacquainted with the properties of medicine. It is in consequence of this treatment, that a groom has now and then been so unfortunate as to have a horse die in physic, which arises from his ignorance of the effect of the aloes on the constitution, when the quantity is increased beyond that which is generally given at one time, to purge such a horse. When the aloes, being increased to the extent above mentioned, begin to operate, the action is sometimes continued in proportion to the quantity given, and by stimulating so large a surface as that of the intestines of the horse for so great a length of time, and to such excess, the powers and constitution are not able to support it. The general consequence is, great debility and irritation, sometimes followed by inflammation of the bowels, which occasions the death of the horse. This has at times occurred to some grooms, from their having relied too much on the power of medicine alone, to purge a strong horse, and merely preparing him for his physic in the usual way, by giving him mashes the day previous, with a view to relax the bowels, and then the first thing on the following morning administering the whole of the dose at once, mixing therein a very large portion of aloes, for the reason and under the impression which I have already pointed out. Now, the common method of preparing the horse, and giving the physic, would be very proper to one which may be easily purged, and which required but a moderate portion of aloes to pro-

duce the effect. But to administer physic sufficiently powerful to operate on a horse in training, prepared in this way, and which horse it may be difficult to purge, is rather a dangerous experiment. Nor is it done but by those grooms who are not acquainted with the advantages to be derived, either by giving the physic, or by preparing the horse differently. If the horse be prepared, and the physic be given in the way I shall, by and bye, have occasion to explain, a less quantity of aloes than is usually given, will purge a strong horse sufficiently well, and less danger will thereby be incurred.

Another course of treatment which has at times occasioned the death of a horse by physic, is, when a groom has given a dose which may have remained in the bowels of a horse for a couple, or perhaps even three days, without producing any effect whatever, (and this is not at all an extraordinary occurrence): the groom considers, from the period which has elapsed, and the physic not having worked, that it was much too weak, and finding that it has not operated on the third day, he gives another dose, with an additional portion of aloes in it; and I have known it happen that in the course of an hour or two after the second dose has been given, the first has begun to operate; the consequence of which has been, the effect of the second dose has been to continue the operation of purging until the horse has died.

Whenever a dose of physic has been given to a horse, without producing the desired effect at the

usual time, or which indeed may not have purged him at all, but may have passed off, as it sometimes will do, by urine,—under either of these circumstances, it would be advisable not to repeat a second dose until after the lapse of seven or eight days.

Horses in high condition, and hearty feeders, are consequently much accustomed to be physicked; and in the preparing of such horses, should they only have a mash or two given them in the evening, and should they at night be allowed their usual quantity of hay, and not be taken out to exercise in the morning before the physic is given, (which I have known repeatedly to be the case,) it will seldom be found practicable to succeed in purging them by the proper time. The quantity of food not only retards the operation of the medicine, for two or three days, but it is very often the cause of the physic not producing any effect whatever. These are the causes which have led grooms into error, supposing the physic not to be sufficiently strong to purge the horse; and from such supposition, they adopt the practice of giving very large portions of aloes. I have known ten, and sometimes twelve drachms of Barbadoes aloes given at one time, and when the succotrine aloes have been given, twelve and fourteen drachms have commonly been the dose. There is no occasion for giving, at any one time, so large a quantity of either of these aloes, to any horse in training. It is not only attended with considerable danger, but by physicking horses in this manner, they often purge to great excess, which very

much debilitates them, and they are a long time before they recover their former strength and vigour.

Notwithstanding these occasional results, it has always been the custom with training grooms, as long as I can remember, to physic their own horses, or rather, those which are sent to them by different noblemen and gentlemen of the turf to be trained; for, to discover the proper course of treatment would puzzle most men who may be in very high practice in the physicking of horses in common use, and who may physic such horses very properly; yet, if these same men have not been in the habit of physicking race-horses, and have not at any time lived in racing stables, so as to have observed the different methods of preparing horses there for their physic; such men would find it extremely difficult to purge strong horses when in training; that is, if they were to pay the same attention that a training groom would, not to impair the constitution of a strong horse when in training, by feeding him too freely on mashes, which would cause him to be relaxed. For this is a soft sort of food, and not sufficiently nutritious to feed a horse on for two or three days, until his bowels have become sufficiently relaxed, so as to admit of a less portion of aloes being given to work him, without his going back in his condition. This plan will not be found to answer with such a horse, unless it is intended that he should lay by for six weeks or two months. The treatment for refreshing a horse under such circumstances is very different, and will be fully explained in its proper place.

I will now proceed with my observations on physicking of race-horses that may have been in regular training for two or three seasons; and for the purpose of clearly elucidating this matter, the horses I shall first make choice of, shall be those of pretty strong constitutions; I mean, such horses as are generally selected for country running, and that are in high training at the time there may be occasion to physic them—say, for example, in the month of July, or August; for at this time, their bodies have become much changed from the state of condition which they are in, compared with that state in which some of them were when physicked in the autumn or spring. The constitutions of such horses have become well braced, from the high feeding and strong exercise they have had; and their intestines have also been so much accustomed to the stimulus of aloes, that it makes it extremely difficult to purge them when it becomes necessary to do so, for the purpose of refreshing them.

It is to be observed, that country-plate horses have to come to post much more frequently than those which are younger, and which are generally kept in reserve by their owners, for the various great stakes which are run for at Newmarket, York, Doncaster, or Epsom. Those horses engaged in country running, may be said, during the summer, to be travelling a sort of circuit. They are contending for His Majesty's, and the various country and town plates, which are given at the different racing meetings. As they are

generally horses of strong constitutions, they require to be kept in pretty strong work, and that, together with their running and travelling, causes many of them, as the season advances, to become more or less stale in their condition, and also stale and round on their legs, notwithstanding the great care and attention which is paid to them. These horses are more liable to be amiss in this respect, when they are the property of country trainers, than when in the possession of noblemen and gentlemen of the turf, who have their different motives for keeping them; some as a part of their establishment, and to preserve a good breed of horses in the country, (their ancestors having done so before them); those who are fond of racing, for the pleasure and amusement they afford; and some few others, who, after having had a tolerable share of experience, may, with good fortune, get money by them. This last object is pursued by the country trainer, as his circumstances seldom admit of his keeping a race-horse merely for pleasure. This man makes racing his profession; and if, by purchase, he should come into possession of a tolerably good country plate horse, he calculates the price he may have given for him, and the expense incurred in his training, and for these, the owner becomes anxious to be remunerated. His object is to win with him all he can; he therefore enters his horse at the different meetings he frequents, whenever he thinks there is a chance of his going up to the head and winning; and it is in this way, from repeated running and travelling, that

the horse sometimes gets abused, that is, he becomes stale, and below his mark. He appears jaded in himself, and if brought out in this state to post, he will be seen, when running, to go stiff and short in his stride. It requires a jockey to be almost constantly persevering with such a horse; and however severely he may get at him in the running, he cannot succeed in making him run in the same form as when fresh. The manner of refreshing such horses in training as may have become stale from the above causes must vary according to circumstances. When there can be plenty of time allowed for the purpose, the most effectual way of doing it is by laying them by in loose places, giving them rest, with green meat and physic. Any that may be thus treated, which are standing in stalls, will require gentle exercise to keep them in health. Now, to refresh a horse effectually by these means, (green meat, physic, and rest), which are certainly the best for his constitution, would take a month or six weeks, which is more time than can be allowed for a country plate horse to lay by in the summer; as, during such a period, he would miss running perhaps at two or three of the principal meetings, a thing which the trainer wishes to avoid. Therefore, to refresh his horse with as little delay as possible, he must almost solely rely on the use of physic. If it should happen on the circuit which a horse may be travelling, that the meetings follow each other so quick in succession as not to allow of sufficient time to administer physic to him, so as afterwards to recover from its

effects, the better way will be for the groom to decline running for a single meeting; and if he makes his mind up to this, the sooner he travels off with his horse the better, to the place where the meeting may be held at which he intends his horse to run. That is the proper place to refresh the horse; and the best loose stable that can be had there should be prepared for him, if not on the ground, as near to it as possible. Now, after the horse arrives at his destination,—whether the groom will give him a gentle sweat, with a view to keep the length in him, and immediately afterwards give him a dose of physic, — or whether the sweat will be dispensed with, and a couple of doses of physic be administered, and the horse afterwards got ready, (which would, in fact, be a brief sort of second preparation),—must depend entirely on the time allowed, and the horse's work must of course be stopped for a certain period; but this matter will be more fully explained when I am on the subject of training, and travelling country plate horses.

I shall now proceed to point out the different ways of preparing the bodies of strong constitutioned horses, prior to giving them physic. I shall also speak of the effects of the medicine on their constitutions; and by what means such horses become refreshed from its use; and although I may recommend strong physic to be given to some few of them, yet I beg leave to observe, that I am by no means an advocate for giving strong physic generally. Nor do I approve of the practice of giving dose after dose to some lusty horses before

they have been put into training, and with only the interval of a week or eight days between each dose; which was much the custom with grooms when I was first in the stables. When craving horses are become stale, from the causes already mentioned, and when sufficient time cannot be allowed to refresh them by long rest, it becomes necessary to attain this point by the use of physic alone; and then it becomes necessary not only to purge such horses, but to purge them briskly; that is, the medicine beginning to operate early in the morning, should, with the aid of exercise, continue to purge them freely, at intervals, until the shutting up of the stables the last thing at night, when it should shew some appearance of setting, and it should be perfectly set on the following morning. Nor must the groom be disappointed, if it can possibly be avoided, as to the time of its operating: his being disappointed in this respect would most likely be a loss of time; I mean, it would prevent his bringing his horse well to post at the meeting he intended.

Now, when a groom is going to physic any given number of his horses, he must, as I have already noticed, regulate the quantity of aloes he intends giving in each dose, according to the strength of the constitutions of different horses; for although they may all be what is generally termed strong craving horses, yet there will be some variation in this respect. It is therefore more difficult to get the medicine to act on some than on others; but, in regard to this matter, the groom must be guided by the observations he may

have made on the working and feeding of his horses, and according to the difficulty he anticipates in the purging of one horse more than in the purging of another; so will he make his arrangements in preparing each horse for his physic.

On the day previous to giving them their physic, it is necessary, with a view, in some measure, to relax their bowels, that they should be kept during the day on mashes, with a small quantity of hay; and at night they should be sparingly fed with it. Let them have half of their usual quantity: some would be much better without any hay; and such of them as are much inclined to eat their bedding, should have their setting muzzles put on them. On the following morning each horse should have a double-handful of mash given him; and after each has eaten this portion, they should be got ready and taken out to walking exercise, for a couple or three hours. By taking these precautions,—preparing them with a mash or two the evening before, and keeping them over night short of hay—the next morning while at exercise, they empty themselves, and their bowels become relaxed; and when they return to the stables, their physic should be immediately given them; and the following morning, it is more than probable, the whole of them will be found to purge in due time, with a less quantity of aloes than was generally given to such horses. The groom may add half a drachm or even a drachm of aloes to the quantity to be given to such horse as he is of opinion may be more difficult to purge than the rest; and he may keep him

out a little longer than usual at walking exercise, so that he may be more empty when he comes in; and instead of giving him the whole dose of physic at one time, let the ball be divided;—give one half immediately on his coming into the stable, and the other half at six o'clock in the evening. This method of giving the physic, with the strength of it a little increased, will be found to answer the purpose of purging almost any horse. The quantity of Barbadoes aloes used in each dose of physic for craving horses, prepared as I have here directed, should average from five to seven drachms. It was usual to give ten drachms to these horses, and the same portion was sometimes given to lusty craving colts; but there is risk in giving this quantity to horses thus prepared. When a groom has not a thorough knowledge of a horse's constitution, it would be advisable for him first to make trial of one or the other of the first mentioned portions of aloes, in preference to administering either of the two last, to a horse which he may not have physicked before. There is another method practised by training grooms in the purging of their horses, with a view not only to get the medicine to operate on horses difficult to purge, but also with a view to lighten them of their superfluous flesh; and as it was one by which they almost invariably succeeded, I have no doubt that many occasionally adhere to this old practice, when they find horses putting up flesh so very rapidly as some of them will do notwithstanding the strong work which is generally given them.

A groom, finding it difficult, by the means generally adopted, to keep such a horse in proper form, to come a long length at a racing pace, gives him a dose of physic on the morning he sweats, in order to lighten him of his flesh, as well as to take the staleness out of him which the work has occasioned.

It is customary over night or very early in the morning, to set this sort of horse for his sweat, and in the morning he is clothed up, and goes over the sweating ground, for the length and at the pace the groom directs. The horse, after being pulled up, is brought in and turned round in the stall, and the customary portion of clothing is then thrown on him, which occasions the horse to discharge most profusely through the pores of his skin for ten minutes, or a quarter of an hour. He is afterwards scraped, dressed, and clothed up, by which time his respiration and pulse have become tranquil. His physic is now given him, and he is then sent out to take the usual gallop, which it is customary for horses to take after sweating. This gallop, I shall by and bye endeavour to prove, may, in some instances, be advantageously dispensed with. The horse, after taking his gallop, is brought into the stable, is well dressed, comfortably clothed, and treated as is usual on such occasions; but from the length of time he has been set, and from the profuse manner in which he has been sweated, he is very anxious for his food and water, both of which are given him as directed by the groom; but as he is generally inclined to take more freely of the latter than the former, it

promotes the operation of the medicine; and a light dose of physic, of six or seven drachms, given to a horse thus prepared, seldom or ever fails in purging him freely the following morning, when he may be walked out, and treated as circumstances may require. Now, although this method of physicking horses may appear to many of my readers as rather resorting to strong measures to get the medicine to act, yet, if the physic is not given too strong, no danger is to be apprehended. But notwithstanding this, there is an objection to this mode of physicking a horse; for by producing two such formidable evacuations, immediately following each other, I have known them carried to such an extent, as now and then materially to affect the constitution. It is true the groom has obtained his point. By setting, sweating, and physicking, he has brought the horse very light; but from such treatment, (more particularly should the physic have been given a little too strong), a horse becomes too much debilitated; and were not such horses hearty feeders, they would be a long time recovering their former strength: I should therefore recommend grooms not to have recourse to this mode of physicking horses oftener than they can possibly avoid.

Having thus spoken of the necessity there is of giving physic to craving strong horses, I shall now proceed to point out the advantages obtained from the effects it produces on the constitutions of such horses.

A horse of the above description may have a dose of physic given him a short period before he runs; it

may be given in place of his sweat. If it appears that he has become stale, from the work he has been doing, only observe to let him have the brushing gallop, usual on the morning previous to his sweat; and if the time be judiciously chosen by the groom who trains him, the horse will derive great benefit from the operation of it; for, from the stimulating effects of the physic in promoting the various secretions of the stomach, intestines, and the different glands of the body, and from its also increasing, by the aid of exercise, the peristaltic motion of the bowels, the whole mass of those fluids become so rapidly removed by evacuation, as to cause very considerable absorption to take place throughout the whole system. From this circumstance, some little debility will, of course, arise; but, as the horse is of a strong constitution, and is invariably a good feeder, he soon recovers from the weakness resulting from the operation of the medicine. His general habit of body, as well as his legs, will have become much cooled and refreshed; indeed, it will be perceived very shortly after the physic has begun to work, that the horse's legs have become clean, cool, and in shape; and, to a certain extent, he is, both inside and out, lightened of his flesh. In those two instances, the physic will, with the exception of two points—length and wind,—have produced the same advantages as a sweat would have done; and if the horse is afterwards allowed a sufficient time to be at walking exercise, merely for him to recover his appetite, he soon becomes invigorated. The change produced on the

horse's constitution from the effects of the medicine, will have improved him in a most extraordinary way. This will, in a very short time, be perceptible in his fresh and hearty appearance when at exercise. If the groom do but regulate the horse's work properly, during the interval of time between the setting of the physic and the day the horse has to run, there is no doubt but that he will come to post in good form.

Having offered such observations on the preparing of strong horses for their physic, and having also made such precautionary remarks as to the quantity of aloes to be administered to such horses, as I hope may, in future, prevent grooms from falling into errors, I shall now proceed to give directions on the physicking of horses of a more delicate constitution. I allude to such of them as have more speed, are more lengthy, and are lighter in their carcasses. They generally run short distances, require less work in training, and are therefore much sooner got ready to run than craving horses. Consequently, these light horses are not so liable to become stale, either in their condition, or on their legs; and to a certain extent, many such horses would be much better without physic. This being the case, it is necessary that I should make some distinction between those which may at times require physic, and those which may not require it; and this distinction I shall make, by dividing them into three classes. The class of which I intend now to treat, may be called the second class. I should term them (to use the language of the groom) light-hearted horses.

This term is applied to such of them as are generally hearty and playsome when out at exercise; and as far as regards their constitutions, they are horses which may be considered to be in the medium between the very craving horse and the light one. This middle class of horses certainly require to have physic given them, but they do not require it so strong, nor so repeatedly, as the first class of horses do, which have been the principal subject of consideration in this chapter. This second class of horses may be prepared for their physic much the same as horses in common use, by giving them two or three mashes the day previous, and at night, keeping them short of hay.

The quantity of aloes necessary to produce the desired effect of purging these horses will certainly never require to be increased beyond five or six drachms. The same directions may be followed for their treatment during the time that their physic is working off, as is recommended for such horses in the preceding chapter.

I now proceed to the third class. These are horses to which various terms are applied by grooms, to express the delicacy of their constitutions, dispositions, or tempers. Some of them are termed "light and weedy," meaning that they are lengthy and light in their carcases; some of them are termed "nervous;" others, "irritable;" and some again are called "flighty." These terms are certainly very applicable to many of this class of horses. But it is to be supposed, that our breed of race-horses has been much improved within these last twenty years, as to strength of constitution, or at least, that this ought to have been the

case, therefore there may not be quite so many of these delicate horses in training now as formerly; yet as there may be a few of them now and then put in training, it is necessary that I should make a few remarks on the physicking of such horses. As they are invariably very delicate horses, they are seldom or ever engaged to run but in short races, consequently they require but little work in training; and as there is not much waste or spare to come off them, they are generally better without either sweating or physicking. Grooms were formerly very much inclined to physic all descriptions of horses placed under their care; and I myself was much addicted to this practice when a groom. If grooms are still inclined to purge horses of this description, I should advise its being done by giving the horse small portions of aloes—say a drachm morning and evening. A delicate horse will seldom take more than three or four drachms at most, before his bowels will have become affected. The medicine should then be discontinued. There will be no necessity for giving mashes to a horse, by way of preparing him previously to administering small balls of aloes; and during the period of his taking them, he may go to exercise every day. This will assist the action of the medicine, which may, in that case, be given in a less quantity. This is an advantage; for the less medicine such horses take, the better, provided they are in health. When any groom is desirous of giving a second or third course of these balls, he should observe, that the same time should be allowed to the horse to recover

from a course of them, as from a moderate dose of physic. But I cannot refrain from again remarking, that such horses, unless labouring under disease, would be far better without being purged. I have here noticed the classing of horses, only with regard to their constitutions, and how physic may be expected to operate on each horse, according to the quantity of aloes given. The classification of horses in their work, will depend on the age, shape, and make of each horse, individually; for it is the structure of animals which principally constitutes their physical powers; and it is from the different points, such as the length, the depth, and breadth of certain parts of a race-horse, that a training groom is guided in his opinion, with regard to the speed or stoutness of the different horses he is beginning to train, and which particular points in race-horses, I can better describe when I am on the subject of training.

I hope it will be considered by my readers, that I have been sufficiently explicit, as to the general practice of physicking race-horses, according as their different constitutions may vary. But as to all the various precise periods of giving physic to different horses when in training, or at other times *on the road when travelling*, this part of the subject will be fully explained in its proper place.

I shall here give a list of medicines; and a table of the weights and measures used in the compounding of them. I shall also mention such apparatus as are necessary thereto; as well as such other things as may

be requisite for administering or applying them. The whole of these different medicines, and the other articles, are to be kept in the groom's private saddle-room.

MEDICINES.

Aloes, Barbadoes	Resin
Alum	Sal ammoniac
Arrow Root	Spanish Flies
Basilicon, yellow	Sweet Spirit of Nitre
Camphor	Spirit of Turpentine
Castile Soap	Spirit of Wine
Ginger Powder	Salt, common
Goulard's Extract	Soft Soap
Honey	Tar, Barbadoes
Hog's Lard	Tartar Emetic
Linseed Meal	Tincture of Myrrh
Nitre	Treacle
Oil of Carraway	Venus Turpentine
Oil, Castor	Vinegar
Oil of Cloves	Vitriol, Blue
Oil of Olives	Vitriol, White
Oil of Origanum	Verdigris
Oil of Rosemary	Wax
Prepared Ammonia	White Lead.

APOTHECARIES' WEIGHT.

Twenty Grains—One Scruple	Three Scruples—One Drachm
Eight Drachms—One Ounce	Twelve Ounces—One Pound

MEASURE OF FLUIDS.

Sixty Drops - - - - - - - - -	One Fluid Dram
Eight Fluid Drams - - - - - - -	One Fluid Ounce
Four Fluid Ounces - - - - - - -	A Measure or Noggin
Sixteen Fluid Ounces - - - - - -	One Fluid Pint
Eight Fluid Pints - - - - - - - -	One Gallon.

APPARATUS FOR COMPOUNDING MEDICINES.

A Box of small WEIGHTS and SCALES,

For the weighing of Medicine in small portions, as from a grain to two drachms. The weights marked with English characters.

One Pair of Two-ounce Scales—One pair of Pound Scales—One Pound of Brass Box Weights.

A GRADUATED GLASS,

For the measure of Fluids—marked with English characters.

One Large and one Small Pestle and Mortar.

One Marble Slab, a foot and a half square, for mixing Ointments.

One Large and one Small Ladle.

One Large and one Small Pallet Knife.

ARTICLES NECESSARY TO BE KEPT FOR ADMINISTERING AND APPLYING MEDICINES.

Improved Ball Iron.

Drenching Horn.

Flannel for the applying of Fomentations and Poultices.

Woollen and Linen Bandages.

Tow, and broad coarse Tape.

A Cradle is sometimes wanted to be put on a horse's neck, when his head is first let down after being blistered, more particularly if the horse is turned into a loose box.

INSTRUMENTS.

Fleam and Blood Stick.

Tooth Rasp, with a Guard.

Seaton, and curved Needles.

Abscess Lancet.

Improved Docking Machine.

Firing, Searing, and Budding Irons.

Improved Casting Hobbles.

It is necessary sometimes to twitch some horses to make them stand quiet; but this sort of thing should be dispensed with when possible, as there is a great deal to be done with horses by gentle usage.

The instruments here set forth are to be had of Mr. Long, Veterinary-instrument Maker to his Majesty, the Veterinary College, and the Army, 217, High Holborn.

The foregoing is a list of such medicines, instruments, &c. as I think are necessary at all times to be kept on the premises of a large racing establishment, for the immediate relief of any of the horses that may fall amiss. They are generally such as are used by experienced training grooms, who themselves bleed and physic all horses entrusted to their care, as often as they conceive it necessary in assisting in the getting of such horses into condition. They also make use of their own external applications—as ointments, lotions, with bandages; fomentations, or poultices, which they apply to their horses' legs whenever they may have become amiss from strong work, or to their heels when cracked by sudden work or travelling. Such compositions as are here mentioned, these men generally make up themselves, and from practice in this way, they become acquainted with the due proportions of these medicines, both in their original and compounded state.

But to keep their memories refreshed, and thereby prevent them from falling into error, I should strongly recommend to them the second volume of a work published by Mr. White, Veterinary Surgeon, of Exeter. It is entitled the "VETERINARY MATERIA MEDICA," and is a very useful book. I further recommend to the owners of horses, to training, hunting, and more

particularly to saddle-horse grooms, that in case of any horse falling constitutionally amiss with any active disease, or being otherwise seriously injured by mechanical injury, to call in immediately to the aid of such horse, an experienced Veterinary Surgeon; for, as a training groom far surpasses in knowledge a saddle-horse groom, with regard to the condition of horses,—so does the Veterinary Surgeon, by long practice, surpass the training groom in the knowledge and treatment of any cases of serious constitutional or local disease.

CHAPTER IX.

ON CLOTHING, ETC.

Various are the sorts of clothes, and various are the purposes for which they are used, about a race-horse; but one very principal use of them in the training of horses, is to lighten those of strong constitutions of their flesh, without injuring their legs; and this they do most effectually, if they are sufficiently and properly applied on their sweating days. To shew that they are not to be dispensed with, let us, for example, suppose a craving, lusty horse to be put into training, and that he is to work without clothes. The groom, with a view to have the horse light, must get what is commonly called the waste and spare off him, or the horse cannot possibly run his length at a racing pace; therefore, to attain the point of getting such a horse clean in his muscle without the application of clothes, the groom must give him not only very strong gallops, but he would be obliged to sweat him often at very long lengths; at least, twice the distance he would

have to go in clothes; and even then, should the morning be cool, the horse would most likely sweat but little. He would, consequently, be but triflingly lightened of his flesh. This is not the only inconvenience; the length and pace being so often got into him, perhaps on hard ground, his legs and feet, from the weight of his body, together with that of his rider, would soon become so seriously injured as to occasion his work being stopped. Nor could physic be given to such a horse often enough, to assist in lightening him of his flesh, without too much debilitating his constitution. In short, such a horse as I have here described, could not be brought into racing form without the use of clothes. There are some very light delicate horses which may be trained without either physic or clothes. These are such as are naturally light in themselves, are of good speed, and seldom engaged but in short distances.

As well as describing the clothes which are used for the purpose of training race horses, I shall also give a brief description how every other article in the saddlery line, which may be in use either in the stables or about the horses, should be made. For unless a saddler is constantly in the habit of working for a race-horse stable, he would not know how to make many of the things which training grooms have to make use of in the practice of their profession.

The clothes used for race-horses when in training, are in different suits. They are made of different kinds of stuff, are divided into different parts, and are

called by the following names:—hood, sheet, quarter-piece, breast-cloth, pad-cloth, and fillet-cloth, with rollers to secure them; these form a complete suit of clothes. They are bound round the edges with any sort of fancy-coloured binding the owner may make choice of. But the last mentioned cloth, which is made of white swan's skin, I believe is now out of use in most stables, the hood answering every purpose of this cloth, which was formerly used to throw over the horse's loins while feeding, after his being dressed; and it was sometimes used next to the horse's skin, under other clothes, after sweating. But I shall describe a cloth much better adapted for this purpose.

Of the different sorts of clothes, those which are used on the most common occasions, should be made of rather a thin light sort of kersey cheek. The cheek which is made use of for gentlemen's hunters and saddle horses, is much too thick and too heavy. Clothes made of this cheek are not long in use with race-horses before they become stiff and hard from the sweat getting into them; and if in this state they should be used next the horse's skin, they would (unless kept soft by being often washed) be very apt to chafe a thin-skinned horse, when in work. A race-horse's clothes should be soft and light; and to obtain the necessary warmth, they should be increased in number as occasion may require. The hoods, breast-cloths, and sheets are made for race-horses as for most others, but the quarter-pieces should not be made so deep as for hunters; for when it is necessary to cover

the belly of a race-horse, either when he is sweating or in physic, a body-sweater or sheet may be used for the purpose. But these quarter-pieces should be longer than those used for horses in common. They should reach back within a hand's breadth of the top of the horse's tail, and come well forward over his withers and shoulders. And it would be well to substitute a softer material for the leather, which is mostly placed on this part of the quarter-piece, to give a firm hold to the straps which secure the breast-cloth; or if it be of leather, I think that of which the seats of saddles are made is to be preferred; boys' knuckles would then be less liable to be chafed when riding hard pulling horses. Inside of the sheets and quarter-pieces, there should be loops to attach the quarter-strings to, to prevent the clothes from blowing up at exercise when the wind is high; but when the horses are in the stable, and working off their physic, they should be taken off; and so they should also with mares. Or, instead of these quarter-strings to keep the clothes down when the horses are out on a windy day, I think that loops on each side the centre and back part of the quarter-piece and sheet would be more convenient, so that a piece of binding might be attached to these loops, in the way of cruppers, with such horses as would bear it.

The clothes next to be described are those which are termed the sweaters. They are made of white woollen stuff called swan's skin. The hood is to be made without ears, and this for the convenience of putting

on other hoods over it. And it is to be observed, whenever there is occasion to use more hoods than one, that the last is the only one that should have ears to it.

The next cloth used for a horse to sweat in is called a body-sweater. It should be made sufficiently long, so as to reach from the top of the horse's tail up to very near his ears; and it should be sufficiently deep at this part so as to lap round the neck, and cover the shoulders. That part of the cloth which comes sloping off from the horse's flanks must be made long enough to lap well over under the horse's belly; for this purpose, the centre part of it should be nearly two yards and a half long. This cloth, properly made, resembles in form a common sheet, only that it is much fuller in every part, so as to cover the horse all over, his head, ears, and legs excepted.

The next cloth used in sweating is called a breast-sweater. It should be made full three yards in length, and three quarters of a yard in breadth. In the middle part of it, there should be a mark made by sewing on a piece of stuff of a different colour, that its centre may be easily perceived. This saves time and trouble in putting it on. This is the last cloth put on the horse when he is going to sweat, and it is a very useful one. Indeed it cannot well be done without, as it keeps all the other clothes down and in place, and prevents the admission of air to the surface of the horse's body when he is going rapidly along. In addition to these sweating clothes, there are others

used with them, such as lengthy blanket-like sort of quarter-pieces, or thick woollen blankets, with a common checkered quarter-piece on the top. But when a horse has to sweat, four, five, or six times, doubly clothed, the additional clothes then made use of, are the old checkered clothes which have become so much worn as not to be thought good enough for the horse to wear in the stables by day, or to go out in to the morning or evening exercise. These old clothes are put in repair in the winter, before the horses go into regular training, and the leather and straps should be taken off the withers of the clothes. There is no occasion for leather about any part of the clothes a horse has to sweat in; and whenever they become stiff and hard from repeated use, they should be washed and perfectly dried; they may then be rolled up with the scrapers* in them, and put in a dry cupboard, in the common saddle room.

There are other suits of woollen clothes, which are made of white serge. They are for the horses to wear in summer, when it may be too hot for them to wear the thick clothes. On such occasions, these white

* Scrapers are wooden instruments, used for the purpose of scraping the horse after sweating, They are from 18 to 20 inches in length, in breadth from two and a half to three inches, and made round at the ends. The back part of them is about three eights of an inch in thickness, and rounded. From this back part, they are sloped off to the front edge, which should be smoothly rounded, of a substance to give sufficient strength to the edge to stand the scraping of the sweat off the horse's body. Scrapers are made of elder, box, oak, ash or beech.

serge clothes are very useful. There are also suits of white linen or calico clothes; these are mostly used in the hot months of July and August, for the horses to go to exercise in the evening. They are very proper for light delicate flighty horses, which are easily alarmed and are often breaking out in sweats, and, in some measure, they prevent the flies from annoying the horses; they are convenient on running days for some horses to walk to the course in. There should be with each suit of clothes a linen and a flannel rubber.

It sometimes happens, that a horse bites and tears his clothes in the stables; any horse doing this sort of thing, should have a quarter-piece made of horse hair, to stand in the stable with. It should be lined inside so as to prevent the hair from irritating his skin. It should be made to answer the purpose of a breast cloth, by its being allowed to come well forward; there should be a buckle and strap in front, to keep it in its proper situation round the chest. When this does not answer the purpose, a cradle, properly made, is sometimes used, or what may answer the purpose as well, a strong stick secured at one end of the horse's collar, at the other end to the roller. These are all the clothes which are necessary to be used in the training of race-horses; and how they are to be made use of, for different horses, either in or out of the stables, I shall fully explain when on the subject of training race-horses.

Whether boots are considered as a part of a race-

horse's clothing is quite immaterial. As they cannot be trained safely without them, I shall here speak of their use, and describe how they are to be made. They are to be worn at all times when the horses are at exercise, and are, of course, for the purpose of preventing them from injuring their legs; but more particularly when in strong work, by warding off the blows they are apt to give themselves with their feet in changing their legs, from being sometimes over exerted in their sweats. Some horses strike the fetlock joint; others strike between the fetlock joint and the knee; and there are some few which will at times strike very close under the knee, which is termed "speedy cutting." The consequence of this would be, if they had not boots on, that their legs would become swollen, and highly inflamed; and as they would thence become lame, their work must necessarily be stopped. However good and true a goer a horse may be, it is highly improper that he should go into strong work without boots, or indeed to any sort of exercise, until his action is well known; not even to walk to the course to run, if it is a long distance, should a horse go without boots. In fact, there can be no objection to their wearing them at all times when out, unless it is when they are immediately coming up to the post to start; they are then to be taken off. Boots are on some occasions useful on horses' legs, when they are in the stable; but this is with such of them only as are apt, when being dressed, to throw their legs very much about in

the stall; and from this habit, they will sometimes give themselves blows on their legs. With horses which do this sort of thing, and which may not have been accustomed to fetters, it may be the safer way to let their boots remain on after they come in from exercise, until they are dressed and clothed up. A trainer cannot be too careful of his horses' legs, but more particularly of the legs of such horses as require strong work.

Now, accordingly as horses strike themselves from the fetlock joint to the knee, so should the length of the boots be regulated, and their size must be according to the size of the horse's leg. They should be made of the same stuff as their woollen clothes. Some boots may be made so short that two buckles are sufficient to secure them on; others require three buckles, and some few may require four. This must naturally depend on how high up different horses may strike themselves; at the bottom and front part they should be hollowed out, to give freedom to the action of the fetlock joint, and also to prevent friction in that part. The edges of the boots on the outside of the leg should be made to lap over about an inch, to relieve the pressure of the buckles. Some boots are made to tie with strings; this is a matter of choice; I think the first mentioned security by far the best. They should be lined inside with white serge or linen; and that part of the boot which goes up the inside of the leg, should be padded, and the outside of the same part should be covered with leather, such

as the seats of saddles are made of. Horses that are tolerably even goers, and are not much in the habit of changing their legs, or striking themselves, may not require the boots to be made so very thick on the inside. The edge of the boot may be bound with the same sort of binding as the horse's clothes. That part of a long boot, which is placed on the inside of the horse's leg, should be shaped from its buckling part on the outside, to a sort of oval at the top and bottom on the inside; that is, it should be made to protect the inside of the leg, if necessary, from the fetlock to the knee, but with as little incumbrance on the outside as possible. There will be but few instances in which a boot will require more than three buckles. But there is one thing which all boots require, and that is *care*. As the boots of race-horses are so constantly in use, too much attention cannot be paid to their being kept clean and soft; if wet when taken off, they should be well dried, rubbed and brushed.

It is far the safest to travel race-horses in knee-caps, which have low action, going carelessly and near the ground; and although knee-caps have been so long in use, I have seldom seen any which were well made. If they are properly made, there is no occasion for the long strap which is sometimes placed over the horse's withers, so as to reach sufficiently low down on each side of the horse's leg to be attached to each knee-cap, for the purpose of keeping them up. If they are made and put on as I shall here direct, they will not only

keep well up, but horses may travel very comfortably in them. The size of the piece of check kersey of which a knee-cap is made, should be seventeen inches by twelve, and the longer length is that which is to go round the bottom part of the fore-arm, immediately above the knee. There should be two pieces of about two inches, and of a triangular shape, cut out of the centre of the top and bottom edge, and those edges from which the pieces were cut are to be sewn together, so as to make the centre of the knee-cap perfectly hollow, which will give all the liberty necessary to the action of the horse's knee when on. This hollow part on the inside of the knee-cap should be lined with a piece of white serge, and between the lining and the knee-cap, there should be a little stuffing; but I see no necessity for covering the outside of this part of the knee-cap with leather. The edge at the top part of the knee-cap should be turned down outside, for the breadth of an inch, and either before or after it is sewn, there should be a little stuffing put in here, to form a pad round the top, and the surface of this pad should be lined with a strip of soft shammy or doe-skin. The upper strap and buckle, used for securing the knee-cap, should be placed outside at each end, a little below the centre of the padding. The strap and buckle is sometimes sewn on all round the padding. This should not be, as by its pressure it would do away with the little elasticity the padding might otherwise possess. A buckle and strap, must, of course, be attached to the lower part of the knee-cap. When

knee-caps are to be used, such as I have here given a description of, will, I think, be found to answer the purpose. In putting them on, the upper buckle and strap should be sufficiently tightened to keep the boot from passing over the joint of the knee, nor does it require to be drawn very tight to answer this purpose, if the buckle and strap below be left quite slack, so that the horse's action does not produce any strain whatever on the upper knee-cap. Knee-caps being used for travelling, are, like boots, exposed to wet and dirt; therefore, after they are taken off, they should be dried, brushed, and made soft.

The things which are next made use of about the fore legs of such horses as may require them, are fetters. They are made similar to couples which are used for the coupling of dogs together; the chain should be from ten to twelve inches in length, with an inch and a quarter triangular link at each end. The straps which are to go round the pastern of the horse's leg is to be seventeen inches in length, and an inch and a quarter in breadth. Along the inside, from where the buckle is put on, those straps should be lined for the space of eleven inches with check kersey, or soft leather. Whichever lining may be used, should be of a a sufficient width to turn down over the edges of the strap, to prevent friction.

Their use is to prevent horses from knocking their beds about, and also to prevent them from throwing their legs about at the time of their being dressed. With such horses as have contracted this habit, they

should be worn at all times in the stable. They should also be put on such young ones as are inclined to those habits on their first being brought from their paddocks to the stables.

The common Dutch collars used for tying up the horses in the stables are as convenient as any others; but for a horse which is in the habit of getting himself loose by rubbing his collar off, it is necessary to have a neck strap. There should be a loop or runner on each cheek or side of the collar, for the strap of the setting muzzle to pass through, to keep the muzzle on, and more firmly fixed in its situation. It is safer, and much more convenient, than tying a piece of string or tape round these parts of the muzzle and collar, as was formerly the practice with training grooms on such occasions. The rein of the collar should be made to buckle on to it, and not to be sewed. A dressing muzzle should be made of stout neat's leather; the bars or broad straps of this muzzle ought to be in length from seventeen to eighteen inches; in breadth, they should be from two and a half to three inches. These straps should be lined with sheet iron, crossed in the centre, and there rivetted together. The strap which goes round and forms the top part of the muzzle should be of the breadth of the two first mentioned, but in length it should be two feet four. The strap for securing the muzzle when on the horse's head should be in length three feet six, and the strap for the buckle on the opposite side, should not be more than two inches in length.

This is a stout and weighty muzzle, but it is a useful one to keep in the home stables. A muzzle on this principal may be made lighter, for the purpose of being taken with a horse when he is travelling, and if it were lined throughout with tin, (and the sheet iron omitted,) and holes punched in the tin, it might serve as a setting muzzle; in which case there would be no occasion to take more than the one muzzle, unless with a very troublesome and vicious horse.

This muzzle should be put on all race-horses at the time of their being dressed. One principal use of it, is to prevent any horse which may be so inclined, from biting the boy when cleaning him. But unless the the groom orders it to be done, boys who look after quiet horses, merely chain up their heads, and are apt to neglect putting on the dressing muzzle. This neglect should never be countenanced; for a dressing muzzle is very useful for all horses, either quiet or otherwise, as thorough-bred horses are more or less inclined, when being dressed, to gnaw and bite at the cribbing board. When they come in from morning or evening exercise, most of them have to stand for some time after being dressed, before they are fed, and whenever they have to stand in this way, they should stand with their heads up and with their muzzles on, those excepted which are very delicate.

Thorough-bred horses, when standing without any thing before them to eat, are very apt to lick the stall and manger rails. If they get much into the habit of doing the latter, some of them become crib-biters; now,

if they have dressing muzzles on, they cannot do this sort of thing. Another advantage attending their being on at proper times, is, that horses generally become more reconciled to that in which they have to stand when they are being set.

A setting muzzle should be of stout leather. From within about three inches of the upper part, there are rows of holes about three quarters of an inch in diameter, and two inches apart. As well as these holes being continued to the lower edge of the muzzle, others are similarly punched in the bottom part of it. The strap for securing the muzzle on the horse's head should be three feet six inches in length. Being of this length, it can readily be passed through the runners or loops which I have advised being placed on each side of a race-horse's collar, so that the horse cannot possibly get the muzzle off. The nearer the buckle on the opposite side is to the edge of the muzzle, the better.

I will now make some few remarks on the different reins, which are at times used for various purposes.

A leading rein is made similar to that which a post-boy, when driving, makes use for the off-side horse, and is buckled on a race-horse's bit in the same manner. The use of this rein is to lead a horse to the course, I mean, such a one as, when he is in his best form, is inclined to be riotous there, and he will more particularly require to have this rein on if he has to cross the downs alone for a long distance before he comes to the course; and it is also adviseable with such a horse, to put the boy up who looks after him to ride him to the course,

as well as to have a boy with some power to lead him to it; and if there be more than one road to the race-ground, he should be taken by that on which he is likely to meet the least annoyance.

A martingal rein is made with buckles and billets at each end, but it does not require to be so broad as the snaffle rein which is sewn to the bit, under which this martingal rein is attached; and close up to each buckle and billet there should be sewn across the rein a piece of stout narrow leather. It must be of sufficient substance, breadth, and length, to prevent the martingal-reins from passing over those pieces of leather, and thereby becoming fixed or entangled in the buckles of the rings, which would so confine the horse's head in his exercise or running, as to be very likely productive of very serious consequences both to the horse and the jockey. The martingal to be used with this rein is made as all common martingals are, only that it should be made light in proportion to the rein with which it is to be used for such horses as get their heads a little out of place either in exercise or running. The martingal rein is usually knotted and left on the horse's neck until the rider finds he has occasion to take it up, when by a gentle pull with it, he brings the horse's head in place. There is another description of running martingal, or martingal-reins, which are made in the following manner, the leather at the bottom part, or end, must be an inch and a half in breadth. When used, the end, like that of the common martingal, is attached to the girths of the saddle. From the girths, this part of the

martingal passes forward between the horse's fore legs to about the centre of his chest, where the leather of the breadth above-mentioned terminates. To this point should be attached the two running reins, and these being sufficiently long, are passed through each eye of the bit, into the rider's hand, The ends are here secured together by a small buckle.

There are other running-reins, some of which are attached to the girths under the flaps of the saddle. This will depend on the different positions that colts, in breaking, or horses in training or running, may be inclined to get their heads into, or according as they may be more or less disposed to pull at the rider.

The top or head part of a gag-rein is flat for about eighteen inches. The edges of the rein should after this space be sewn together, and made perfectly round for nearly a foot on each side, so as to admit of this working freely through the ring of the gag bit or snaffle. From the round part, the rein is left flat for the length of a common snaffle or bridle rein. These reins are generally used by the boys when they are riding young ones in their exercise, to keep up the heads of such as are apt to pull and bore with their heads too low or too close to the ground.

The reins I have here described, when applied to such horses as may require them, are of infinite service. They are to to enable the rider to get up a horse's head, and to keep it in its proper place, which empowers him more easily to hold a horse as he may be going

along in either his gallop, sweat, or race, as well as to pull him up at the conclusion of either of them.

And such reins are found very useful to the very small boys, when riding young ones in their exercise, or when those light weights are put up to ride horses which may have delicate fore legs, (which is not a very uncommon occurrence,) and which may require pretty strong work. Although some such horses may pull fair, and with their heads in a good place, yet they may pull much too strong for small light boys to hold them in their gallops and sweats. To have a horse of this sort break away, and make too free with himself in his work, would not be well, nor would it perhaps answer to put a curb or a Pelham bridle on, to hold such a horse with. Being rode in either of these, he may get to bend his knees too much, go high and clamber in his work, which would be a loss of time, and an inexperienced groom would be very loth, on account of his delicacy of the horse's legs, to put up a lad of a size and power that could hold such a horse in a plain snaffle, which is the sort of bridle he should be rode in. The groom, therefore, in order to have as little weight as possible on the horse's legs, puts up a small light boy to ride him, and to give this little boy sufficient power to hold the horse, the groom orders one of the reins above described to be put on, which he thinks will answer the purpose; at the same time, giving the boy orders how he is to use the rein so as to be enabled to hold or pull the horse up. The bits generally used for race-horses to run in, vary according

to circumstances. Those which are the most frequently used, are snaffles. These as well as other bits for racing purposes, should be made of steel, and as light as possible, that is, they should not be of more substance than is absolutely necessary to prevent them from breaking when holding a hard pulling horse in his exercise or race. It is adviseable to have the cheeks of these bits made larger than those of bits in common use. They should be six inches and three quarters in length. For in riding a hard pulling horse, on a small round course, more particularly should he be inclined to hang at his turns, the rider, by persevering with a horse of this description at the turn, so as not to lay out of his ground in making it, may pull the bit, should the cheek of it be short, into the horse's mouth, from which circumstance the horse would have the power of laying a long way out of his ground, and would perhaps run out of the course. A horse which is known to be very difficult at his turns, or which is likely to bolt, should be rode in a bit, the inside of the cheek of which should be armed with prickers.

The eye of a racing snaffle should be made large. It should be an inch and three quarters in the clear; for when a horse has to run in a martingal, it is necessary to have two reins.

The next bit to be noticed is the Pelham. It should be made equally light with the snaffle, except the cheeks of it, which are to be sufficiently stout in proportion to their length, and the eyes of this bit should

be made of the same size as those of the snaffle, for it is at times necessary to use a martingal with this bit.

With the exception of the eyes to the cheek and the joint in the mouth-piece, it is made as a curb bit. The Pelham is a useful bit, and it answers the purposes both of a curb and a snaffle, with the advantage of the horse's having only one bit in his mouth. It is much lighter than curb bits in general use; and this is another advantage, for care should be taken not to have more weight about the head or feet of a race-horse when running, than can possibly be avoided. The curb rein of this bit, as with the martingal-rein of the snaffle, remains knotted on the horse's neck until the rider has occasion to use it when the horse is making too free with the pace.

The next bit to be mentioned is the Chiffney bit. This bit was invented by the celebrated jockey, Mr. Samuel Chiffney, of Newmarket, who, in my juvenile days, was principal rider to his present Majesty. I am not aware of any improvement having been made in this bit since it was first invented. It is made as any other curb, with the exception of the top part of the cheeks. Instead of an eye to each cheek for the head part of the bridle to be fixed to, there are two curb hooks working on a pivot on the inside, for each end of the curb chain to be attached. There are also two pieces of steel about two inches long, the lower end of each piece is attached to the outside of the cheek of the bit, a little above the mouth-piece, also working on a pivot, in the same manner as the curb hooks, but rivetted on the

outside. The top part of these pieces has each an eye to which the head part of the bridle is attached. These pieces, thus placed, act upon the principle of a lever, and with little strength it becomes a very severe bit.

Chiffney, in his book, observes that this bridle is to enable the light weights to hold their horses from running away, and to run to order in, and that is best for all horses to run in. He particularly recommends the use of it to ladies who ride and drive, as they not only excel in holding horses from running away, but make horses "stop with more safety, ride more pleasantly, and carriage handsomer."

I think it is a good bit for these last mentioned purposes, and with a patient rider it is a good bridle to hold horses that pull hard either in hunting or on the road; for in pulling at horses of this description, if you balk them of their stride, there is no great stake lost by it. But I must observe, that the principal purpose for which Chiffney intended this bit, was to enable light weights, the most of whom are boys, to hold horses in their running, and to ride to order. But I think it a dangerous bridle for boys to be entrusted with, to ride a race in. It is a sort of bridle, which, to be properly used with the advantages pointed out by Chiffney, requires an experienced jockey, as he was himself, who has a cool, clear head, and a very light hand; two things which boys are seldom possessed of.

If a horse should make very free with himself in running, a boy would be likely to use all his strength, and by pulling too rashly at the horse with this bridle,

would most likely pull him out of his stride. The disadvantage that would arise from this, will be described by and bye. The different bridles and martingals which best answer the purpose for different horses to run in, are ascertained from the observations the groom makes in the working of his horses, together with the account the boys gives of the manner in which each horse may go in his exercise.

As the weights vary for different horses to run under, so must racing-saddles vary in their sizes and weights for horses to run in, to enable the different jockeys to get themselves down to the weights for which they are engaged to ride, without debilitating themselves too much by wasting.

Racing-saddles are therefore made to weigh from two pounds to two stone; but these weights may be said to be the two extremes, as they are more frequently from three pounds to twenty-one. A two-pound saddle is seldom used unless when a horse is engaged to run under a very light weight. All saddles should be made of the very best materials; but this being a very light saddle, it is necessary that every part of it should be strictly attended to.

A three-pound saddle is in more frequent use than the two-pound saddle, and if well made, it is sufficiently strong for a jockey of from nine stone to nine stone seven to ride in; unless, from frequent use, it is allowed to get out of repair, in which case, a stirrup leather, or stirrup, or even the tree of the saddle, may break, if the jockey from necessity (as when riding a

hard-pulling horse) should have to depend more on his stirrups than is his usual custom.

A four-pound saddle is to be preferred to either of the above when it can be used, as it can be made stronger and larger, and gives more room to the rider. The flaps of this saddle may have a little stuffing in them before the knee.

A seven-pound saddle is also used for horses to run in, and if well made, it is as convenient to ride in as a stone saddle. Saddles of this weight are also the proper ones for boys to ride in when exercising. The stone saddle is the common sized saddle, and is also occasionally used for horses to run in.

Racing men endeavour, and I think very properly, to keep the secrets of their stables as much to themselves as they possibly can, as weight impedes the action of a race-horse in running.

One way to enable them to do this in the trying of their horses, is by the manner in which they have their saddles made, for the weight of saddles is commonly judged of by their size.

The saddles kept in a racing establishment are made to vary in weight from those in common use. In making saddles to run and try in, the trees of them are occasionally leaded by the tree-maker or saddler, agreeably to the directions either may receive from his employer; and a four-pound saddle in this way is made to weigh seven pounds. A seven-pound saddle is made to weigh a stone, and a stone saddle is made to weigh twenty-one pounds, or sometimes two stone. If

these saddles are properly made, it is impossible to discover by the eye what weight they are.

These are mostly used for the horse to be tried in, and they are also used for the King's plate weights for horses to run in; and the number of them necessary to be kept, will depend on the extent of a racing establishment.

The web-girths, circingles, and stirrup-leathers for racing saddles, should be made in breadth, size, and substance, according to the weight of the saddle.

There is another way of making up the weights for horses to run and try in, when the jockeys are too light. This is done by fixing trusses on the seats of the saddles, and also on the thighs of the jockey, and they are sometimes made to go round his body; but when jockeys want but little to make up their weight, small bags of shot, weighing a pound each, or a piece of lead of the same weight, and bent to the form of the thigh, are carried in the jockey's breeches pocket.

Trusses are made by the saddlers, of blue and white striped bed-tick, (leather, I think, is preferable.) From that part of the truss which covers the pummel of the saddle, along the seat part which covers the cantle of the saddle, it is sewn in straight lines, leaving a sufficient space between the lines of about an inch and three quarters, or two inches at farthest. These spaces form what is usually called the pipes or truss into which the shot is put, that is, when shot is made use of to load them with. The under or back part of the truss is generally made of leather, and fits over the

cantle of the saddle. The upper edge of the tick is bound with leather; there are holes to be made in this and the lower part, which holes should be punched small and close. At this cantle part of the truss the shot is put in, and to prevent its escaping, these two edges are brought together by a strong leather lace. I do not approve of this plan, as, from a truss which has been long in use, and which has no other security than this lace, the shot may partly escape, from the pressure of the jockey and the concussion produced by the stride of the horse in running; the consequence of which would be that the jockey would come in short of weight, which should not be allowed to happen. I think the better and more secure way would be to put the shot in at the pummel; or perhaps, that which may be preferable to either, would be to have some canvass bags made, rather smaller than the pipes of the truss; fill these bags with the shot, and sew up the ends. They may then be put into the pipe of the truss, and the truss at the cantle part may then be sufficiently secured by the lace in the usual way.

This plan of making canvass bags will, I think, be found to be the most convenient way of loading the truss, as the training groom may now and then have occasion to make use of this same truss, for a purpose rather the reverse of that for which it was originally intended. But of this matter, I shall speak more fully when on the subject of trying the horses. To secure the truss to the saddle, there should be firmly attached to the former, four pieces of stout leather, with two holes

punched in each piece. These pieces of leather should be placed one on each side of the broad part of the seat of the truss, and one on each side in front of the pummel part of it. These pieces meet similar ones which are attached to the saddle, and by the cantle part of the truss being made to fit over this part of the saddle, the truss is perfectly steady if secured with leather laces.

The weight of this sort of truss varies, as much depends on the size of the saddle with which it is to be used. It may be made to weigh from fourteen to twenty-one pounds.

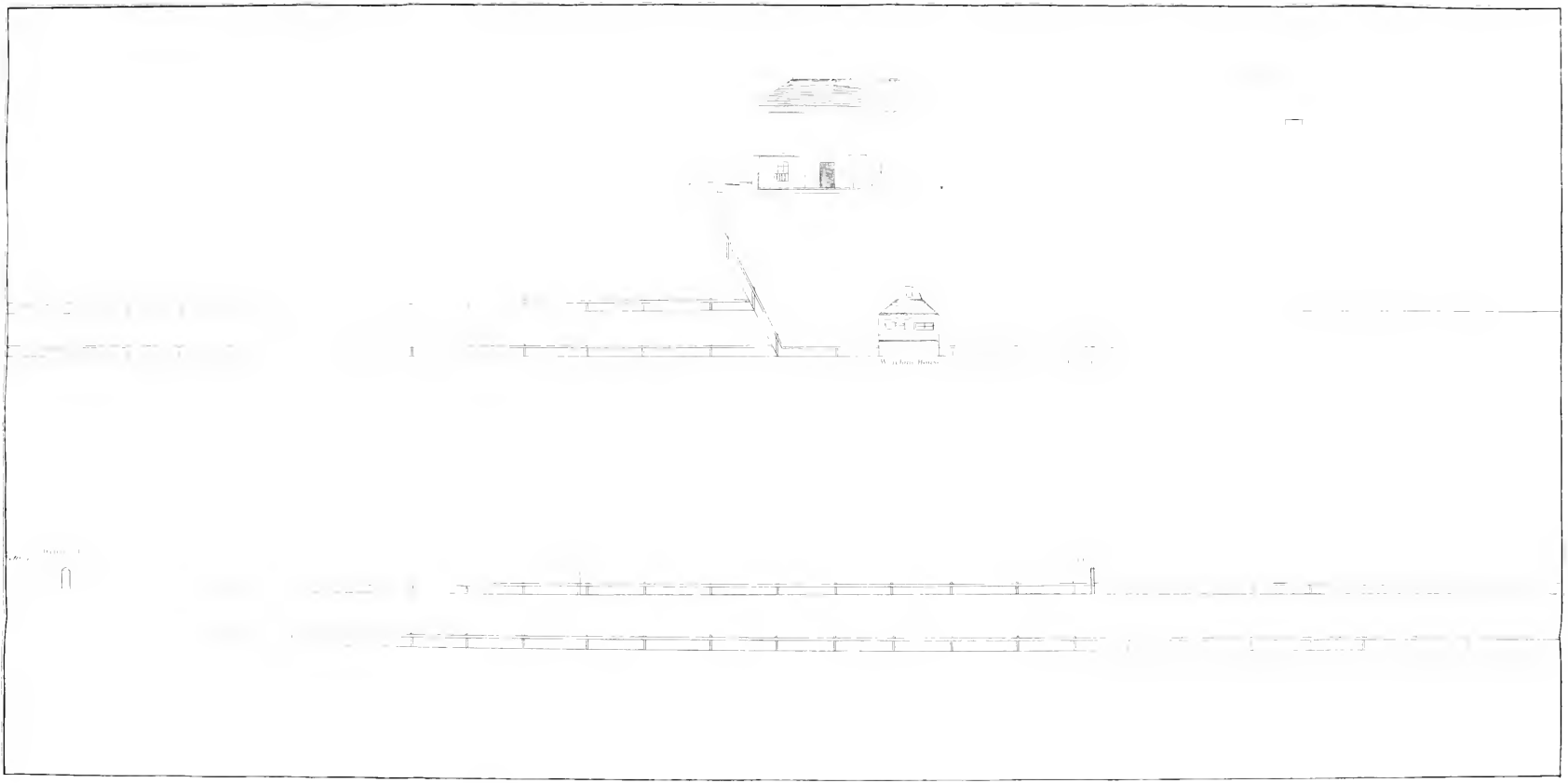
There are also thigh trusses; these are for the purpose of jockeys making up their weight, when the weights they are going to ride do not run very high. But that these trusses may not inconvenience the jockey, they should not weigh more than six or eight pounds, three or four pounds on each thigh. They are made of the same materials, and upon much the same principles, as those used on the saddles. They should be made to fit round or bend to the front part of the jockey's thighs. If they are well made, and have straps properly attached to them, to go round the thighs and body of the rider, so as to keep each truss secure to the thigh, they are to be preferred to a saddle truss of the same weight, or even to the seat of the saddle being covered with lead; as the weight, being so carried, is not so dead on the horse's back, as it would be were it placed on the seat of the saddle. There are also body trusses; they are of the same materials, and made in the form of a double shooting belt,

andare buckled on round the waist. These latter are not often used, unless to make up with saddle and thigh trusses, the weigh of a light jockey who may be going to ride for any of His Majesty's plates, or perhaps for a Welter stakes. The articles mentioned in this chapter, are generally made to the order of the training groom, by the saddler who lives in the neighbourhood of a racing establishment, and who is in the habit of working for race-horse stables—as at Newmarket, York, Doncaster, or Epsom. But when such things are made in London, I believe the saddler principally employed is Mr. Tate, in Upper Grosvenor-street; and bits and stirrups are generally procured from Mr. Latchford, in Piccadilly.

CHAPTER X.

ON TRAINING GROUNDS.

The ground requisite for the purpose of training race-horses, should, of course, be large open downs. They can scarcely be too extensive; for, as I shall by and bye shew, there are horses of a certain description which will require a great variety of ground to exercise upon. Indeed, the greater the extent of ground for all horses to work upon in training, the better, as it becomes necessary when a certain portion of ground has been repeatedly galloped over by the horses, to change them to other parts, with a view to keep the surface of the turf level and free from holes and small sudden rises, more particularly so on a red clayey soil; otherwise in wet weather, the horse would get too much foot-hold on such ground. This induces many of them to go high, and clamber in their work, which is a loss of time to them. When it can be conveniently done, it is a good plan (at proper time) to roll ground that has been much worked, so as to make



the surface of it perfectly flat. Hard ground has certainly its inconveniences, I allow; but as far as my own observations have gone on this subject, it is not the hardness of the ground which so frequently injures the horse's LEGS, but it is the uneven surface of it, that so often occasions horses to break down, as it is termed, on their fore legs,—I mean, the sideland uneven parts of ground, such as small mole hills, or in crossing small cart ruts, which scarcely appear of any consequence. Should a craving strong horse going along in his sweat, loaded with sweaters, and perhaps a pretty big boy up to get him along at the pace, having a long way to come in his sweat, and being a little weary—should such a horse under these circumstances, put his foot on any such uneven surface as I have described, he suddenly and unavoidably throws a very unequal portion of his weight on the main tendon, or on some of the ligaments of the leg or joint. This might so injure the leg of a horse of a strong constitution, as to render him incapable of undergoing the training necessary to bring him to post in his proper form.

I remember some years ago a mare being ordered to go over the sweating ground, merely to keep the length in her. She had a light boy up, and nothing upon her but a quarter-piece and hood; the ground at the time was in good order, that is to say, it was rather soft than otherwise. The mare was easily held, and went over the ground in her usual stride, at a fair and even pace; on pulling up, she was lame, both her

hind legs being badly strained. She was never trained afterwards. All men conversant with horses, know that it is no uncommon occurrence for them to break down *before*, but this is the only instance I ever knew of a horse breaking in both hind legs at one time. Horses sometimes break their legs in running—I have seen two or three instances of this, and on one occasion I had an opportunity of ascertaining the cause. The horses having come to the post to run, they were started, and had not gone more than a quarter of a mile before one fell and broke his leg. The ground was in good order, but on examining that part of it where the horse had fallen, it was clearly to be seen, that the horse's toe had come in contact with a small mole-hill, which had occasioned the accident. Most training and running grounds with which I am acquainted in the southern parts of England are very hard. In the hot dry months of July and August, such grounds produce great concussion and heat in the feet of craving horses, which are mostly in strong work; and in proportion to the length and pace they are obliged to go on such ground in their gallops and sweats, many of them become more or less feeling in their feet; so much so that at last, the pace and length cannot be got sufficiently well into them, so as to bring them into their proper form. They are then sold or put out of training; and if their feet are much injured from this sort of work, they are of little use except for slow draught. The more training grounds vary, as to hill and vale, the greater will be the variety

of hills for the horses occasionally to work upon, and the greater also will be the variety of soft and cool bottoms for them to walk or gallop on in the evenings during the heat of the summer.

The downs adjacent to the town of Newmarket, still afford a variety of training and running ground, and in my juvenile days when an exercise boy here, they were much more extensive; but a great portion of the downs on the left and right of the road, leading to Bournbridge, has been enclosed for some years past. On the west side of the town, to the right of the Cambridge road, are the different courses, which are kept in excellent order. There is also good ground here for the horses that stand at this end of the town to take their gallops on, along the flat by the side of the ditch, and home up the Cambridge hill; and over the flat the whole of the horses can sweat, without injuring the courses; coming home round the turn of the lands on the lower side of the B.C. to the King's rubbing house to scrape. On the east side of the town is the Warren hill. This is the principal training ground for the horses that stand at this part of the town to take their gallops on. In the valley at the bottom of this hill, round the gorse, there was some good walking exercise ground; and there is also some adapted for a similar purpose, on what is called the cricket ground, on the left of the high road leading to Bury. From the valley up the Warren hill, there is every description of gallop to be had for the horses that is requisite, as the severity of each can be regulated by the length and pace.

The first gallop which I shall notice, I will, from its situation, and by way of distinction, call the outside gallop; it passes up by the side of the road leading to Bury. As the horses are approaching the top, they are turned to the right towards the plantation, and here they have tolerably good ground to pull up on. The second gallop is similar to the first, but not quite so long; it passes up from the valley in about the centre part of the ground, between the first-mentioned gallop and where the little stone building called the King's chair, used to stand. A certain portion of this ground answers very well for the purpose of what is called setting the horses on their legs, previous to their taking the longer gallops. In the centre of the ground, or what may be called King's-chair hill, are some very good gallops up to the front of the plantation. Here, after the horses are pulled up, is some tolerably good ground for them to be at walking exercise, sheltered by the fir trees from the easterly winds. There is another good long gallop which can be had, commencing in the valley by the gorse, and going on a short distance towards the south, and turning to the left, proceeding to the top of the hill, and leaving the plantation on the left. There is afterwards a good run home. The surface of the whole of the downs here being on a chalky soil, may be said to be rather hard in the hot summer months, which produces great concussion and heat in the feet of such horses as are in strong work; but for the convenience of training, and running so great a number of horses as are at all times standing

in and adjacent to Newmarket, these downs, from their extent and variety, may perhaps be said to be more convenient than any we have in the south of England.

The principal public training grounds in the north of England (in Yorkshire) are four, each of which I shall here separately describe, as the advantages in favor of the feet of horses that are in strong work, when working over the soft and elastic surfaces of these training grounds, must, I think, be very considerable, when compared with the hard, unyielding surface of the grounds in the south.

Black Hamilton is the most extensive ground of the four; its surface is on a red clayey soil, in consequence of which, it becomes very hard in dry weather, and would very much injure the feet of horses, if it were not that the turf is intermixed with a great deal of moss, which gives to it great elasticity, and prevents the concussion that would otherwise take place in the feet of such horses as have long lengths to go in their gallops and sweats. A small portion of this ground is situated in front of Hamilton House stables, Low Hamilton House, and the Blucher Inn stables. This space of ground is walled in on the west, north, and east, the south part lying open to the high road leading from Thirsk to Helmsley. It is a very convenient piece of ground for the horses to go to walking exercise in winter, when the weather may be uncertain; or for them to walk or canter on in the hot summer evenings, or at any time when strong work may not be necessary for them.

The most extensive part of these mossy downs, which forms the principal ground for the horses to train upon, lays open to the west. Its limits in the east are terminated by the walls of different enclosures. The horses in going to this ground, have to pass through a wicket (a large gate here would be preferable, and much safer); the groom may then make choice of his ground; but immediately on the horses passing through the wicket, if they turn to the left, and walk for a quarter of a mile, they arrive at an angle formed by other wall enclosures; here, turning again to the left, a good gallop can be had, finishing with a gradual ascent to the Botley or round hills, which is the extent of the ground in this direction. This is a good gallop, and the pace being regulated accordingly, a horse's pipes can be well opened here. These downs are also sufficiently extensive to allow plenty of room for long striding horses to sweat over, without their experiencing any inconvenience, in turning, to put them out of their stride.

Langton Wolds is the next ground to notice. These wolds are divided by the high road leading from the town of Malton. On the left of the road is the training ground, and on the right of it is the race-course. The distance from the training stables to the ground is a mile or better; if this space of ground were a level piece of turf, there could be no very great objection to the distance; but instead of this, the horses must mostly walk upon the high road in going from the stables on the left of Malton, to the ground,

and from the stables on the right of the high road, there are three or four gates to be opened for the horses to pass through: besides which, they have to ascend a steep hill, previous to their getting on the training ground. When they do get to it, it is certainly good, being well diversified as to hill and vale. It is principally covered with short heather, intermixed with some moss, which gives to its surface great elasticity, so that there can be but little or no concussion in the feet of horses which are here in training. This ground is sufficiently extensive for training any reasonable number of horses. As the horses come to it, they walk from the high road down the vale, turning to the right, between Highfields and the Grimstone hills. There are some good short gallops up these hills, finishing at the top near the quickset hedge. These gallops answer very well to set the horses on their legs, before they take the long ones. As the horses walk back down the hills into the vale at the bottom, near to the gate leading to Settrington, they can, by commencing here, and keeping on the edge or side of the heather, leaving the Grimstone hills on the left, and high fields on the right, have a good long gallop up to the top of the hill near the road where they are pulled up. In this same direction is a good green gallop, which the horses can occasionally go on in winter, or at any time that it is in good order. There is also plenty of room on this ground for the horses to sweat, pulling up within a short distance of the rubbing house; or for any such horses as may be going

to run at Malton, they can take the last sweat or two over it, with a view to give them a knowledge of the course, provided that the ground is not too hard. Stables and water upon these wolds would be of great advantage to them; for the want of both of these, the horses, after taking their gallops, have to cross the road down the hill, going a short distance along the vale to water; they then return to the bottom of the hill, leading up to the race-ground. The hill being very steep, they canter gently up it after their water, leaving the rubbing house to the left, and pull up by the side of the course. All inconveniences of this kind would be avoided were there stables and water on the ground.

Middleham Moors (for there are two) is the third training ground. The lower moor lies adjacent to the town and stables; it is a convenient piece of ground for the horses to exercise on in winter; or indeed they may in summer take short gallops: but there is too much sideland ground, with too many ascents and descents on this lower moor for long striding horses to go here, either in their gallops or sweats, at a telling pace. The upper moor, although the smallest, affords by far the best, and indeed very good galloping ground, but the sweating ground here is rather too confined. Long striding horses, sweating here, are almost constantly turning, as it is not more than a mile, or at the farthest, a mile and a quarter round; yet this piece of ground, might, with a little expense, be made sufficiently extensive for horses of every description to sweat over, at a good sweating pace. If this were done, these moors

would be much more complete for the purpose of training horses; as on the surface of the upper moor, there is a great deal of long bent sort of grass intermixed with moss, which makes it very soft to the horses' feet.

The WHITCLIFT MOORS, on which the horses are trained, are about two miles from the town of Richmond. The high moor is the training ground; the lower moor is the race-ground, and is within a mile of the town. The former has been much more extensive than it is at present. That portion of it which now remains as a public training ground, is about a mile long, and not more than a quarter wide, fenced in by a wall. The surface of this moor is similar to that of others in the same county, which have been already described; that is, there is a great deal of long bent grass, short heather, and moss. This ground admits of a tolerably good hill gallop; and the horses may take gentle sweats here. But to get the length into horses at the pace which is sometimes necessary, this public part of the ground I consider much too confined. In the training of horses generally, it may answer pretty well for the purpose of forwarding them in the spring to a certain state of their condition. Another objection to this ground is, that as the training stables are situated, there is a steep bad sort of hill which the horses standing in the town have to ascend and descend, or come up the turnpike road, which is a distance of two miles, with a steep hill at the commencement of it. The stables at Belleisle are not at an unreasonable

distance from the exercise ground, so that the horses standing there have some advantage over those standing in the town. The trainer who resides here has some fields through which the horses can walk, and by passing through two or three gates, reach the moor, and thereby avoid the above mentioned hill in going to exercise. This trainer has, I believe, also a certain portion of the upper moor, which is his own property, and which is adjacent to the public part of the moor, on which the horses train. This gives him a decided advantage, for by opening two large gates which are here situated, he has a communication from his own ground on to the public one, and by this means he obtains a tolerable fair portion of ground for the horses which he trains to sweat over.

But that which greatly excited my astonishment, was, that there was no rubbing house on any part of these moors. Now that the trainer (and I may say jockey, for he has been both) who is living in Belleisle, is very competent, cannot for a moment be doubted; and, therefore, I cannot conceive why he should have neglected erecting so necessary a part of a racing establishment as a rubbing-house on his own ground. It is true that there is every convenience for horses coming into their own stables after sweating; and that all hands are at them until they are done and ready to go out again to take their gallop with the other horses, which are kept in to go up the gallop with them, so that the stables may be shut up all at one time. I allow, also, that taking up the dry cloths, wisps,

scrapers, &c. would be giving the boys plenty to do; but as craving horses generally have to take their gallops after their sweats, a rubbing-house being on the ground would save the horses going twice up and down this steep hill; or even if they go through the fields of the above-mentioned trainer, they meet with some hills, and gates to pass through. Under all these circumstances, I am of opinion that a rubbing-house on the moors would be very useful. The race-course at Richmond, when not too hard, is the most convenient for horses which stand in the town to sweat over. They may go along here in their sweats at a fair and even pace, and when pulled up, they may be taken into the saddling house to scrape, and afterwards take their gallop and go home.

The next ground I have to mention, and which is the best I have ever seen for the purpose of training horses upon, and perhaps, the very best ground known in Europe, is the CURRAGH OF KILDARE, in Ireland, which may indeed be said to be quite perfect for the training of race-horses.

It is a fine large open heath, of nearly five thousand acres of the most beautiful and elastic turf I have ever been upon. It is so suitably diversified with hills, vales, and plains, as to present every description of exercise ground that can possibly be wanted. In the months of July and August, when it is often excessively hot, and when most training grounds are found to be very dry and hard, the mossy vales of these spacious downs, even at this season of the year, are

moderately soft and cool, and every length of gallop necessary for horses to take, can be had in them; and by the boys being directed to lay a little out of their ground either to the right or left, they may finish the gallop with whatever rise the training groom may think proper. It would be unnecessary to point out the advantages of such bottoms as these, were it not that I am writing rather for the information of those of my readers who may be inexperienced on this subject, than for those who are in high practice of training horses.

Such bottoms as I have just mentioned, are very desirable for working horses in the height of summer, as there is great risk of injuring the legs and feet of craving horses, in getting the pace and length into them on hard ground.

Too much care cannot be taken in the choice of ground for such horses to work upon. In the early part of spring, after much wet, the vales of these downs may be too soft; when this is the case, the horses may gradually ascend the sides of the hills, or if the wind is not too high, they may go along the tops of them, where the ground is found to be very firm and good, however wet the season of the year may be. From the great extent of these downs, there is a variety of excellent ground for horses to sweat over. They can sweat here any length, with every variety of ground a trainer can possibly desire. Long or short gradual rises to teach a horse how to stride in or get up a hill, can be had, as well as long ascending

lengths for the horses to finish with in coming home in their sweats. I confess this is but a meagre description of the sweating ground; but by and bye, when I am on the subject of training the horses, this same sweating ground will be brought into use, and its advantages will be more fully developed.

The ground next to be noticed is GULLANE LINKS, in Scotland, situated to the east of Edinburgh, close to the sea. It is the best, and I believe, the only ground in Scotland which will sufficiently answer the purpose of training race-horses on. The surface of this ground is a sandy soil, plentifully covered with moss, which makes it very soft and elastic for the horses' feet. It is at all times (frost excepted) in good order for horses to work on, in the dryest part of the season, as it also is in the wettest part of it; whatever quantity of rain may have fallen, is here completely absorbed in a few hours.

The extent of this ground cannot be said to be on a large scale. It is therefore better adapted for the training of country plate horses than for long striding horses, such as are principally engaged in the large stakes in the south of England.

The gallops to be taken on this ground may be occasionally varied; they can be extended from a mile and a half, to a mile and three quarters. The horses commencing their gallop at the lower side and south end of the sweating ground, can proceed along the flat for about three quarters of a mile, when they have to turn to the right, and here they find a good hill gallop,

which may be continued about three quarters of a mile. On their arriving at the top, they are pulled up near a small summer-house, called "The Whim."

The flat surface under the hill may be said to be the sweating ground, on any part of which the horses may begin their sweats, continuing to go round until they have got in them whatever sweating length the groom thinks is necessary; after which, they may finish their sweats up any part of the above hill; but the sweating ground is not, in my opinion, sufficiently extensive for long striding horses.

Having now made mention of a sufficient number of training grounds, and described the advantages and disadvantages of each, I have but a few more remarks to make on this subject. I shall merely observe, that whatever exercise may be proper for horses in training, the main object to be attended to is the selection on different downs of such portions of ground as may best answer the purpose for the different sorts of exercise each horse, or each class of horses, may be ordered to have, whether to walk, to gallop, or to sweat.

Walking exercise for race-horses, is principally had recourse to in the winter. As the vales of downs are somewhat sheltered by the hills from the cold winds, I should recommend them, at this season of the year, as being most eligibly situated for the horses to be in while at this sort of exercise; but, should the ground become hard from frost, and the frost likely to continue for a length of time, as there may be horses in the stables which it would be absolutely necessary

to walk out, it would not only be advisable, but more safe and convenient to lay (as is the custom) some long dung in the front yard, and let them walk there for the necessary period every day during the severity of the weather.

The ground the horses take their gallops on, is called the gallop; that is to say, when horses in training are galloping on downs, they are said to be going up the gallop; and as I have already mentioned, the greater the variety of ground such downs will afford for forming these different gallops, the greater will be the advantages in favor of the horses, if the training groom is a good judge, and knows well how to vary the working of his horses, as circumstances may require.

A groom, in selecting ground for horses to take their gallops on, should, as I have already noticed, endeavour to get it with as few sudden rises and falls in it as possible, particularly in going off in the gallop. For the first four or five hundred yards it should be level, but after this length, it should gradually rise the whole of the way home, or where the horses pull up should be a moderate sort of a hill.

The length of gallops for different horses varies occasionally. There are two lengths in general use; but as these lengths are at times deviated from, I shall here give four, namely,—half a mile—three quarters of a mile—a mile and a quarter—and a mile and a half. Generally speaking, the two middle lengths are in most frequent use, as there are few horses so delicate

but will exceed the former length; and but few so craving but that the latter will be found sufficient for them, the pace being properly regulated.

Horses which are long comers, are such as are considered to come well over the course, as the B. C. at Newmarket (after much wet); but these horses are seldom fast enough to go into any of the great stakes, such as are run for at the present day, and at the present lengths. Horses of the above description, (most of them being of good constitution), are such as are generally selected for country running. The main object to be attended to in the training of such horses is to begin with them early in the spring, for, unless it has been very dry, most grounds, at this time of the year, are in tolerable good order; that is, the surface is cool and moderately soft, so that, in working horses while the ground is in this state, there is not so much danger to be apprehended of their going amiss on their legs or feet as some of them might do, if they were to begin their work later in the season, at which time the ground may have become hard; and from the pace strong horses would occasionally have to go over it, great concussion would be produced in their feet, which would be the cause of their becoming much heated. Horses being previously prepared in the spring, have their physic afterwards given them to take the little staleness out of their constitutions which their work may have occasioned, and also to cool and refresh their legs as well as to assist in keeping them light. If this preparation be sufficiently early and well attended to,

according to the constitutions of the horses, and the time of their engagements, there will be the less to be done in the second preparation, at which time the weather may be hot and the ground hard. There are some few strong, craving, large-carcassed horses (I allude to such of them as may occasionally have to sweat as often, perhaps, as three times a fortnight) which are so frequently in strong work, that although the above necessary precautions are taken of working them early in the spring, yet they cannot be allowed to be kept so long in gentle work after their physic as those horses which I have just been speaking of; nor can they often be allowed to go over the sweating ground lightly clothed, and at such a pace as will just keep the length in them, as many of the more delicate ones may do. Such very craving horses have not only to go over the sweating ground at a tolerably good sweating pace, but most of them require to have a pretty good lot of sweaters on, or it will, I expect, be found rather difficult to keep what is called the waste and spare off them; and it is this sort of work on hard ground which is the occasion of great concussion taking place in the feet of many such horses, producing fever and inflammation in them, and which sometimes goes on progressively and imperceptibly until it terminates in what is now termed the naricular disease, but what was formerly called "being groggy." This is a description of disease which we do not find horses of slow movement (as cart horses), affected with, notwithstanding these last mentioned horses are daily

working on turnpike and paved roads. It is certainly true, that many horses' feet are naturally so perfect and so well formed, as not only to require but very little care and attention to be paid to them, but the feet of many of them are so strong and well formed, as scarcely ever to be affected by hard ground, although kept in strong work. When race-horses have such very good feet, the harder the ground is, the better some of them have appeared to me to like it; for when fresh, they have seemed to enjoy shaking their toes in a gallop. It may be fancy in me, but I often used to think, when a boy, riding exercise, that many such horses like to hear their feet tell and rattle on the ground as they were going along; and I confess I rather like the sort of race-horse that can come a running pace over hard ground. I have now described, in the best manner I am able, the different training grounds in England, Ireland, and Scotland, and have given my opinion of the advantages in favour of race-horses' feet, when they are working over such training grounds as have a soft and elastic surface, as those in the different counties I have mentioned, and which are to be preferred to the hard surfaces (in summer) of many of our training grounds in the south of England.

CHAPTER XI.

ON THE RACE COURSE.

The form and length of a race course, must depend on the space of ground the neighbourhood may afford; generally speaking, our country courses are most of them round. As four mile heats are not so much run now as they formerly were, a well formed two mile course, or a round course of this length, is quite sufficient. In running for most plates, the starting post is also the winning post. This gives the spectators an opportunity of seeing from the stand, the starting, as well as the coming in of the horses, and this, at some of our great country meetings, is as much an object of amusement to them, as the running is of interest and consequence to the men of business. At Newmarket, where they do not run heats, and where they seldom run long lengths, most of the courses are straight, or nearly so, which renders them much less difficult to run over, than a round course, both for the horses and jockeys. All the horses trained at Newmarket, stand

in or adjacent to the town, which is a great advantage; for as I have already noticed, horses give their races more kindly in running to their stables, than in running from them.

But with respect to the making of race-courses, they are sometimes made in the form of the figure 8, or of any other figure that may be convenient, of from one mile to four; fortunately, however, a course not exceeding a mile in extent is not very frequently met with. There are too many turns in a round course of this length. A long striding horse running on such a course is too frequently turning, or if the turns are but few, they are mostly difficult for such a horse to make at his best pace. The little or middle-sized hearty horse, that is a pretty round goer, has a short but quick stride, gives his race kindly, is easily held, and is ready at his turns, is the sort of horse most likely to come first on such a course. Indeed, a large long striding horse, and more particularly a free runner, cannot be got to run in his best form, with safety, round so small an extent of ground as a mile. The owner would be a bad judge who would bring his horse to post, to run on so small a course.

In making a two mile round course, the first thing to be considered, after having surveyed the ground, is, whether the horses shall have to run to the right hand or to the left. This will depend on the most advantageous way the ground can be chosen. Should there be a very steep piece of ground, in any part of it, and more particularly should it be in that part where strong

running might likely be made, or, where perhaps with some horses it were proper to be made, to run up such ground would be preferable to running down it, and it would be giving an equal chance to different descriptions of horses; for the greatest part of the ground of a two mile course is mostly flat, which, when not too deep, is an advantage to the long striding horse; but if there is a pretty good hill in it to ascend, the little close made horse, if he has good action, can generally climb it the best; and if by making a course to run to the left hand, we avoid running down a very steep hill, it would be preferable to have it go in the above direction.

I have already observed with regard to running over a two mile course, that the post the horses start from, is also the winning post; but in order to decide correctly the coming in of the horses, a second post is necessary, and this must be placed immediately opposite, or in a parallel line with that behind which the judge stands; as one of the principal objects in placing this post here, is, its being a fixed point to enable the judge to decide accurately on the smallest part of that horse's head which may first appear in a line with these two posts. The post I have here mentioned may be called the starting, the winning, or the weighing post; as on a two mile course it answers all these purposes. It is to be observed, that in fixing the above two posts, they are to be so situated on the course, as to divide the best part of the ground into two portions: one of these portions of ground is for the start, the

other, which is of far more importance, is for the horses to run in upon. This part of the course should be straight and level; if it deviates at all from the latter it should be in a gradual ascent to the winning-post. The whole of the posts for marking out the ground should be painted white, and must be placed at such convenient distance one from the other, as to admit of each being easily seen by the jockeys in the running; and to prevent them from getting too close to the large posts, the better way is to bank them up from a pretty wide basis, for three or four feet, as advised in the Racing Calendar by the Stewards of the Jockey Club; and for any particular purpose for which a post may be intended, independently of its use in marking out the ground, such post should be marked accordingly on the top part; for example, when shorter lengths than two miles are to be run.

Supposing the course I am now arranging to run to the right hand, and that there may be rather a difficult turn to make in it. Instead of such a turn being made by the jockeys' laying a little out of their ground sufficiently early for the purpose of making it, as was formerly the practice, and which was not only dangerous, but has often been the cause of disputes on the subject of foul riding, I would recommend the adoption of the following plan, which would not only prevent accidents, but every thing unpleasant which may occur in running for the turn in the old way. The turn had better be made by an additional number of sight posts, which should be placed wide of such turn, sufficiently

early, so as gradually to form and enlarge the sweep the whole of the way round as much as possible. Making a turn in this way will not only be much safer, and prevent disputes, but it will be giving a more equal chance to the very light weights, who are many of them boys, and who are not so experienced in running for a sharp turn, as some of the older jockeys. An experienced jockey coming well placed to a turn, and having the whip hand, would not, perhaps, feel much delicacy, when in running for it, to lay a young inexperienced jockey boy a little out of his ground here, the old one knowing that half a length got here, is worth two or three in straight running.

I believe, on all courses, there is generally plenty of room for any reasonable number of horses to run abreast; but in the running between the rails, as we here form the breadth ourselves, we should take care to have a clear space between them of twenty-five yards. These rails, on each side the course, should commence at least a quarter of a mile below the winning-post, and should be continued two or three hundred yards beyond it. Indeed, the further the rails are continued on all courses, the better.

At such racing meetings as are numerously attended by spectators, there is generally a space of ground of about ten or a dozen yards in width, and about one hundred or two in length, railed in on the right and left of the course for people on foot. This is a very good plan, as it protects them from the horsemen and carriages. In coming in on the right of the course,

there should be two distance posts; the first of these posts is to be erected two hundred and forty yards from the winning-post—the second a hundred and twenty from it. The first of these posts is the distance-post, when the horses are running four miles; the second, when they are running two miles.

Attached close to, and in the rear of the winning-post, should be a small wooden stand, erected for the judge to stand in to decide which horse comes first in the race. There should be to each of the distance posts a similar but a more temporary sort of stand. Each of these temporary stands may be made by putting two posts at a suitable distance in the rear of each distance-post, with a piece of board in the centre; but this board at each of these posts should be two or three feet higher than the floor of the judge's stand, so that the man in the distance stand may clearly see the winning-post, and be ready to drop the distance-flag immediately with that at the winning-post.

The stand, or as it is sometimes called, the grand stand, which is erected for the accommodation of the spectators, is generally placed on the right of the course. The under part may be conveniently arranged for the vending of refreshments. It should be built at a distance of from twenty to five and twenty yards in the rear of the rails of the course. The end of this stand need not be in a direct line with the winning post, but may come within about ten yards of it. The height and dimensions of such stand must, of course, depend very

much on the extent or importance of the meeting held in the neighbourhood. Close up to, and in a parallel line with the rails of the course, and opposite the centre of the grand stand, should be erected a small round building, eighteen feet in circumference, clear of the walls, which should be eighteen feet high. This building being divided by a floor in its centre, the lower part is for a weighing house, (the door of which should face the stand,) the upper part is for a stand for the stewards, for whose convenience a communication may be made by a staircase out of the weighing-house, and on the roof there should be a bell to ring for saddling. In the centre of the weighing-house, the scales and weights should be placed. It is the case, at most of our principal meetings, and it should be so at all of them, that one scale should be made in the form of a chair, and suspended the same height from the ground as the seat of a chair would be, with a half back, made round in the form of an arm chair; and an iron triangle of proper dimensions should be fixed to the end of the beam, for the purpose of keeping the ropes that are attached to the beam sufficiently extended upon top so as not to interfere with the jockey's head when he is weighing. This would be much more convenient, as he could more readily sit down in this scale, take his saddle and trusses in his lap, and weigh with more dispatch and with less difficulty than with scales put up in the common way. There should be seats round the walls of this weighing-house, and pegs for the jockeys to hang their clothes on. Cupboards would

also be convenient here, to hold the trusses and small weights, as occasion may require; for there are many jockeys at several of our country meetings who are employed to ride for a variety of masters, and sometimes, different races for their first or principal masters, which obliges them to vary their weights, and occasionally to shift them from one saddle to another. When the weights do not run high, and a jockey can come to the weight himself, dead weight of course is not wanted. The trusses and small weights, belonging to different trainers, are then left in the care of one of their boys, or any convenient person who may be near at the moment; perhaps they are thrown down in the weighing-house, and are thereby liable to be mislaid or lost; or, not unlikely, some of the shot may be taken out of them. Racing is now becme a game of such importance to men of business on the turf, that nothing which regards it should be done in an uncertain, idle, or slovenly manner. These trusses and small weights, when not in use, should therefore be given in charge of the man who attends the scales; by him they should be locked up in the cupboards, and he should be made accountable for them to the different persons to whom they may belong.

The space between the weighing-house and the grand stand is to be formed into a yard, enclosed by rails about four feet high. This enclosure should extend ten feet beyond each extremity of the front, observing to leave the gateways in the positions as marked in the plan of the course; that near the judge's

stand is for the jockeys to ride their horses through to get to the scales to weigh; and that near the stand, for the horses to pass through in going to the rubbing-house.

By closing the gates here, after the horses are rode into the yard, the people on foot would be prevented from passing in and crowding round the horses, which they are apt to do while the riders are weighing. It may be advisable at such meetings as commence early in the spring, or late in the autumn, to cover this yard with a mixture of gravel and sand, which would make it more firm and dry to walk on, in case of much wet. The ground thus fenced in, I shall call the weighing-yard, into which none should be admitted but people of business, such as the stewards of the races, noblemen and gentlemen who own the horses, the trainers, the jockeys, and the boys who look after them.

The weighing house and yard being situated and arranged in this way, mistakes cannot possibly happen, if the jockey does but keep on his horse's back after having pulled him up at the conclusion of the heat or race, until he gets to scale, as in going off the course to weigh he must come to and pass by the ending or winning post. Indeed it would be unpardonable in a regular jockey to dismount until he has rode his horse past this post in going to the scales. A jockey who is in high practice of riding, is too good a judge to allow such a thing to happen to him, let the scales be placed in whatever situation they may. If he were so unfortunate, through absence of mind, as to commit an

error of this kind, I much fear it would be at the expence of his character; but a gentleman jockey, on a strange course, and who may not have rode many races, may unintentionally fall into an error of this sort, if not directed by the trainer who puts him up how he is to proceed when he has pulled up his horse. From want of experience or caution, a gentleman may make this mistake, either by not riding his horse back to the ending post previous to his dismounting to weigh; or, he may, if his orders are not to run for the first heat, pull up within the distance, and if the scales should be placed (as they often are) inside of the winning post, he may, without giving it a thought, ride to them, dismount, and weigh, without even coming to the ending-post; he would, consequently, be distanced: but as I have observed, from the way in which the weighing-house and the entrance to it are here arranged, nothing of this sort can possibly happen, if the rider will but keep on his horse's back until he gets to the scales.

The ropes which are to be put up across the course at the commencement of the rails, to shut out people on horseback who have no business on this part of the course, should be attended by very steady men, who are to take care to be ready to remove the ropes at the time of the horses' starting and coming in.

After the meetings are over, it will be necessary to have chains put up here, and secured by locks, to prevent horses and carts from going over this part of the ground.

If the ground be diversified with ascents and descents at moderate intervals in a course of two or four miles, I think it rather an advantage, as it gives an equal chance to the little stout horse as to the large long striding horse. Generally speaking, they all give their races more kindly over such ground, than they would do in running a similar length over a dead flat.

The next thing to notice relative to a course is the rubbing-house, or as it is called by some, the saddling-house, being used for both purposes. This building should be erected at a distance of about two or three hundred yards beyond the weighing-post. It will here be somewhat out of the noise and bustle of the crowd, and it will be near to where the horses pull up after sweating or running.

The walls of this building should be in height, from the surface of the ground, twelve feet, by sixty-four in length, and the space between them, from eighteen to twenty feet. The stalls in this building should be eight feet wide, to give sufficient room to the boys to work on each side of the horses after they have been sweating, and at the time of their being saddled to run. The partitions between the stalls should also be sufficiently high so as to prevent the horses from smelling to each other over them, but there is no necessity for either racks or mangers in any of these stalls. The walls in front of the horses' heads should be boarded, and rings should be fixed there to tie horses up occasionally. Now, as it frequently happens that there are horses from different stables not only going to sweat

on the same morning, but most likely at the same time, (as training stables are sometimes at so great a distance from the ground as not to allow of the horses being conveniently scraped at home, and as it would be unpleasant to the trainers for the horses of different stables to scrape at the same time in one rubbing-house), I think the better way would be to divide these eight stalls, by running up a wall in the centre, and thus making two rubbing-houses with four stalls in each, and with doors of the same dimensions as those in the training stables; and for the admission of plenty of air and light, there should be two large windows in each of these houses, and they should be on the same plan as the lower part of those windows in the training stables. *(See plate.)*

In the front of this building there should be a piece of ground twelve feet in breadth by the length of the building, walled in to the height of four feet and a half, with rings placed at proper intervals in the walls, for the trainers and riders to tie up their hacks while the horses are being scraped or saddled. The door is to be in the centre of this yard, and to be five feet in width.

The subject which next presents itself, as being immediately connected with the preceding one, is that of the appointment of gentlemen to act as stewards of the races, and the duties which devolve upon them. I believe it is customary, at country races, for the stewards of the preceding year to nominate their successors, which, I presume, is intended as a compliment

to the gentlemen who may be selected from among the nobility and gentry of distinction in the neighbouring country where the meetings are held. It sometimes happens, that gentlemen are appointed who are not thoroughly acquainted with all the rules of racing. Now for the information of such, and in order that the business of the day may go smoothly on, I will here give as brief and as correct a sketch as I am able, of such rules and orders as they may be required to see carried into effect: but with regard to the arrangement of the duties emanating from the evening assemblies, when the gentlemen have to divide equally their polite attention in matching the young ones to sport the light fantastic toe in the dance, and in placing the aged ones at the card table to a quiet rubber, to play the severities of the game for the odd trick, I must beg to decline interfering. This important part of the stewards' duties I leave to the better taste and judgment of the gentlemen themselves.

The stewards of racing meetings should give their orders in due time, for the making of such regulations relative to the course, as they may conceive most advantageous. They should fix the hour the horses are to start, and they are accountable that all funds run for in the meeting are paid before the horses start. To the stewards, the gentlemen of the turf, the betters, trainers and jockeys, all look up, to decide correctly on any disputes which may arise. They should therefore be in the stand appropriated for them during the time the horses are running; and they should here observe

as far as they possibly can, any thing incorrect that may occur,—such as foul riding; or a race may be claimed by the owner of the second horse, from other causes. Their attention and observations here may materially assist them in deciding disputes, which (as recommended by the stewards of the jockey club) should be immediately settled, since the witnesses may easily be assembled, and in the weighing-yard, with the gates closed, they may, unmolested by the crowd, hear the evidence on each side relative to the dispute in question, and give their final decision on the spot.

The next person to be mentioned, is the clerk of the course, who is to act entirely under the direction of the stewards, and whose duty it is to carry such of their orders into execution as may be entrusted to him. He should be a respectable, well conducted man, and intelligent in the common rules of racing; as at many country meetings, with a view of giving as little trouble as possible to the stewards, the clerk's situation becomes a place of trust. He is often commissioned to receive and hold the whole or part of the funds, such as the subscriptions to the plates and stakes, and entrance money, the money collected at the stand, and the fees for the weights and scales, all of which he is to be accountable for to the stewards. The horses are generally named to the clerk of the course; he should therefore, in due time, be put in possession of the rules and articles of the plates, stakes, and matches that are to be run for at the meeting. He should make himself thoroughly acquainted with all these things, as on the

day appointed for the horses to shew and enter, he is to see that every horse is duly qualified, agreeably to the articles and rules as to age and pedigree, for whatever he is going to start, according to the certificates produced. He is to be accountable that the course is in all respects in proper order for the horses to run over on the day the meeting commences; he must procure such men as are necessary to be in attendance during the meeting, and place them in their different situations on the course: viz.—The man who starts the horses,—the man who is judge to decide on the running,—the men who attend the scales,—the men who are to attend to the ropes at each end of the rails, and such other men as may be necessary to keep the course clear during the time the horses are running.

Several of the rules which I have here set forth, relative to the duties to be performed by the stewards and clerks of country races, are by order of the stewards of the jockey club, mentioned in the racing calendar, from which book I have taken some of them. My reason for having done so, is, that should this work meet the approbation of that part of the public for whom it is principally intended, it may, in some measure, become a book of reference for those of my readers, who may have much occasion for it, and for them I should wish it to contain such useful information as I conceive is absolutely necessary.

I believe I have now noticed every thing relative to such training and running ground, which I conceive best adapted for the purpose of training and running

horses upon; yet I am fully aware it will often happen that from local circumstances, such advantages as I have here pointed out—as to the extent and variety of the downs—cannot at all times be obtained; yet from what I have stated on this subject, I hope I have been sufficiently explicit to enable those who may not be in very high practice in training horses, to form a more general and perfect opinion on the subject, and which may give them the capacity of properly selecting such parts from inferior ground as may suit their purpose.

CHAPTER XII.

ON SADDLE HORSE GROOMS AND BOYS.

In most of the publications on the subject of horses I have had an opportunity of perusing, much has been said of the want of education in grooms. Some authors go so far as to say, they are very ignorant of the management of horses. How far these gentlemen are competent to judge on this latter point, I shall not presume to say.

It is very true that grooms, generally speaking, are not very highly educated; nor am I aware that to get horses into condition requires a very cultivated mind. I have known very good training grooms that could neither read nor write (I have lived under such men); and, notwithstanding their misfortune in not possessing either of these very useful acquirements, they were good, practical training grooms; that is, so far as regarded the working and feeding of their horses. Having lived in various stables, I have had an opportunity of ascertaining their abilities in this particular, and I

am quite convinced that they knew very well what they were about. As the authors to whom I have alluded seem to be of opinion that grooms are so very ignorant of the management of horses, and as they have been at some pains to abuse them, I think it would have been but fair had these gentlemen given in their writings, such rules, relative to the condition and treatment of horses, as would, in some measure, have guided those poor ignorant men, and particularly those among them who train race-horses. But no—it does not appear, in any of their works which I have read, that those authors have done much in this respect for these poor fellows, beyond that of recommending them to keep their horses in cold stables. This part of their advice I shall, by and bye, endeavour to prove is not only unnecessary, but that, when thoroughbred horses (which have originated in a hot climate) are to be got into racing condition, it is requisite that they should be kept in a stable of a certain temperature of heat.

It is more than probable, that some authors who have written on the subject of horses, may have been led to form their opinions from observations made in different saddle-horse stables, when they have been called in to give their professional advice; and I have no doubt, that they have often seen very improper management in such stables, and which may have led them to give their opinions rather too indiscriminately of grooms in general.

The late Mr. White, Veterinary Surgeon, of Exeter,

published a very useful work (as far as I am capable of judging of its merits), on the nature and treatment of the various diseases to which the horse is liable; and he has also laid down what he calls "principles" for getting horses into racing, or other condition.

Digressing a little from the present subject, I will, with all due submission to this author's judgment, take the liberty of quoting a passage or two from his work, on "*condition*," merely to see how far his principles can practically be carried into effect, in the training of race-horses, since it appears to me, that were they to be put into practice without being more fully explained, they would be likely to lead those who adopted them into error; and this it is which has induced me to make my remarks on this subject, and not, by any means, with the desire of detracting from the merit of the author.

In the first volume of the work (page 227) the author defines the word *condition*. In page 248 of the same volume, he says—

"When, therefore, we undertake to get a horse into condition, it is necessary first to enquire for what kind of labour he is designed; whether it be for the turf, the chace, or the road. A horse, provided he is in health, may have his condition and wind brought to the highest state of perfection it is capable of, merely by judicious management, in respect to feeding, exercise, and grooming; and notwithstanding the great mystery and secrecy affected by those who make a business of training race-horses, I will venture to

affirm, that it is a very simple process, and easily to be accomplished by any one who will attentively consider the principles we shall lay down, and not suffer himself to be influenced by an ignorant groom."

Again the author goes on to state, in the same volume (page 254)—

"By thus gradually bringing a horse from a state of nature, that is, from the open air and green food to a comfortable stable and dry grain, he will be in little danger of those troublesome diseases which are often the consequence of sudden changes, and a different kind of management; and by duly proportioning his exercise to the nutriment he receives, and by gradually bringing the muscular system to that degree of exertion for which the animal is wanted, there is no doubt that his wind, strength and activity, and general condition, will be brought to the highest state of perfection it is possible of attaining."

I think these two extracts tend to shew that the author considered himself quite equal to the task of training horses for the turf. In the conclusion of the first extract, he decidedly states this. In the second, he cannot have meant any thing else (for it is to be observed he is writing on the "condition" of horses) when he stated, "the horse will be brought to the highest state of perfection he is capable of attaining;" and this, I presume, is certainly a state of condition in which a horse should be to race.

Now, my gentle reader, should you be a tolerable judge of the subject under consideration, proceed

quietly on with me, and all I ask of you is, just to make your observations on the principles the author has given us; for, if I mistake not, he affirms, "that any man who will attentively consider them, may train horses for the turf." Well, then, let us again quote, from the author's work, such of his principles as appear to be connected with the subject of "condition." We shall then be able to form some idea how far we may be likely to succeed in getting a horse into racing form, by adopting them.

First, I shall commence with the author's reasons for physicking horses on their being brought from the fields into the stables, (page 252.)

"When a horse has been taken from grass about a week, I think it advisable to give him a very mild purgative, such as No. 1 *(see physic)*. Not that I am convinced of its being absolutely necessary, but because it cannot do any harm; and if the horse has been fed too liberally, or not exercised enough, or should the stomach or bowels be out of order, or have any worms in them, a mild purgative will be of great service. It is on this ground that I always recommend two or three doses of mild physic during the time a horse is getting into condition."

Now, in the above paragraph, we find the author advising physic to be given as a preventative to disease; he also thinks it advisable to give a mild purgative to a horse after he has been taken from grass about a week; "not that he is convinced of its being absolutely necessary, but because it cannot do any harm."

However, to make further remarks on the author's reasons for giving physic to horses to assist in getting them into condition, will not in any way benefit my readers. There are certainly two causes for giving physic on those occasions—I believe, not more than two—yet our author has not been pleased to notice either of them, in any part of his treatise on "condition."

Now, it is but fair to presume, that if the author had been acquainted with the two causes (which are stated in the preceding chapters on that head) for giving physic, and the advantages to be derived from its effects in getting horses of a certain description into racing condition, he would have mentioned them. But he tells us, in the commencement of page 252—"As the horse's allowance of oats is increased, so should his exercise be; and if this be properly managed, there will be no absolute necessity for bleeding or medicine."

Thirdly, (p. 254) is the author's advice relative to what kind of exercise is proper to bring a horse into condition; and from the manner in which he has concluded the latter part of the following paragraph, I presume he means also grooming.

"During the first week of the horse's being taken into a stable, walking exercise is most proper; but after this, it may be gradually increased to a trot, or a canter; and if the exercise occasions any degree of perspiration, he should be carefully cleaned, and otherwise attended to, as soon as he gets into the stable."

The principles the author has laid down in his

writings, as a guidance for grooms to get horses into racing condition, are, I think, much too laconic. He merely says, "as the horse's allowance is increased, so should his exercise be augmented;" and by proportioning the latter to the nutriment the horse receives from the former, his condition will be brought to the highest state of perfection.

This, generally speaking, is all very true; and we are well aware, that from whatever cause a horse goes off his feed, his work must be stopped. Nothing can be done with him, in regard to condition, unless he is sound, in perfect health, and takes his usual allowance both of food and water. Yet, notwithstanding this, there are a variety of circumstances, under which horses are to be exercised; and as this is one of the main objects we have to attend to in getting horses into high condition, it is much to be lamented that our author has not been more explicit. In page 254, the author gives something, by way of rules, as to exercise and grooming. In speaking of the former, he tells us, as I have already observed, that walking exercise is most proper; but after this, it may be gradually increased to a trot or a canter, and if the exercise occasions any degree of perspiration, the horse should be carefully cleaned, and otherwise attended to as soon as he gets into the stable.

Now, it is to be observed that there are three sorts of exercise necessary for race-horses that are in training, and that have to run pretty long lengths; they are to walk, to gallop, and to sweat, as occasion

may require. But, in the rules which the author has given us, he only makes mention of the former of these exercises, and, even here, he does not point out the advantages horses will derive from its effects; he only observes, "that walking exercise is the most proper for the first week," and after this period, he tells us it may be increased to a trot or a canter. These few words are the commencement and conclusion of his rules for exercising horses in order to get them into high condition. Immediately following, are our author's direction for grooming. He says, when speaking of the exercise which he recommends, "Should it occasion any degree of perspiration, the horse should be carefully cleaned, and otherwise attended to, as soon as he gets into the stable." The above few lines appear to be all the directions the author has given us in his writings relative to exercising and grooming horses. They are certainly very harmless, and may be sufficient to keep some horses in health: but they are of much too feeble a nature to be of any particular use in the getting of strong horses into any thing like racing form. Yet the author appears to have written on the subject of "condition" with great confidence; for, in his second volume (page 218), he again gives the definition of the word "condition," and further tells us that this subject has been *fully* treated on in the "Compendium." I have attentively read the whole of the author's statement (which is not more than forty-two pages) on the "condition" of horses, and from them I have quoted such parts as I think are

at all connected with the subject. The precautionary measures he has given us on horses being brought from a state of nature into an artificial one, are, I think, very proper, and should, at all times, be carefully attended to. The principle which the author has laid down for our guidance, namely,—"that as horses feed and drink, so should their work be regulated," is, to a certain extent, correct, and is commonly known to all men connected with the turf, and indeed to most other men who keep horses. But, without some more practical or definite rules, it would be next to an impossibility for any person to train race-horses so as to bring them in a fit state to run with horses trained by regular training grooms. Yet this is what the author, in his first volume (page 248), affirms can be done. However, those gentlemen who are inclined to train horses by his rules and regulations, may make the trial; but I cannot help thinking, that, should their horses be valuable ones, and heavily engaged, they would be likely to pay rather dear for such experiment.

But to return again to grooms. It is very well understood that the word "groom" is the name applied to a man who looks after horses which are rode by their owners for pleasure; and if a man be sober, honest, attentive to his business, and clean in his person, one groom is considered, by the greater part of the public, just as good as another. This conclusion is erroneous; for, the knowledge which any one of them may possess in a greater degree than another, as

a stable-man, will very much depend on what stables he may have been brought up in, or rather, the description of horses he may have been accustomed to have placed under his care. According to the different purposes for which pleasure-horses are employed, so must their condition be varied. Race-horses are to be treated differently from hunters, and hunters differently from saddle-horses. Such men as are termed saddle-horse or pad grooms, are those who, in the commencement of their career, may be found to have been living, as boys, in livery and horse-dealers' stables, in London, and many of our principal towns. In those stables, they obtain such knowledge in regard to the cleaning and riding of horses, as brings them somewhat familiar with the animal. This knowledge enables them, as they approach the state of manhood, to undertake the mechanical care (if I may be allowed the expression) of such saddle-horses as they may be engaged to look after. These grooms merely give food and water to horses at stated periods in the course of the day, clean them, and keep them well clothed, and when their masters do not ride the horses out, give them such exercise as they think necessary to keep them in health. If such horses appear tolerably fresh, kind in their skins, and clean on their legs, they are considered by the grooms, as also by their masters, to be in excellent condition, and, for most of the purposes for which they are intended, they may be so; indeed, some of them may be in *good* condition, which I will account for hereafter. These saddle-horse grooms know no-

thing of the condition of horses, farther than what I have here stated; at least, those of them who are bred up as I have here described; they are not capable of bringing a hunter into a fit state to go a hunting, and as to their getting a race-horse into a fit condition to run, is quite out of the question. However, to do justice to grooms in general, and to prevent any inconvenience which might arise from an ignorance of the proper department in which each groom should be respectively placed, I shall divide these men into three different classes.

Instead of the saddle-horse or pad groom, the stud groom is the first I ought to have described; but as it is my intention, at some future period, to write on the subject of breeding horses, as well as on the management and condition of hunters generally, I shall, for the present, decline entering into a description of the qualifications necessary for the grooms above mentioned to possess.

CHAPTER XIII.

ON TRAINING GROOMS AND EXERCISE BOYS.

In most trades and professions, men have a peculiar manner of expressing themselves, in ordering or arranging any thing in their business. In this respect, training grooms and jockeys may be said to make use of a language exclusively their own, and which may not be generally understood by many of my readers; therefore, whenever I make use of any phrase such as is used on the turf, I shall, if I see it necessary, accompany the same with an explanation.

I now come to speak of the training groom. It is highly requisite that I should enter into a very accurate description of this man; for it is of the utmost importance to every nobleman and gentleman on the turf, that a man undertaking the management of race-horses, should be thoroughly acquainted, not only with every thing relating to the business of training them to run, but he should know how to guard against accidents, and give the necessary orders how the horses are to be

rode in their different races, according to the constitution and temper of each particular horse. Therefore, to enable my readers to judge how well qualified a man may be to take charge of a large racing establishment, I shall here give the gradual rise and progress of a man of this description, from the time of his entering the stables, which, if he is to become a good training groom, he should do at the age of twelve or fourteen at latest.

As the men who train horses are sometimes the jockeys who ride them, the lighter such men are, the less they will have to punish and sweat themselves; consequently they are stronger on horseback, which is a matter of importance when they have to ride craving horses, and have often to cut the work out with them, or, in other words, to make the play. Sometimes, on such occasions in country running (although not so often now as formerly), they have to ride two, three, or four, four-mile heats; to do which, requires a man to be not only of a strong constitution, but in tolerably good condition, as such horses often require a great deal of perseverance on the part of the jockey, to get their races out of them, in coming such long lengths. If a jockey is drawn too fine by wasting, he will be in too delicate a state to render his horse the necessary aid in running required of him. Under such circumstances, or indeed, under most others applicable to grooms and jockeys, it is necessary to make choice of such boys as are of small features, and whose parents were of low stature. If the boys are coarse and bony-

limbed, with large hands and feet, and their parents were of tall stature, they can seldom be made jockeys; they no sooner acquire a knowledge of their business, and become useful to their employers, than they get too big and too heavy to ride young ones in strong work, or indeed, any sort of race-horse, and a groom is often obliged to discharge such boys on this account.

If boys were invariably chosen as I have recommended, it would, I think, be by far the best plan, for training grooms who have under their charge a large and permanent racing establishment, to have these boys articled to them. They could not then so readily go away when they thought proper, leaving the groom quite at a loss how to supply the place of a boy, who may have been looking after a horse difficult both to ride and to clean. Another disgraceful practice would thereby be put a stop to,—that of one groom enticing a good riding boy away from another, which, I am sorry to say, was formerly by no means an uncommon occurrence; an attempt having twice been made to entice me away from stables when a boy. But the grooms of the present day are, I hope, above all such mean and unfair practices. Good riding boys in a training stable, I may say are invaluable; in fact, there is no training horses properly without them. I shall, therefore, enter minutely into the subject of how they are to be taught their duty, both as regards riding the horses when at exercise, as well as the attention which is necessary to be paid to them in the stables.

It is tolerably well understood, that boys are, more or less, inclined to be tricky; nor are those in race-horse stables different from the generality in this particular. They are often in the habit of playing each other a variety of mischievous little dirty tricks, which, of course, are not of much consequence: but some boys, when not strictly watched, are apt at times, to practise rather dangerous tricks on the horses they look after, and in which, I confess, I have often been an accomplice; and, as I have reason to suppose human nature has not much changed since, I shall, as I proceed, make mention of such of them as I think necessary, to put those grooms who may not have been brought up in training stables at a very early period, on their guard. I know some men, who did not begin to train horses until they were some way advanced in years, and to such, these hints may be found useful.

I expect training grooms teach their boys to ride much in the same way now as they formerly did, being fully aware that they are, at times, necessitated to put up their best riding boys to ride their light weights, when jockeys cannot be had, or when these cannot perhaps get themselves down to the weight. Under these and other circumstances, it used to be the custom with most grooms, to caution and instruct their boys at the time of their riding different horses in their gallops and sweats, and more particularly in the concluding of the latter; at which time it generally is that the trainer is endeavouring to ascertain the length of rally that a craving or hearty horse (but not a flighty one) can

live or come home in, at pretty near the top of his pace. Unless a trainer ascertains this fact, he would be rather posed, as to what orders he should give his jockey, how the horse he may have been training is to run,—whether the jockey is to make play, or wait with him; or, if neither of these, to what part of the course he is to keep his place with the company he is in, until he comes to that part of it whence the length of rally commences in which he knows his horse can come well home. And very requisite it is for the trainer to know this, and which all the best riding boys ought to be taught, while they are riding different horses in their exercise; for instructions on these points would be ill-timed at the moment they are being put up to ride in a race. They have enough to do, on those occasions, to observe the orders given them, how the horses they are put on are to be rode in the race.

I shall now endeavour to teach an exercise boy how to ride, much in the same way I was taught by the different head lads and grooms whom I lived under when I was a boy similarly circumstanced.

When a young boy is first put to look after a horse, and ride him in his exercise, with a view to give the boy confidence, the horse should be one that is tolerably quiet both to ride and to dress, and should have been some time in training; so that with little trouble he will keep his place in the gallop, make a run at the end with the other horses, and afterwards be pulled up easily. The stronger work such a horse is in, the less likely he is to be calfish, or to give the boy, what is

commonly termed in the stables, a calf,—in other words, he will be less likely to throw him. This is the sort of horse a young boy should be put to look after. Such boy should be instructed in every thing appertaining to the taking care of a horse, as to the manner of feeding, dressing, clothing, &c., by an older hand, who is well acquainted with his business.

The time of teaching a boy to ride is, of course, when the horses are at exercise. As race-horse stables are mostly on or near the ground on which the horses are trained, it is the custom (and a very excellent one it is) before the groom sets his horses on their legs (by giving them a short gallop) to order the boys to walk them, at a proper distance from each other, round a large circle, that they may stretch their legs, and empt themselves before they commence their gallops.

It is generally during this period that the groom gives his orders to the different boys, according to circumstances, how they are to go with their horses, as to their length and pace, and the different sorts or parts of ground they are to go on; but he seldom troubles himself with the first rudiments of a young boy's riding, that being generally left to the head lad.

Let us now suppose a string of race-horses to be clothed up, turned round in their stalls, with the boys on them, ready to go out to exercise. Before they start, the head lad gives his instructions to the young boy; he arranges the length he is to ride in his stirrups, by making him stand up in them, and leaning his body forward, with his fork over the pummel of the saddle;

his breeches being loose, should just lightly brush the top of it as he is directed to move his body forward and backward. This length answers the purpose well enough at first, until the boy gets more inured to the habit of riding; he will then exercise his own judgment in this respect. The bridle-reins are knotted at a well-proportioned length, so as to enable the boy to have a very firm hold of the horse's head, whenever he finds such to be necessary. He should now be directed to sit upright, but well down in his saddle, keeping his knees and the calves of his legs tightly pressed to its flaps; his toes should be as much turned in and up as the hold with his knees and the calves of his legs will admit; and with his feet rather forward, he should have a pretty firm hold of his stirrups. He is to be told the distance he is to keep from the horse in front of him.

He is next to be directed almost invariably to keep his hands well down; more particularly when the horse is going up his gallop, they must be well down on each side the horse's withers. The boy's hands thus placed give him some support against the horse whenever he feels inclined to pull, nor is he to move his hands from this position (walking exercise excepted) unless to take a pull; if the horse should be making too free with himself in the gallop, he may then move his hands to take a pull, or rather, first gradually give with the reins, and take the pull afterwards. By these means the horse's mouth is kept alive, or, in other words, sensible to the pressure of the bit; and thereby the boy is enabled to hold the horse in the gallop, and to pull him up at the

termination of it. But he should be cautioned, that when the horses are making their run at the end of the gallop, as they will sometimes have to do, he is to lay a little out of his ground to the right of the horses in front of him, so that he may have room to pull his horse up gradually, and not balk him of his stride.

A boy, having the above directions clearly laid down to him, and going out occasionally twice a day with the horses to exercise, soon learns (provided he be not a very stupid fellow) how to take a quiet horse up his gallop. When he is seen to sit carelessly on his horse at walking exercise, sitting perhaps on one thigh, and talking to the rest of the boys, there are hopes of his becoming a good rider. The groom observing a boy doing this sort of thing, thinks it will soon be time to take him under his own tuition.

To prepare him for this, he changes him from the quiet horse, and puts him to look after one that is not only more difficult to ride, but in all probability, more difficult to dress (of which I shall have occasion to speak more fully hereafter); perhaps a sort of horse which, in the language of the stable, is termed a hearty one, and which, if not in pretty strong work at the time, will be very likely, when on the downs, to begin his gambols, and of this the groom is aware. He therefore cautions the boy to sit upright on his horse, but firm, and well down in his saddle, and to keep fast hold of his horse's head, that he may not get it down; as a horse of this description, when fresh, seeing the

horses in front of him commencing their gallop, becomes anxious to get away with them, and he is very likely to kick up, or make a bound or two just before he settles in his stride. If he does not give the boy a calf the first time of his riding him, he will not in all probability do it at all; but he will certainly give his rider to understand that he requires some attention paid him, or, more properly speaking, the boy finds he must be on his guard with him, that he must keep a firm seat, or occasionally be very quick in seizing one.

As the groom sees the boy has confidence in himself, and that he can manage the horse I have just described, he should take an opportunity, whenever it is his intention to give three or four horses a good brushing gallop together (perhaps the day before sweating), of putting up this boy to ride one of them, just to give him an idea of pace; or whenever there are a number of horses going a gentle sweat together, then, with a view to get some length of riding into the boy, he should be put up, for a few times, to ride any one of the horses at the tail of the string, that will not want much persevering with to keep him up with the others in going over the sweating ground. This young boy, being light of weight, and thus far forwarded in his riding, the groom is now supposed to put him to ride such of the young ones as may be going into strong work, and he thinks him best capable of holding.

The boy having now been taught a certain portion

of his duty *out* of the stables, the next thing to be done, is to teach him that part of it which it is equally necessary he should perform when *in* the stables; and this will form the subject of the following chapter.

CHAPTER XIV.

ON DRESSING RACE-HORSES.

From the repeated and strict orders which a boy, when first put to look after a race-horse, has given him by the groom and head lad, and from his observations on what he daily sees other boys doing, together with the precise regularity of the stable-hours, &c. he must naturally conclude, in his own mind, that there can be nothing on earth of so much importance as a race-horse; at least, such was my idea when, as a boy, I first entered the stables. Nor is it by any means an improper idea for a boy to entertain. Each boy is made accountable for every thing used about what he calls his own horse, nor does he even give a thought to any other. If caught in the rain when at exercise, he must take care to have his horse's clothes thoroughly dried. If his horse's boots are wet or dirty, they must also be dried, rubbed, and brushed. When

a boy has been taught his duty, he seldom forgets any thing relative to his horse; or if he does, the groom is very likely, with the aid of an ash plant, to refresh his memory in a way not very pleasant to the boy's feelings. The duty he has to perform in the stables with regard to the dressing of his horse, is sometimes as difficult as that which he has to attend to out of them when riding him.

As the dressing of race-horses (generally speaking) differs very materially from that of most of our hunters and hacks, I think it necessary to make a few remarks on the subject. It is to be observed that race-horses, on coming into the stables from their daily exercise, are not in that dirty or sweaty state in which hunters and hacks generally are, unless after sweating and running, (this is another matter, and I shall come to it by and bye); they, therefore, do not require to be worked at by those who look after them with that degree of labour which is so often requisite in cleaning either of the former.

I shall first notice the regular method to be pursued in the dressing of a quiet race-horse. The boy, in coming in from exercise, rides his horse into the stable, turns him round in the stall, dismounts, slacks his girths, takes off his hood, bridle, and boots, unbuckles his breast cloth, turns it and the front part of the quarter-piece back, over the saddle. Having put a bit of hay on the ground for the horse to eat, he commences dressing his head, neck, and fore-quarters; first, by wisping them perfectly clean with a damp

wisp of gardener's matting or hay, and then he uses his brush in the same manner. This being done, he sponges his horse's mouth, nostrils, and eyes, with a damp sponge; and then, with a linen rubber he wipes his horse's head and every part of his forequarters perfectly clean; combs out his mane and fore-top, and giving his ears a few strokes with his hands, he turns him round in the stall, puts on his collar and dressing muzzle, and chains up the horse's head to the cribbing board. The boy, after kicking a sufficient portion of the litter well back, takes his rubber, spreads it on the litter close to his horse's feet, puts into the rubber the dirt which he picks out, and which he afterwards throws into the middle of the stable. He then washes his horse's feet clean, and after having given his legs a few strokes down with some soft straw, he takes off the saddle, and puts it in its place; he then strips his horse, throws the clothes into the manger, or puts them on the top of the rack, and begins (on the off side) to dress his horse's body, first, by wisping him well over, twice on each side. In the same manner he brushes him over on each side, then wisps him again once on each side, wipes him over with the rubber, and finishes on the near side; he then clothes him up, observing to place the wrong side of of the pad-cloth up, with a view to keep it clean, as it is sometimes wanted at the time of saddling when the horse is going to run. The horse's hood and woollen rubber are thrown over his loins, as from ranging about in the stall while being dressed, he gets a little

warm ; the hood, therefore, is for a short time made use of in this way to prevent the horse from becoming chilly. His mane and tail being combed out, the boy kneels down on the near side of his horse and rubs his legs, first, with some soft straw, and afterwards with his hands or a linen rubber. He then sets his bed fair, and the horse is suffered to stand with his head up and muzzle on until he is fed.

This is the manner of dressing a quiet horse ; and it is a horse of this description that a young boy should first be put to look after, being directed by the head lad until he knows thoroughly how to do every thing necessary, as far as regards the cleaning of a horse. After which, he may be changed from one horse to another, until he can dress one of a different description.

Race-horses, when they are sufficiently quiet, are dressed as I have above-mentioned; but like other animals, they vary much in their dispositions. There are some of them which are high-couraged, thin-skinned, short coated horses, many of which have to sweat and scrape often. Take what methods we will, some of them have a great aversion to being dressed. They immediately become irritated on the boy's unbuckling the roller to strip them ; they kick and lash out and range about in the stall, and do every thing they can to avoid being dressed. A groom or head lad cannot too often caution a young boy to be cool and patient in the dressing of such a horse. Indeed it requires as much coolness and patience in the dressing

of some horses as in the riding of others, and until a boy has been properly taught and long accustomed to irritable, flighty, and high-couraged horses, he should be strictly watched. When a boy knows how to dress a horse, such as I have here described, and when he can patiently bear with whatever the horse may be inclined to do, without abusing him, he becomes as valuable to the groom in the stable, as a good riding boy is out of it.

In the dressing of such horses, it is necessary to take every precautionary measure we can, to avoid as much as possible making use of anything likely to annoy them. There is seldom or ever any occasion to use a curry-comb about the body of such horses in summer. The only use of the comb at this season of the year is in the cleaning of the brush, which latter is, at almost every stable-hour, in pretty general use; and what is termed a good one in hunting or saddle-horse stables, is made of the best Russian hair, and has been some time in use. This is a sort of brush that few thin-skinned horses can bear to have applied to their bodies. They endeavour all they can to shift from it. Even quiet horses will show their dislike to being brushed over with such brushes, by shifting and ranging about in their stalls. Others of a more irritable disposition I have known to become quite vicious at the time of their being brushed over. One horse may be seen endeavouring to fly at the boy, while another may be observed trying to press the boy with the whole weight of his body against the side of the

stall. A groom may prevent a great deal of this occurring, by not allowing such brushes to be made use of in the stables. Indeed there are many thin-skinned horses which would, in the height of summer, be much better without being brushed over at all, at mid-day stables particularly; wisping them thoroughly with well-damped wisps of garden matting, and afterwards wiping them over with the rubber, putting their clothes straight, combing out their manes and tails, and hand-rubbing their legs for a short time, is all I should recommend being done to them prior to their being fed at mid-day stables.

As it has often fallen to my lot to look after such horses, I shall endeavour to point out the best way to dress them, so as to annoy them as little as possible. Every thing that is done to the quiet horse in dressing him is also to be done (if possible) to the high-couraged, irritable one, but he will not permit its being done exactly in the same manner. Therefore some little stratagem, with good temper and great patience on the part of the boy, is absolutely necessary, to prevent the horse from losing his temper, becoming violent, or breaking out in a sweat at the time of dressing.

As I have just observed, some horses of this description are resolutely vicious; they freely use their legs and feet, and are inclined to be rather more familiar with their mouths than is pleasant. They will watch their opportunity, and seize even the boy who looks

after them; but this is not, by any means, a common occurrence. To prevent this, the boy must be careful at all times to secure his horse's head before he attempts to do anything to him; for example, when the horse comes in from exercise, and has been turned round in his stall for the purpose of having his head dressed and his hood and bridle taken off, the boy, being on his guard, begins by sponging his horse's mouth and nostrils, and having wiped them dry with a linen rubber, he puts on the horse's dressing muzzle, and it may also be necessary to buckle his head up with the pillar-reins (but this is not very commonly required,) before he ventures to dress his head and fore-quarters. Having properly finished both the latter, he turns the horse back in the stall, removes the muzzle for a moment to put on the collar, when the former is replaced, and the horse's head is again chained up to the cribbing-board. His feet and legs being done, his quarters are next to be cleaned; and the way this should be done is very similar to that in which such a horse is generally scraped and rubbed after sweating. The clothes and saddle are not immediately to be taken off his body; the former should be turned back over the latter. The boy is then quietly to set about dressing his horse's quarters, first by working with his wisp. If the horse will not allow him to use it about his sheath, between or inside his thighs, the boy should not be suffered to persevere with it here. He should be directed to lay hold of the horse's hock or tail, and by degrees

try what he can do with a rubber, a soft damp sponge, or his hand; or after he has finished dressing his horse, and has clothed him up, he may then try to clean those parts. I have known some horses, when clothed, stand perfectly quiet to be cleaned about the upper part of their thighs, which would not otherwise allow such being done. The horse's quarters being dressed, that is, wisped, brushed, and wiped over, his saddle and clothes should be taken off; but previously to doing this, it may be advisable to put on his boots, to prevent his injuring his legs by striking them: for it often happens that the horse becomes most irritable when a boy is working at his body; and in ranging about in the stall, as I have before observed, kicking and lashing out with hind legs, pawing, striking, and stamping with his fore legs, a horse will occasionally strike one of his feet against the opposite leg. If he has not boots on to ward off the blow, the leg will swell, which may oblige the groom (although perhaps very inconveniently) to stop his work, or run the risk of the horse going lame.

Another thing to be observed in a young boy who is not much accustomed to dressing a horse of this description, is his temper. He must be strictly cautioned not to suffer passion to get the better of his reason; if it should, and the groom not be by at the time, he will be very likely to abuse his horse by striking or kicking him in the belly,

or what is very much worse, in the fore legs. It is therefore necessary just at this time to pay the strictest attention to the boy, that he may not do mischief. I have often watched the groom to the lower end of the stable, and then kicked an unruly horse I have been looking after in his fore legs. A boy while dressing a horse of this kind, should have a small ash plant in his hand, but should not strike the horse with it if he can possibly avoid it. Fighting with a horse of this description in any way, seldom answers. Holding the stick up occasionally, with a view to check him a little, is the better mode; and when the horse makes any attempt to press the boy against the sides of the stall, he has nothing more to do than to push him quietly from him.

The cautions and directions given by a groom to a young boy on his first being put to dress this sort of horse, mostly puts him on his guard; and if he is not very stupid, from his former practice with other horses, he soon finds out at what part of the stall he can safely stand, and judges with great nicety the different lengths of his horse's kicking and lashing out with his hind legs, as well also as his pawing, stamping, and striking with his fore legs.

A boy, looking after a horse of this sort, soon becomes familiar with his tricks; he then generally keeps his temper sufficiently well, so as not to abuse him, which gives the horse confidence in the boy. The

former becomes less mischievous, and the latter less cautious, and after a time they generally agree tolerably well together; nor should the groom part them if he can possibly avoid it, more particularly if the horse is inclined to be resolutely vicious.

CHAPTER XV.

ON THE USE OF DIFFERENT REINS.

THERE are some race-horses in training, which are not easily held by the very light weights, in plain snaffles or Pelham bridles, and it occasionally happens that some horses are more delicate on their fore legs than others; therefore it does not answer to put up great heavy boys to ride them in their gallops and sweats, more particularly if they require to be in strong work, or are young ones. Therefore, with a view to preserve the legs of such horses, it is necessary to put small boys up to ride them; and to give these boys sufficient power, the groom has recourse to different sorts of reins, or martingals, just according as horses are found to require them. Jockeys, of course, are well acquainted with the use of them. The difficulty lies in getting young, inexperienced boys to use them properly; for, unless repeatedly cautioned, they are apt to pull too resolutely with almost any sort of

bridle, but more particularly when they have an additional rein, by which they can more easily hold or pull up their horses.

For the purpose of properly instructing those light boys in the use of different reins, let us, by way of example, suppose half-a-dozen horses turned round in their stalls with the boys on them, and that the groom is going to give these horses a good brushing gallop. Considering three of these horses to be hard pullers, and to have light boys on them, we will put on each of these horses a snaffle bridle and an additional rein. On the first horse we will put the common martingal and spare martingal rein,—on the second, a gag bit and rein,—and on the third, the martingal running rein. Previous to these horses going out of the stable, the groom gives directions to each boy relative to the rein he has to use. First speaking to the boy who has to ride with the common martingal rein, he says, — "That spare rein you have, is to keep that horse of yours from getting his head up. You had better knot it and let it lay on the horse's neck until you collect your reins. Just before you are going up the gallop, if you find as your horse is going along that he is inclined to get his head up too high for you to get a fair pull at him, then use the rein much in the same manner as with the snaffle rein; that is, give and take with it so as to keep your horse's mouth alive, and occasionally take a long, gradual, steady pull, until you have got his head down and in place. In this quiet way, you will, as

occasion may require, use the rein as your horse is going up the gallop."

To the boy riding with the gag rein the groom says,—"You must knot this rein;" or, perhaps, the groom does it himself, telling the boy at the same time the use of it,—"This is to prevent your horse from boring with his head too close to the ground. Be careful how you use it. You had better let it lay on your horse's neck until you go up the gallop with him. Then, as soon as you have collected your reins and the horse is settled in his stride, if you find he is getting his head, as usual, too close to the ground, shorten the purchase of this rein and take a gentle pull with it. Thus, by gradually giving and taking with this and the snaffle rein, you will have your horse's head in place, which will enable you to hold him much more easily; and as your horse is not a flighty one, you may, as you find occasion, quietly take this pull, without causing him to alter his stride."

The groom, in giving instructions to the boy who has to ride with the running martingal rein, says,—"In collecting your reins, keep this rein outside the snaffle, and use it much in the same way as you would the snaffle rein, that is, give and take in pulling at your horse, so as to keep his mouth alive, in order that when you want to take a good pull with this rein, it may have the desired effect of bringing your horse's head in place, and enable you to hold him so as to prevent his break-

ing away in the gallop,—or to pull him up at the end of it. For I am of opinion you will find that horse will pull rather resolutely at you, and if he does, as the other horses are increasing their pace, making more free than he ought; and if you think you cannot keep him in his place in the gallop, let him go on with the pace, but do not rattle by close to the other horses, but turn his head off, and go to the bottom of the hill. Keep his mouth alive and let him go a telling pace up it, and as you approach the top, sit you well down and firm in your saddle, with your feet rather forward, and take two or three determined pulls at him with this rein. If you find, from the pace, the hill, and the pull, that he becomes more collected, and that you have sufficient confidence in yourself both to hold and to pull him up, there will be no occasion for you immediately to do the latter. Let him go on with the pace (if you feel inclined) for a mile or more. As he proceeds, speak gently to him, take a turn to the right, and go up the short gallop. Having pulled him up at the top of it, turn him to the wind, give him his head, and let him stand for a minute or two, or until he has blown his nose. Then walk him down into the vale, and let him be on the move until I come to you."

These orders, or others tending to the same end, are such as careful training grooms give to young boys on their first riding hard-pulling horses with either of the above reins. As boys improve in riding, they

are occasionally changed from one horse to another, and by riding a variety of horses in their exercise, such boys as can ride well, soon find out how to manage every description of horse they are mounted on, and finish by having little difficulty in holding almost any horse with the aid of proper tackle.

CHAPTER XVI.

ON RIDING A CRAVING HORSE IN HIS SWEAT.

PROCEEDING with my instructions to the boy in riding, I will suppose him now to have been in the stable for a couple of years. Being a light weight, he has, during this period, been riding such young ones in their exercise and sweats, as the groom may have thought him best capable of managing. In advancing in years, he has become stronger on horseback, and gives promise of being a good jockey.

The groom, aware of the advantage of having such a boy to ride different horses in training, proceeds to give him further instructions, and puts him up to ride such horses in their sweats, as will bring the boy into good riding condition.

It is to be observed, that the boy we are alluding to, already knows, from the practice he has had in riding exercise, how and when to make use of his hands and feet in setting off a horse in his gallop. He also knows how to sit quietly down in his saddle when his horse

is well on his legs and settled in his stride; and from his having rode different young horses, he knows something of the pace a horse is going either in his gallop or sweat. He also knows what strength to apply to the reins in holding his horse, in order to let him go quietly within himself, and not balk him of his stride by pulling at him, but just to have a gentle pull, and to give and take with his reins so as to keep his horse's mouth alive; and if he does this properly, he prevents him from breaking away with him.

A boy being thus forwarded in riding, is next to be put to ride such horses in their gallops and sweats as will, by the exertion which is required of him, rouse them into and rate them at a fair and even pace, and make the boy very strong and determined on horseback. The horses which require to be thus persevered with in their work, are such as are termed craving ones, and to bring some of them through their sweats at the pace they are sometimes ordered to go, is by no means an easy task for the rider, whether he be man or boy; as in their sweats, some of them will hang, and swerve, and lay out of their ground. Indeed, for the time it lasts, it is often very laborious, much more so than riding them in their races; for in their sweats they are not so easily got at, either with an ash plant or wisp, as they are when stripped for running.

When a boy is first put to ride such horses in their sweats, the better way of doing it is to let the head lad ride with a young boy of this class for a few times, on any horse that is stripped or nearly so, that may want

the same length got into him. But it is necessary here to observe, that this horse should be one of a very placid temper, which is generally a horse whose constitution will require him to be sweated once in about eight days. He should be a horse that has a good mouth, is easily held, is kind at his turns, and will patiently wait or readily make play in his sweat, either alone or with any number of horses, (just as he may be called upon by the rider for either,) without becoming alarmed or at all impetuous. Such a horse should also be a kind and superior runner to the craving one, so that when he is called upon to go up and challenge the latter in his sweat, he should do it with ease to himself, that is, he should not be at the top of his mark at the time. Let the rally be of what length it may, he should be going within himself. If this horse is not fast enough, the point may be gained by putting up a lighter weight.

The horses being clothed up, and the orders being given to the head lad by the groom in presence of the boy, how the craving horse is to go in his sweat, as to pace, length, &c., the horses are rode to the ground they are to sweat over. The head lad then desires the boy to set his horse upon his legs, or in other words, to start him off in a canter, and the head lad follows him for a few lengths; after which he goes close up to the boy's horse, lays his own horse's head in at the other horse's quarters, so as to be able to direct the boy, to whom, probably, the first part of his directions will be, (to use the language of the turf,) "to keep

fast hold of his horse's head and kick him along." By these directions, the boy understands that he is to have a steady pull on his horse, and often to persevere in urging him on with his legs and feet against the horse's sides. They seldom proceed far before the lad sees it necessary to speak again to the boy, (perhaps, rather sharply,) as thus,—"Come, boy, sit well down, get at your horse's head, and twist him along;" meaning by this, that the boy is to sit upright, but well down in the saddle, to raise his hands off his horse's withers, first giving a little to him with the reins, (but they are not to be slack,) and then having a pretty strong hold of his horse's head; giving him two or three good hustles, and persevering at the same time with his hands and feet, he urges the horse on at a better pace.

Now suppose the horse in question to have gone a mile and a half or two miles, whether more or less must depend on what portion of the ground the groom may have given orders for them to come home at a sweating pace. At whatever point this order is to be put in practice, the boy is to be apprised of it at the proper time by the head lad, who again says,—"Come, boy, get at your horse, for we must now go a telling pace the whole of the way home." The boy immediately gets himself ready to set-to, and as soon as he has roused his horse into a still better pace, the head lad, in order to continue the craving horse at it, gives a quiet pull at his own horse, and goes up to the other, head and girth. The craving horse being thus challenged, and the boy now and then persevering

with him, continues at the pace for a good length : but if the head lad sees him beginning to hang, and slacken from what he considers a sweating pace, he desires the boy to take a pull, and hustle his horse along. If he still observes the horse does not come, when challenged in this way, being aware that he is a very craving, idle horse, and that unless he is persevered with rather severely, the length cannot be got into him at the pace necessary to get a good sweat out of him, the head lad says to the boy,—"Get up your ash plant, and flourish it near your horse's head or over your own." And if the horse does not come at a better pace when thus excited to it, the boy is to be told to drop his ash plant smartly down his horse's shoulders o r under his belly, either with his left or right hand, for he should be taught to use both equally well. Just at this time, the head lad should make another run, get a little forwarder, let the two horses be head and neck, thus proceeding at a fair telling pace until they are approaching pretty near home, when the head lad should make another run with his horse, getting so far forward as to bring both horses nearly head and head. The advantage given to the craving horse should be about half a head. The boy riding this horse should now vigorously persevere with him, and of whatever length the last rally home may be, he should be pretty near the top of his speed immediately previous to his being pulled up at the end of the sweating ground.

A boy thus instructed, and being often put to ride horses of the above description in their sweats, soon gets

into good riding condition. He becomes not only stout on horseback, but as occasion may require, he becomes very determined in the riding of any craving, idle, or sulky horse; and in setting-to with such horse, he generally succeeds in rousing him out of any sulky tricks, and he is thereby enabled to put the groom's orders strictly into practice, as far as regards how such a horse may have to go in his sweats.

CHAPTER XVII.

ON RIDING A FREE-GOING HORSE IN HIS SWEAT.

Having, in the preceding chapter, given directions for the instruction of a boy how to ride horses which require perseverance to get them along at a certain pace, I will now give the further necessary instructions for riding horses of a different description. The horse I will now make choice of for the boy to ride shall be the one described in the foregoing chapter, supposed to be sweating with the craving one. Therefore, by way of example, I will sweat the same two horses again, with only this difference—that of changing the riders; putting the boy on the kind, free runner, and the head lad on the craving one. The horses having arrived on the sweating ground, the head lad gives his orders to the boy to sit quiet, to keep a gentle pull on his horse, and to follow him. They then set their horses on their legs at a quiet, striding pace. They will most likely not have proceeded far, before

the head lad, looking back, by turning his head over his shoulder, (for he must not move his body on such an occasion,) calls to the boy to take a gentle pull at his horse, and come up with him to his (the head lad's) horse's quarters. The head lad rates his horse a little faster, and the boy's horse, being one of a placid temper, (that is, a sort of horse that will make a race with anything, as it is called,) patiently waits, and retains his place without any trouble to the boy whatever. Now, to regulate the boy's temper gradually, and to bring him patient in riding a free horse, the head lad, turning his head, should talk to the boy, and point out to him the kind, easy, and free manner the horse he (the boy) is riding, goes in his sweat, compared with the craving one he himself is riding; and how necessary it is for him (the boy) to be very still and quiet on the back of such a horse; also, to observe to him that whenever he wants to make a run with his horse, he has nothing more to do than quietly to lift his hands off his horse's withers, and give him a gentle pull or two, which the horse knows (if he has been well taught as trained) is a challenge for him to make a run for the rally he can easily live in,—a sort of thing the head lad is likely to order the boy to do pretty often, to save himself the labour of persevering with his craving horse.

When these horses which I am supposed to have just ordered to sweat, come to that part of the ground from which horses are sometimes ordered to come home at a sweating pace, the head lad should order

the boy again to take a pull, and come up with his horse, head and girth, with the craving one, and wait there until he orders him to come again head and neck, or head and head. This is more for the purpose of teaching the boy how to challenge a horse to run, than the actual necessity there is for doing it to bring the craving horse through his sweat, for the head lad (if he is any thing like a good one) can mostly do this himself without the boy's aid.

The horses having thus proceeded for a certain length, the head lad may order the boy again to take a pull at his horse, and go half a length in front, to give the boy an idea of making play, or what is commonly called,—"cutting the work out." But he must not be allowed to go too far in front, or he may overmark his horse. As they are concluding the sweat, the head lad should go up to the boy, make a run with him home, and finish the sweat at the usual pace, which is mostly regulated according to the state of the ground and the condition of the horses.

The boy, who by this time can ride tolerably well, is becoming very useful to the groom, who often changes him from one horse to another that is more difficult to ride. If the boy is tolerably light, and has a thorough knowledge of the pace which horses are at times to go in their gallops, he is frequently put to lead the gallop, and is also often put to ride such horses in their sweats as require to be resolutely persevered with to get them along.

Having been practised in this sort of riding for

some time, he also begins to understand the pace horses are occasionally to be rated at in this kind of exercise; and when three or four, or half a dozen are going to sweat together, the groom, with a view of giving the boy a still better idea of the thing, is very likely to order him with a horse to go in front, and rate the others in their sweats the whole of the way home, and, perhaps, on a horse the boy may not know much about with respect to his powers, either as to stoutness or speed. If the boy should not know this, he might not only overmark his own horse in the pace, but by so doing he would, in all probability, also occasion one or two of the other horses to tire in their sweats, and in coming home in finishing them, they would be quite abroad and uncollected in their stride. Some horses meeting with repetitions of this sort, will lose their tempers to a certain extent, which may be seen by their becoming alarmed when, on sweating mornings, the sweaters are being put on them.

Now, a good training groom, who has himself been brought up from his boyhood in the stables, is fully aware that those things I have mentioned may happen from the boy's making too free with a horse of which he may, as I have observed, know but little. But the groom, to prevent any thing going wrong, cautions the boy who is supposed to lead the sweat, either in the stable or as he is going along on his way to the ground. He talks to the boy much in the following style, (the sweating ground being in good order, and the horses having been for some time in strong work).

Calling him by his name, or perhaps, applying the more familiar epithet "boy," he says,—"As soon as they are well on their legs and settled in their stride, (meaning the horses,) come away with them at a fair even pace until you come to such a place, (naming some land-mark, point, or object well known on the ground). As soon as you get there, take a pull at your horse, keep fast hold of his head, and come with them the whole of the way home at a good sweating pace." The groom, in concluding his orders, says,—"Mind, boy, you do not overmark your horse;" and then he goes on to tell him how he is to proceed in order to guard against so doing. He says,—"Be sure you do not forget, in coming along, to call sufficiently often on your horse, so as to know what he has left in him to come home with them in the last rally."

Now, the boy we have been so long teaching to ride is fully aware of what is meant by the groom's orders, to call on his horse. Having reached that part of the ground whence he is ordered to bring them home at the pace mentioned, he takes a pull at his horse and sets him a-going (the other horses following) for whatever length he thinks proper, or rather, as he finds the pace tells on his horse. If he finds his horse goes freely, collectedly, and within himself, he lets him stride away at the pace he was ordered, if he thinks it is not too fast for the other horses; but the moment he finds his own horse beginning to hang, or not going at the pace kindly as he did at first, he quietly takes a pull and holds him

together for a few strides. After which, he challenges him again, by lifting up his hands and giving him a hustle or two, to ascertain whether he is slackening his pace being rather idle, or whether the pace and the length he is going are telling on him. Now if the boy, by challenging his horse, finds that he immediately and determinedly gets at his usual stride, he thinks, or perhaps he says to himself, (in the language of the stables,) "Oh come, he has got plenty left; I shall hold him fast and let him go," meaning by this, that he will keep a pretty fast hold of the horse's head, and let him go on with the pace. And if he finds the horse maintains his stride with ease to himself, he will most likely not have occasion to challenge him again until he is approaching near home, or perhaps not even then, if he finds he is going well within himself. But if he does not challenge him again, it may be necessary that he should take a quiet pull and hold him together for a few strides, that he may be well ready when called upon to make a run, and bring the whole of the horses home in concluding the sweat, at a good telling pace.

This is the mode in general practice of making play, or rating a horse, so as to run no risk of overmarking him. Only observe that some horses make more free with themselves than others in sweating and running. It is therefore necessary for a rider to challenge such horses often, (unless they are very flighty), to ascertain how much they may have left in them; and holding them quietly together according to

their mouths and manner of running, will be the means of preventing their breaking way, and over-marking or otherwise abusing themselves in their sweats, trials, or races.

In order further to instruct the boy in riding, let us suppose, by way of example, half a dozen horses of different ages under the care of one groom, to have arrived at any place where a meeting is to be held, a fortnight or three weeks prior to such meeting, at which the horses have to run over a two-mile round course. It is not customary for horses to leave the ground on which they may have been training so long previous to a meeting taking place. It is only usual, on such occasions, for the horses to take the last sweat on a course they have not run over. The object, however, for having the horses brought to a round course so long before running, is not only to shew the old horses the course, but principally to teach the young ones to turn upon it, as also to instruct the young boy whom I am teaching to ride, how to make a difficult turn, or, what used to be more commonly called, "running for the turn," which is a sort of thing horses as well as boys may be practised in when are sweating over a round course, in preference to any other way.

To arrange this matter properly, previous to the horses going out to sweat, the groom, if he is a good judge, puts the best riding boys on the young ones, to teach and regulate them judiciously at the turns. Those boys who ride moderately well will do on the

old ones. As soon as the horses arrive at the sweating ground, the groom orders the boys with the young ones, to go to a certain part of the course, (what part, will depend on the length they have to sweat,) and to walk about until the other horses which have begun and have to sweat longer lengths, come to them. The young ones then follow in line as directed, the boys on them having been previously cautioned to be very careful with them at their turns, which, if they ride as they ought, they know very well how to arrange.

Now, the boy I have been instructing to ride, should on his first being ordered to ride a sweat over a round course, be put to do it on an old horse—one which is known to be easy and kind at his turns, and should be placed second in the string; and, to give the boy an idea how he is to make his turns, the head lad, on one of the horses, should lead the sweat, and previous to his coming to a difficult turn, which requires some caution, (otherwise it is not necessary) he should, in time, turn his head and call to the boy to follow him. The head lad should then also point out to the boy how far it is necessary for him to lay out of his ground so as to make the turn pretty close to the post without in the least altering the stride or pace of the horse. The head lad takes care to begin sufficiently early to lay his horse a little out of his ground as he is approaching the post at which he is to make the turn.

It is very necessary for a boy to know this part of riding well, in case he should be put up as a light weight to ride in a race; for if the boy properly ex-

ecutes a difficult turn, he is not only close to the post, but he is immediately ready, without risk or difficulty, to make a run from it, should his horse be challenged there for running by any of the party. But if the boy attempts to turn immediately at the post, he must lay some way out of his ground in doing it, to make a difficult turn in this manner; the consequence of which in a race would be, that an experienced jockey, well placed, running with him, and having made this turn well previously to his coming to the post, would not only have the opportunity of running for the turn, but in doing it, he would, if he chose, oblige the boy to lay very much out of his ground. The experienced jockey would then take a pull to set his horse a-going, would slip the boy several lengths, and would thereby most likely win the race; for as I have before observed, a length gained here may be worth five or six in straight running, if the proper advantage be taken of it.

I will just now state the advantages which may, and often have been taken by experienced jockeys; and which advantage the groom is very likely to explain to a good riding boy, and more particularly if he knows he shall shortly have occasion to put him up to ride a race over a round course.

The groom therefore takes an opportunity, and quietly talks to the boy of what may happen in the running. If a horse bolts, or lays a long way out of his ground, the groom says,—"If he is a good horse, and it is heats that you are running, the best way,

if a strong field, is for two or three of you to agree to run for the heat, and distance the horse if you can. If you do not succeed, his rider will most likely have taken a good deal out of him in saving his distance. In the second heat, if it can be agreed upon, those that laid by in the first, may take him off from the post and keep at him the whole of the way home:—the others that waited in the second heat, may take him off again in the third. If he is not to be beaten by being thus run at, he proves himself to be very superior to the company he is in."

The groom, continuing his directions to the boy, says,—"Now, if the same sort of thing should happen to you when riding a race over a round course, by your horse bolting or laying out of his ground, you must instantly pull your horse up, and get fairly, and as quick as possible into the course again, and make all the running you can to save your distance; but never, under such circumstances, run to win. Having saved your distance, decline the heat, and pull your horse up the moment you are within the distance post, and walk him quietly to the scales to weigh. Your horse will not be much abused, nor will the public know any thing about him. But now, boy, if you should be engaged to ride in a match, and the horse you are riding against should swerve, or lay a long way out of his ground, the instant you observe this, take you a pull and make strong running with your horse, until you see, by keeping your head occasionally turned, the other jockey has got his horse into the

course again. Immediately you observe this, take a pull at your horse in order to ease him, and wait until the other horse, by persevering in the pace, has got nearly up to your horse's quarters. As soon as you perceive him close at hand, be you ready to take a pull and come home with your horse at his best pace. The horse that has been laying out of the ground, (if the jockey thinks he has any chance in the race,) must keep his place. If he can win under the above unfavourable circumstances, he will prove himself a most extraordinary good horse, or the horse you are riding must be an extraordinary bad one.

CHAPTER XVIII.

ON RIDING A FLIGHTY HORSE IN HIS EXERCISE, AND SWEAT.

I HAVE described in the last two chapters how the boy should be ordered to ride a craving horse, and a free kind going horse. Let us suppose the boy to have been riding different horses of the latter description, and that his temper is thereby so much improved, that he is become very cool and patient on horseback, and can ride well.

As there is another race-horse to be trained, differing in description from either of the last mentioned, and as he is to be very differently managed in his riding, I think it necessary, with a view further to instruct the boy, to point out here how such a horse should be rode.

The horse I now allude to, is in every respect the very reverse of the craving one. He is delicate in his constitution, irritable and flighty in his temper, and

easily alarmed, either in or out of the stables. There is nothing to be done with such a horse, but by the kindest and most gentle treatment, which I shall more accurately describe when on the subject of training such horses.

To bring the boy to ride a horse of the above description properly, the groom in giving his instructions seems to make a confidant of him, and commences his conversation in the plural number. He says,—"We must mind, boy, what we are about with this horse, or we shall have him lose his temper, and if he does, neither you nor I will be able to do any thing with him. You must, therefore, be very quiet on him, and go with him by yourself to such a part of the downs (naming a part well known to the boy). When you get there, let him do just what he likes, it being a strange place to him. If he chooses to stand and look about, let him do so; you can at the same time speak kindly to him, and make much of him by patting him on the neck until he moves on of his own accord. If you manage him in this way, he will not be frightened at you; but if you and he agree tolerably well, he may now and then be a little calfish; and if he should, you must not pull rashly at him, but only just sufficient to keep his head up. But whatever you do, never attempt to hit him; for if you do, it is all over, and we shall never after get any good of him."

Pursuing his remarks, the groom says,—"You must not attempt to give him a gallop, until you know him well, and unless you think he is rather inclined of him-

self to go off in one; and even then, you had better not attempt to hold or take a pull at him. If you do, it will most likely alarm him. The best way at first will most likely be, for you to sit on him as you would on a hack, cantering along the road. In pulling him up, you must do it very gently. Having done it, let him stand to blow, till he chooses to walk away of himself; and in coming to the troughs with him, if he appears to notice them, do not force him up to them, but turn him away and walk him about until the other horses are coming up to water. He will most likely go with them to the troughs without being in the least alarmed."

The horse above described has generally good speed, but is a jade in a greater or less degree. If his temper can be preserved by gentle treatment, some little work may be got into him, which will bring him something stouter for the length he can come; or perhaps in his race he may be got to go his best pace a few strides further than usual. The groom, with a view to attain this point, will probably send him lightly clothed (or, perhaps, without any clothes at all) over the sweating ground on the morning this is to happen. If the distance is not too far from the stables, it is very probable the groom will walk instead of riding to see the horse go over the ground. As the groom is going along, he enters into conversation with the boy, telling him how the horse is to be rode. He says,—"You must mind, boy; you know your horse is a flighty one; he may perchance make too free with himself in some part of

the ground, which is what we do not want him to do. You must, therefore, let him go off his own way as quietly as possible; and if he settles at any thing like a gentle sweating pace, you must sit very still on him, drop your hands, and keep your temper; and do not, if you can any way avoid it, move your body from the first position you take. If he makes too free with the pace, do not pull at him, but be perfectly still, and let him rate himself for the length he chooses, unless you find the length he has gone is beginning to tell on him, and that he is decreasing his pace a little. If so, speak softly to him, and if you think, that without irritating him, you can get a gentle pull, try to do it so as to collect him a little, that he may finish the length (for it is hardly to be called a sweat) without being tired or flurried. If you think the pull will set him agoing again, you had better not attempt it. He must take his chance now, and by and bye, we will try another method with him." But, after the horse is pulled up, if the groom, on questioning the boy, finds that he and the horse have agreed tolerably well in coming so long a length, and that the horse is a good one (under the weights for his year) for the length he can come in his race, the boy must not on any account be taken from him.

CHAPTER XIX.

ON THE PULL AND HUSTLE.

The pull and hustle is better known to boys in racing stables who are perfect in their business than I shall probably be able to describe it; but as it is a sort of thing (from the manner in which horses are taught and trained) that answers the purposes for which it was intended, and as it requires to be thoroughly understood by all boys, riding gallops and sweats, I will, for the information of such of them as may be learning to ride, attempt to describe how and when this pull and hustle is to be put in practice, and how it is to be varied according to the effect which it is intended to produce on different horses. And to bring this matter more clearly before my readers, I shall again recur to some observations previously made in that part of this treatise which professes to teach a boy the art of riding.

The method adopted by a good riding boy, head

lad, or jockey, in holding a horse after he has started in his gallop, is by putting his hands well down on each side of the horse's withers. By this firm purchase, he is mostly enabled to keep his horse's head up and in place; for if, in the start, the horse gets his head down, he will, if he feels inclined to do so, most probably break away or begin his gambols, and perhaps throw his rider. Yet it is not to be understood that the rider is at all times to retain this firm hold of his horse's head. When the rider finds that his horse is settled in his stride, and that he begins, as a horse sometimes will, to reach with his head for a little more liberty of rein, the rider should (to prevent the horse's changing his legs or altering his stride) gently raise his hands off his horse's withers or quietly let them slide along that part, and give him the necessary liberty without letting the reins quite loose. But if the horse makes too free with the pace, the rider is to bring his hands gradually back to their former position, and endeavour to keep the horse more collected in his stride, by now and then giving and taking in this way, as occasion may require.

As the horse is proceeding in his sweat or race, whether he reaches again with his head or not, it is necessary that the rider should occasionally have recourse to the same method of easing and pulling his horse, with a view (as has already been noticed) of keeping his mouth alive and sensible to the bit. I mean by this, that the rider is never to have what is called "a dead pull" on the animal's mouth,

which, from this sort of thing, would soon become insensible to the pressure applied to it; the effect of which would be that the horse would have the pull upon the rider, and would, moreover, have the power of breaking way or bolting with the rider whenever he is so inclined. The horse, in doing this, might make too free with himself, both in the pace and length, from which he is likely to be overmarked, and get uncollected and quite abroad in his stride. In short, to use the common phrase of the stables, the horse becomes what is called a "spread eagle."

In my instructions given to the boy in riding, I have observed that although it may be necessary for him occasionally to make use of his legs and arms when riding a horse that may require his so doing, he must move his body as little as possible. But as this matter seems to call for some further explanation, it may not be out of place here to point out more fully what I mean relative to this subject.

There are a few instances in which the boy in riding is at times necessitated to move his body from the upright position in which I have already directed he is generally to keep it; but this very much depends on the sort of horse he is riding.

The position a boy fist puts himself into when he is endeavouring to set his horse on his legs to start him, either in the commencement of his gallop or sweat, is that of moving his body forward over the horse's withers or part of his neck. The horse, if he has been any time in training, knows, by this movement of the rider,

that he is to get away in a gallop, which he does, if he is a kind, free goer, without giving the boy the trouble of pressing his heels against his sides.

When the horse is settled in his stride, the manner of his pulling and going on with the pace will very much regulate an experienced riding boy as to the position he will keep his body in. With a horse that is not easily flurried, it becomes a matter of choice with the boy as to the position he will take; but if it be a light, flighty, irritable horse that the boy is riding, placing his hands well down, he cannot be too still nor too long in the first position he takes, nor can he, when he has occasion to alter it perhaps to a more upright one, be too quiet or too careful in so doing. For if a flighty horse feels any sudden alteration or movement of his rider, he either alters his stride, changes his legs, or becomes flurried, and then he begins pulling more determinedly. This must, if possible, be avoided, otherwise a flighty horse soon loses his temper, and is then of no use as a race-horse.

The horse that requires but little pulling or hustling in his exercise is the free, kind goer. He generally keeps his place both in his gallop and sweat. It is in his race that he requires pulling or hustling, which is sometimes occasioned by his being challenged by any horse in the company he may be running in, or when the horse we are describing has arrived at that latter part of the race which is the length of rally in which he can live the whole of the way home. The jockey's orders (if the horse has not before been called upon) on

arriving at this part of the course, are most likely to watch his opporutnity, and to get the first effort. Having done this, with his hands raised off the horse's withers, he occasionally moves them gently up and down, and gives and takes with his reins(but they are not to be slack), pressing the horse's sides at the same time as much as may be necessary with the calves of his legs. Nor does a good jockey, in doing all this, ever forget to catch with his body and hands the stride of the horse. The jockey proceeds thus with his horse in the rally until he comes within a few strides of home, when, if he finds the race is rather too near to be pleasant, he gets more determinedly at his horse's head. If he is a game horse, he stabs him a few times with his spurs, then gets up his whip, and perhaps strikes the horse two or three times, if he sees occasion for it, in finishing the race, when within a stride or two of the winning post.

The horse next to be noticed, and which is the one that requires the rider's exertions to get him along, more particularly in his sweats, is called the craving horse.

This appellation is applied to many of these horses from their being addicted to certain propensities, which are differently denominated by different training grooms, just according as they find such horses go in their gallops or sweats. They describe these by one or more of the following epithets:—a craving, idle, sluggish, sulky, heavy, hanging or lurching sort of horse. These horses seldom give themselves the trouble to swerve or go out; nor are they very apt to tire in

their sweats; but some of them will shut up in them, that is, they will sulk and slacken their pace; nor can they at all times be got to struggle in a rally, unless they choose to come of themselves, however severely a rider may get at them. Whenever such horses are going to sweat, they require to be rode by boys that are in high practice in riding sweats, and that are very strong and determined on horseback.

To describe how this sort of horse is to be pulled and hustled, so as to get him along, let us suppose half a dozen horses sweating together, an idle, craving horse, with a good riding boy on him, being in front to lead them. The usual orders being given to the boy how he is to proceed with the pace as soon as the horses are got well away, the boy leading them with the craving horse soon finds he has to get at his horse's head by giving him a pull or two to get his head well up and in place, and to press him with his legs to keep him going. Thus the boy goes on until he comes to that part of the ground at which he is ordered to rate his horse a little faster, or to come home with him at the usual pace.

To assist in urging the craving horse on, it is likely that one or two of the boys have received orders to come with the horses they are riding in the sweat up to the craving horse's girths, and occasionally to challenge him; or the groom may have ordered a horse stripped to come with the craving one from this part of the ground home. Whichever of these orders is given is not very material. It is from this part of the

ground to the end of the sweat, that this pull and hustle is often had recourse to, to keep a craving horse going. The boy, firm and well down in his saddle, his body upright, his feet rather forward, with his hands raised, and a fast hold of his reins, sits thus cool and determined, keeping his horse's head up and in place; and as occasion may require, he moves his hands quickly up and down, now and then giving and taking with his reins. If necessary, he twists or crosses his hands over to the right or left of the horse's withers, just as he finds him inclined to hang either to the one side or the other. In this way, the boy can mostly get the horse off his hanging, and when he has succeeded in getting him to go straight, he then pulls and hustles him along, and having thereby roused him into the pace he is ordered to go, keeps him at it.

The boy presses the horse with the calves of his legs, and now and then he throws his heels quickly back with all his force against the horse's sides; at the same time, he is very likely to get up his ash plant and flourish it near the horse's head or over his own; or, if necessary, he drops it smartly down upon his horse's shoulders or under his belly. The boy then gets again at his horse's head, takes a pull and gives him three or four good hustles. In this way, by pulling, hustling, and twisting, the boy, I may say, as it were, lifts the horse along at every stride. If the boy finds, that notwithstanding this exertion, which sometimes exhausts his patience and temper, he cannot succeed in sufficiently rousing his horse, he will then have recourse to

some such rough expression as "Come, or go along, you brute," to intimidate and urge him on in finishing his sweat.

This is the manner in which a craving, idle, sulky horse is pulled or hustled, in order to get him at his best pace in concluding either his gallop, sweat, or race. In the language of the stable, this is called "getting at a horse, or setting-to with him for the rally he can live in;" and although the boy who has to ride a horse of this description must, in his exertions, use his hands, arms, legs, feet, and occasionally turn his head, with all his limbs in action at one and the same moment, yet he should be well down in his saddle, nor should his body move more than can possibly be avoided.

I am aware, from experience, that riding such craving horses in their sweats is much more easily talked about than done. Indeed, it is very laborious to keep some of them going, and to rate them properly for the lengths they have to come on those occasions. Such horses require to have on them boys that are not only in high practice in riding, but strong and determined on horseback. It is by no means a difficult task to learn how to make the exertions I have here mentioned, and to which all good riding boys are obliged to have recourse in urging such idle horses on. The youngest boy in the stable, from the directions of the head lad or training groom, together with the observations he makes on what he sees good riding boys do, soon becomes acquainted with this pull and hustle, so much so that many of the boys are too apt, unless they

are checked, to display their abilities in this way by practising this sort of riding in concluding the gallops and sweats, with horses which by no means require to be thus treated. These are precautions and instructions which I think it is necessary grooms should give their boys, with a view of bringing them to ride properly and agreeably to their orders. The directions I have here laid down, are such as I myself received when a boy. It is the different orders daily given by experienced training grooms how various horses are to be rode in their gallops and sweats, that instil into the minds of the boys who are riding them, the practical knowledge of good riding. It is not riding a race now and then that will make either a boy or a man a good jockey, or many gentlemen would become very excellent riders.

An exercise boy, when put up to ride in a race (unless the groom is a bad judge) is, in all probability, as good a rider as he ever will be; and for the horse he is going to ride, he may be, with very few exceptions, equal to any jockey in the race. I shall take a more favourable opportunity than is offered at the conclusion of the present chapter, of making some few remarks upon those who form these few exceptions.

CHAPTER XX.

ON THE DUTIES OF THE HEAD LAD.

By a head lad is understood a young man, or rather one who, when promoted, is fast approaching to man's estate. He is generally one who has been for some years previously brought up under the tuition of the groom, who is induced to select him for the situation from his general good conduct, and from his having a thorough knowledge of his business, both in the training as well as the riding of the horses, his private character having always been distinguished by a regard for secrecy, sobriety, and honesty—three very essential qualifications for either a training groom, jockey, head lad, or stable boy, to possess. Such a head lad, under the groom, has full authority over all the boys and horses both in and out of the stables. He instructs and directs the boys in every part of their duty, particularly that of riding. He rides any difficult horse, as occasion may require, in their gallops or sweats. During the absence of the groom, who may be attending

with some of his horses at any particular meeting, the head lad, having previously received the groom's orders, feeds and works such horses as may be left in the home stables, and when he is thus employed, he should be allowed the use of a hack. He is sometimes sent with a horse or two to a country meeting, and is occasionally entrusted to train and ride such horses. When the groom is otherwise employed, he is also entrusted with horses of value and in high repute that may be going to travel to any of the great meetings. There is one principle to which a head lad should strictly adhere, and that is,—secrecy relative to any horse's being amiss. He must not on any account communicate his thoughts or suspicions upon such a point in any way or to any person except to the training groom under whom he is serving. It may be necessary to caution a young beginner previous to his entering on a situation as a training groom or jockey, how he is to act towards his employer; and this shall form the subject of the next chapter.

CHAPTER XXI.

ON THE DUTIES OF PUBLIC AND PRIVATE TRAINING GROOMS, AND JOCKEYS.

It is almost unnecessary for me to observe here, that a man who is a training groom, either public or private, should be a sober, honest, attentive, and intelligent man. He must be perfectly well acquainted with every individual thing relating to a race-horse. With a clear head, his thoughts should be almost incessantly occupied in studying the different tempers and constitutions of such horses as may be placed under his care to train. He should minutely calculate every point, both for and against each horse, so that he may be able properly to arrange the feeding and working of the horses under his care. He must have a quick eye, to observe in due time the changes any of his horses may be likely to make. It is by strictly observing all such things, that he is able to bring each horse to post in such form as will enable him to come the length he may be engaged to run at his best pace, and without the risk of injuring his constitution.

Besides a clear head and a quick eye, there is one more essential that a groom should possess, and that is a still tongue. For, as public trainer, he is very likely to have a large establishment of horses standing in his yard, many of which, if not all of them, are under his direction. Being thus engaged to train for different noblemen and gentlemen of the turf, he must learn to be silent in order to give general satisfaction to every one of his employers, but more particularly if any of the horses belonging to different owners should be matched against each other, or engaged together in the same stakes or plates. It is true that it does not often happen that horses so matched stand together, and it is a sort of thing which should at all times be avoided by the owners of such horses as are training in the same yard, for it must necessarily be unpleasant to the trainer (there being but one horse that can win); and although he may endeavour to serve all his employers with equal integrity, yet from the opinions formed by inexperienced sportsmen of the properties of their horses, disappointments in the result of a race will sometimes occasion jealousy to arise in the minds of the most liberal of those whose horses may have been beaten. Noblemen and gentlemen who employ a public training groom will of course at times require of him how their horses may be going on in their work, and they will, not unfrequently, request his individual opinion of them. He should always reply cautiously. I do not mean to say that he should prevaricate, but the less he says to a young sportsman, the

better, unless he has any thing to communicate that, without an accident, would be highly advantageous. Advice, though well intended, given unasked to a young nobleman or gentleman, may be displeasing to the employer, and will probably prove injurious to the groom, by such noblemen or gentlemen ordering their horses to be removed from his stables. But to an old experienced sportsman, who the groom knows has confidence in him, he may open his mind rather freely, and may even go so far as to recommend him in due time to draw his horse, if he thinks there is no chance of his winning. He may thereby save the horse from being abused, and if the thing be well managed, it may perhaps save the payment of forfeit or entrance money. But under all circumstances, I cannot help again remarking, that a public training groom, in giving his advice on such occasions, should be very cautious indeed. The most proper channel of communicating all such advice is through that which of all others is likely to be most satisfactory to all parties, — the private trials, or public running of the horses.

The private training groom should, in every respect, be equal to the public training groom, in regard to the knowledge of his business. This man has a much less difficult game to play than the public trainer. It is not unfrequent for the private training groom to reside on the premises of the nobleman or gentleman in whose employ he may be, and to be training the horses entrusted to his care, in his master's park,

and perhaps not in a racing neighbourhood; as, for example, at the Earl of Egremont's, at Petworth. He has therefore an opportunity of keeping his horses' properties secret, confiding them to his master only, and he can enter freely and without fear into conversation with his employer, upon the qualifications of the horses. This retired situation, removed from the public eye of curiosity, enables them, both before Christmas and in the spring, to make the necessary trials of the various powers of their horses, and to form, in a quiet way, a correct judgment, under what weight and what length each horse will run to the greatest advantage. By comparing the results of these trials with the measurement which they may have had an opportunity of making, in public running, of the powers of other horses, the owner will be in a situation of entering or matching his horse in public running, to a decided advantage.

It is by training grooms that race-horses are brought to post in the highest possible state of condition. Such horses are trained by these men, according to their ages, tempers, constitutions, and the running properties each may possess, in the length he can best run, under certain weights. These points can only be known to the trainers who direct and superintend the feeding, watering, and working of the race-horses entrusted to their care, and who should consequently be the only persons to give orders, how such horses are to be rode in their different races. Trainers also know best how to select those jockeys who are in high practice,

and whose skill, and coolness, combined with judgment and a quick decision, enable them to make the most of every fair advantage that may offer in the running in favor of the horses they ride.

Such men as I have been describing are invaluable to their employers. It is on the sound judgment, integrity, and honesty of men of the above description that many, many thousand pounds are often depending. I, therefore, strongly recommend to the notice of both trainers and jockeys, at all times and on all occasions, to adhere strictly to the old proverb, that "honesty is the best policy;" which principle in the character of man, Shakspeare has so finely exemplified in the following lines,—

> "This above all, to thine own self be true;
> And it must follow, as the night the day,
> Thou can'st not then be false to any man"

CHAPTER XXII.

ON THE TREATMENT OF HORSES' FEET, AND ON SHOEING.

It is generally understood, that until horses are brought into a stable, their feet require but very little attention. While roving about in a state of nature, they are generally sound and healthy. But it is to be observed, that when a horse is taken up from grass and brought into the stable to be got into condition, a very great change is produced in his constitution by the dry food on which he then almost solely subsists; but the change will, in a great measure, be corrected by the horse himself; and he will assist (if allowed to do so) the digestion of the dry food he eats, by the quantity of water he chooses to drink at different intervals during the day. But he has no power to meet or counteract the very great change which is at the same time taking place in his feet. This must be left partly to the care of the groom who looks after him, and partly to the smith. They should direct

Fig 1

Fig 2

Fig 3

Fig 4

Fig 5

Fig 6

Figure 1 Is a full plate for a fore foot. Figure 2 Is a hind plate turned up at both hind heels
Figure 3 Is a three quarter plate. Figure 4 Is a foot paved to receive the shoe
Figure 5 Is a foot with a stamped shoe put on with eight countersunk nails
Figure 6 Is a foot with a fullered shoe put on with six common nails

their attention to this point immediately on the horse's coming into the stable, and while his feet are yet in a perfect state; for if they once become diseased, it is difficult to get them sound: at least, I have found this to be the case.

Hunters and horses in common use are not so much exposed, nor for so long a time, to the same causes which injure their feet, as race-horses are. The former are only working through the winter, and then mostly on soft or moist ground. In the summer, these horses rest, and if their feet are properly attended to during that season, there is time for them to recover any common injury they may have sustained in the course of their winter's work. Similar precautions may be adopted with respect to carriage-horses or hacks, by turning them out of work for a sufficient period; but the race-horse cannot be so conveniently put out of work as either of these.

A race-horse, unless an accident happens to him, is kept up longer and more constantly in an artificial state, than any other horse.

Two and three year old colts which are bred for the turf, and are engaged early in great stakes, are often in training as yearlings, in the winter as well as in the summer; and when they come to a more advanced age as country platers, some of them have to come to post early in spring, and run at different meetings until late in the autumn.

Although these horses may not be actually abused by a summer's running, yet many of them will become

very stale from it; and for such strong horses, there is not much more than three months in winter allowed for them to rest, to put up flesh, and to get fresh, before they must again commence training. During the time they are laying by, they must have bedding to lay on by day as well as by night.

It is almost unnecessary for me to observe here, that the bedding of a race-horse cannot well be dispensed with at any time, as horses in strong work require to rest by day as well as by night, and many of them do lay by day, stretching and resting their limbs and muscles; so that they are, for sixteen or eighteen hours out of the four-and-twenty, standing or laying with their hoofs constantly covered up with the warm bedding. This keeps their feet very hot and dry, and is one of the principal causes which occasions them to contract; nor has the horse the same power within himself of remedying this change produced in his feet, as he has of counteracting the change which takes place in his constitution, on his being brought from a state of nature into an artificial one.

All grooms should endeavour to make themselves acquainted with the nature of different horses' feet, more particularly such training grooms as may be travelling with country plate horses,—as a preventative is better than a cure. They should not only see that their boys are attentive in the common care of their horses' feet,—such as picking them out and washing them, — but grooms should ndeavour to obtain a thorough knowledge of such treatment

as may be necessary to preserve their horses' feet in as healthy a state as possible. They should endeavour also to make themselves acquainted with such remedies as may be most advantageously applied to give relief when their horses' feet are somewhat diseased or out of order from being repeatedly shod and plated. For race-horses can no more work, travel, or run with bad feet than with bad legs. Grooms were formerly particularly attentive to the latter, but I have known them neglect the former, unless when their horses shoes or plates were put on by a strange smith. This is very improper. They should, on all occasions, pay the strictest attention to their horses' feet, as Veterinary Surgeons in high practice are not to be met with in every town, neither are good shoeing or plating smiths to be found at every racing meeting.

The feet of race-horses are mostly small and strong, with a deep or high crust. Their heels are also high and strong and their soles concave. Horses with such very strong feet have been known to work for years without shoes, but then this has been under peculiar circumstances.

The feet of all horses are liable to contraction. This is easily to be observed, particularly in old horses which have been kept in an artificial state; their feet become long and narrow, and their heels contracted. Yet many horses with their feet in this state may be observed to go perfectly sound.

The reason Professor Coleman gives why horses with such feet are not lame, is, that nature sometimes accommodates herself to the slow progress of the disease, and as the foot contracts in breadth, so it increases in length. The professor is of opinion, that by these means lameness is often obviated in such horses.

But when contraction is sudden, lameness is more frequently produced. This shows how necessary it is to pay the strictest attention to horses' feet when they first come into the stables, at which time they are in a sound and perfect state, as the feet of racing colts invariably are, if they have received proper attention while in their paddocks. In such situations their feet are almost constantly moist; even in the summer, their feet are moistened by the dew of the grass, twelve hours out of the four-and-twenty. And while they are in their paddocks, they are almost always in action; their feet are exposed to the air on a soft, cool surface; and as colts are generally at this time pretty lusty, there is a good deal of weight on their feet, which may much assist in keeping them expanded while in the natural moist state in which they are so long as they continue in their paddocks.

Before I proceed to speak of the remedies necessary to be applied to horses' feet with a view to keep them sound and healthy, I shall give a description of the external horny covering of the horse's foot, and how it is divided. I shall compress and simplify the matter as much as I can. For to enter minutely into the anato-

mical structure of the sensible parts of the foot would probably be more curious than useful to either grooms or smiths; but it may be advantageous to both to give a plain description of the external covering.

The whole of the upper part of the crust, which is connected or joined with the skin at the lower part of the pastern, is termed the coronet; the sides of the foot are called the quarters; and the quarters terminate in the heels. The front and lower part, is the toe of the hoof; this latter is the term sometimes given to the external covering of the foot. The sole is of the form of an arch, and situated round the bottom or under-part of the foot, and has a certain limited motion whenever the foot is in action. The bars are a continuation of the crust,—they are convex, and extend along the sides of the frog. The frog is composed of soft, elastic horn, is convex, of a wedge-like form, and is situated in the middle of the sole, is pointed towards the toe, and spreads as it advances to the heel. In the centre of the broad part there is a fissure, which, when diseased, is termed a thrush. It is almost unnecessary for me to remark that the horny parts composing the hoof, are for the defence and protection of the sensible or internal parts of the foot, and should therefore, for this purpose, be left of a certain substance.

Authors, who have published on the Veterinary art, have given various opinions with regard to the uses of the frog of the horse's foot. Whatever may be the functions that nature intended it should perform, it appears to me to be highly necessary that grooms and

others, who have the care of horses, as well as the smith who shoes them, should become well acquainted with this part of the foot, as also, with all other external parts of it. I shall therefore give my opinion, though briefly, on this matter, as far as I am capable of judging from the practical knowledge I have been able to derive from directing and superintending the shoeing of horses for the last eighteen years, in the regiment in which I have now the honour to serve. From this practice, I am induced to coincide with the opinion of Professor Coleman, and to think with him, that this part of the foot (the frog), from its elastic and wedge-like form, is intended to receive pressure,—but certainly, not constant, artificial pressure, to the extent and for the length of time it has often been applied. I think that wearing the iron frog in the stables, and also wearing bar shoes, if continued for several shoeings, generally bring on diseased frogs,—that is to say, if these are applied for the purposes for which such shoes are usually intended; which is to take the pressure off the heels of such horses' feet as may have them diseased from corns or any other cause. Under these circumstances, it is, of course, necessary to apply bar shoes, having previously removed a certain portion of horn from the parts diseased, to prevent, as much as possible, such parts coming in contact with pressure. Which being effectually done, the bar shoe is applied, and the frog, if sound and of sufficient substance, now receives a great portion of pressure, which I consider to be artificial, and which, if continued for a long time,

generally produces diseased frogs. This may be obviated by making the bar part of the shoe unreasonably wide ; which, however, is rather objectionable for pleasure horses—as racers, hunters, and hacks. Yet these bar shoes, properly made, are very useful for draught horses, and indeed for any horses whose feet may be so diseased as not to go sound without them.

From the manner in which cart horses working in London and in many of our provincial mercantile towns are shod, the frogs of their feet are seldom or ever in contact with the ground, in consequence of the very high caulkings of their shoes, which are necessary to prevent their slipping when exerting themselves in the drawing of heavy loads.

Now it is horses of the above description that are, perhaps, more subject to that obstinate disease "canker," than many of our pleasure horses are ; the cause of which, I am of opinion, is the want of pressure on the frog. Be this as it may ; whether draught horses' feet become affected with the disease just mentioned from the want of pressure, or whether it proceeds from a want of proper attention being paid to their feet in the stables, or from their feet not being properly cleaned out at the smith's shop prior to their being shod,—or, whether it results from a running thrush having been long neglected, or from the discharge proceeding from the grease penetrating through the clefts of the frog, and thereby occasioning the disease,—or whether a horse becomes affected with it from any hereditary cause, as that of being bred from either a

horse or mare which may have long been subject to the disease,—it matters not. From whatever cause the disease may proceed, whenever it does make its appearance, it mostly makes the frog its place of preference; and, if neglected, it spreads to the other parts of foot. Now, the frog being thus affected with canker, is in a highly diseased state; yet notwithstanding this, one of the first steps towards the cure of the disease is to lower the horse's heels, so as immediately to throw as much pressure as possible upon the frog, even in its diseased state. So necessary is pressure to the frog in forwarding the cure, that if it cannot be obtained by the the above means, a bar shoe is put on; and after the dressing has been applied, the foot is stopped up with tow as tight as it can well be done, so as to throw all the pressure possible upon the frog, with a view to keep down the fungous parts which are much inclined to rise on its surface. So that even in a diseased state, this part of the foot (the frog) will not only bear pressure, but, that pressure being applied to it, becomes one of the principal remedies for bringing it again to its former healthy state.

From this it appears necessary that the frog of the horse's foot should receive natural pressure, by being allowed to come fully in contact with the ground.

The wall or crust of many of our large horses' feet (such as heavy coach and draught horses) is much too oblique, with low weak heels and convex soles. These diseases, or perhaps, more properly speaking, the ill-formation of many such horses' feet, more frequently

proceeds from their being bred (as most horses of this description are) in low, wet, moist situations, as in the fens of Lincolnshire, than, as is often supposed, from hereditary causes.

The horn of horses' feet which are bred in such swampy places, being rapidly forced in its growth by the constant moisture, becomes thin and weak, and is soft and elastic from its being almost constantly exposed to wet; so that the wall or crust of the fore-foot is scarcely ever equal to support the weight of such heavy draught horses when bred in such situations. From this cause, the feet of many such horses expand to an unreasonable size, and the soles of their feet are to be seen protruding more or less.

It is a pity that all such horses are not bred in drier situations; if they were, their feet would be good, and strong in proportion to their weight and size, and they could be continued more constantly than they are at present at the work to which they are accustomed. Their feet being strong and in good form, they could be shod with much greater ease, and could wear plain instead of enormously heavy bar shoes. I dislike such ill-formed large footed horses, as much as coarse large headed ones; for both these defects (as they may be correctly termed) are much more likely to retard than to increase the speed of the horse; nor would I breed from either stallions or mares with such imperfections.

When race-horses, hunters, or hacks, have such feet as I have just described, (which I allow is not frequently the case, more particularly with race-horses,)—

when, I say, it does happen that these horses have convex feet, it is customary not to make their shoes of more substance or of greater breadth than can possibly be avoided, according to the size of the foot and the weight of the horse, as these horses have to go a more rapid pace than heavy horses of slower movements—such, for instance, as those which work in harness. Neither race-horses nor hacks have occasion for caulkings to their shoes. The same may be said with respect to hunters, unless when hunting. In shoeing such of these horses as have convex feet, it is not an easy matter for the smith to prevent the frogs from coming somewhat in contact with the ground, in consequence, as I have already observed, of the quarters and heels of such feet being so very low and weak; from which circumstance, the frogs are invariably large, and in a most sound, healthy, and elastic state. This arises from their being almost constantly in contact with the ground. Whether such horses are standing in the stables, or are in action, their frogs are exposed to what may be called natural pressure, which I conceive to be absolutely necessary; and I recommend that it should at all times be allowed to take place when it can conveniently be done, by the heels of strong feet being kept moderately low, and the frog pared as little as possible.

The horses belonging to the regiment in which I am now serving are light, with some little breeding; consequently there are but few with feet of the above description. But when any of their feet are in such a

state, they are not so much deformed, nor at all times so deficient of horn, as many of the draught horses I have mentioned. However, all such feet generally require to be well furnished with iron. The breadth and substance of the shoes must be regulated according to the size and weight of the horse, and to the sort of work in which he is engaged. And unless such horses are shod under the superintendance of an experienced veterinary surgeon, or by a good shoeing smith in high practice, their feet soon get out of order.

My method of having cavalry horses shod that have convex feet, is, to shoe them often; but I never allow the soles of their feet to be pared to a greater extent than is absolutely necessary until the crust or wall of the foot has grown down. This is to prevent their soles from further protruding, which has been brought on by their being kept too weak. To give strength to the heels, I have the toes kept short; and if I see it necessary, I order bar shoes to be applied on one or two occasions, or until the wall or crust has grown and become sufficiently strong. When that is accomplished, I order plain shoes of a substance and breadth equal to the weight of the horse.

Such feet seldom require to be moistened by the application of water, but for the purpose of promoting the growth of the horn and keeping it tough. Tar ointment is the best application I am acquainted with; it is composed of equal parts of tar and mutton suet, or lard. This ointment, as well as the ointment, yellow basilicon, have been long in use with grooms and

farriers, and most excellent applications they are for keeping the horn of horses feet tough and elastic. The application is to be used twice or thrice a week, and to be well rubbed round the hoof. In applying it to the soles, it should be spread on pledgets of tow, covering the whole surface of the sole, and to be sufficient in quantity or substance to give some degree of pressure to the sole, whereby the crust or wall of the foot will be relieved of a certain portion of its weight; and the edges of the tow should be pressed under the shoe, so as to give pressure to those parts in a similar way.

By the method of shoeing and the treatment here recommended, I have not only kept horses in work that have been at head quarters; but their feet have so much grown, and become so strong, as to admit of their being almost constanly shod in plain shoes.

I have thus far given my opinion with regard to the application of pressure on the frog, and also such instructions for the shoeing and treatment of such feet as the practice I have had authorizes me to give; and which I hope will be sufficient for the guidance of grooms and smiths who have the care and shoeing of race-horses, subject to such imperfections.

With regard to the feet of thorough-bred horses generally, I would observe, that these horses, having their origin in a hot climate, and being bred on a dry soil, their feet are, as I have before noticed, almost invariably found to be strong, upright, and small, with the soles concave. This description is applicable to the

majority of the race-horses now bred in this country, which are subject, either from accident, inattention, or other causes, to most of the diseases met with in the feet of horses employed in common use. But the diseases to which all horses with strong feet are principally subject, are "bad thrushes," "contraction," and, not unfrequently, that which is termed "the navicular disease;" which latter was formerly better understood by describing the horse as being "foundered or groggy."

The locality of this disease is between the navicular bone and the flexor tendon, which latter passes over the former in its way to be inserted into the coffin bone—this is the seat of the disease. The surface of the navicular bone, and that part of the tendon immediately over it, become heated and inflamed when diseased; which is occasioned by the concussion produced in the rapid pace horses are at times obliged to go over hard ground. From a frequent repetition of these causes, the inflamation increases to such an extent as to terminate in an ossification of the parts, which are thereby deprived of their natural action, and indeed, of all action whatsoever; and horses which are severely affected with the complaint, may be seen going as much as they possibly can on their hind quarters.

Race-horses are occasionally subject to the above disease; but there are some among them—such as the craving ones, which are more liable to become affected with the complaint than the light ones, in consequence of their having not only to go long lengths in their

gallops and sweats, but occasionally to sweat three times a fortnight, and not unfrequently, in the height of summer—in the months of July and August,—when most of our training and running grounds in the south may be said to be very little better (in regard to the hardness of their surfaces) than turnpike roads. From the unavoidable necessity there is for keeping these horses almost constantly in strong work on such hard ground, the feet of some of them become heated and inflamed,—so much so, that it is not uncommon for the groom now and then to observe a horse in the string, when walking away first from the stable (perhaps the morning after sweating) to go a little stiff and feeling in his fore feet. The groom (if he is competent) on observing this, takes the earliest opportunity of recommending the owner to put the horse out of work for a short time, and by bleeding and giving him physic and rest, the inflammation in his feet subsides; and to any but a very accurate observer he will then appear to go sound. The owner, acting upon the hint given him by the training groom, will probably sell the horse. Should he not be disposed of, he is, of course, again put into training; and the same cause (strong work) very soon produces the same effect, and the horse at last becomes permanently diseased in his fore feet. He is seen by the groom to go very feeling in them in his walk; and in his gallops and sweats, he goes stiff and short in his stride.

The groom, now finding he cannot get the length

into the horse at the usual pace, recommends the owner to put the horse out of training; and perhaps at an age when there might have been a great deal of good running left in him; and in all probability, he might have continued in training for two or three years longer, had proper attention been paid to his feet while he yet continued a young one.

To make further comment on the navicular disease would be useless, as I am totally unacquainted with any remedy by which it may be cured. Attention should principally be directed to prevent, as much as possible, this disease, or any other, from taking place; for when horses fall lame in their feet, it is often difficult to get them sound again, unless the lameness proceeds from a mechanical injury. I think of the number of horses that become progressively lame from strong and rapid work, not more than half are again brought permanently sound, unless their work is stopped, and early means resorted to for their relief.

It has been pretty generally remarked by those who have travelled on the Continent, (and I have observed the same myself,) that horses there are not to be seen lame in their feet to any thing like the extent of our horses in England. This circumstance has led many people to suppose that there must be some very great defect in the shoeing of horses in this country, which does not exist on the Continent.

This is certainly not the fact. In proof of this contradictory assertion, I shall take, by way of example, the horses most frequently and the most

actively employed on the Continent—the French post, or diligence horse. The hunters of that country I know nothing about; and as to their saddle-horses, I have never seen any of them out of a walk or slow jog-trot. It is to be observed, that these horses are of a very different description from our English horses. The French post-horse may be said to be a well-bred, light sort of cart-horse. The French diligence horse is of a similar description, but larger; both of them have large, open, strong feet. These horses are not only very differently used, but they are also very differently kept to what the mail, post, and stage coach horses are in England. The French horses go much shorter stages, many of which are not half the distance of our stages; and besides this, they travel a much slower pace—not more than five or six miles per hour; and often on paved roads, which, I am inclined to think, is another circumstance in favour of the French horses' feet.

The stables in which the French post and diligence horses are kept are seldom or ever paved; neither is it by any means a general rule with the French stable people to bed down their horses by day. Their horses' feet are therefore much exposed to the cool, soft, and somewhat moist surface of their stable floors. But when we come to look at our English post, mail, or coach horse, we find, that with regard to breeding, he is altogether a different sort of animal,—his feet are small and strong, and he is not only differently employed and differently kept, but he is mostly going at the rate of from ten to twelve miles an hour—a pace

that produces great concussion and heat in a horse's feet, and more particularly in hot weather; and not unfrequently, many of our post-horses are driven this telling pace for a distance of twelve or fourteen miles before they are put into the stables; and when they are there, they are generally up to their knees in bedding necessary for them to rest and lay on, but which keeps their feet very hot, notwithstanding the cow dung with which they may be stopped at night. I am of opinion, that it is the rapidity of pace and the long lengths so often repeated, that subject so many more of our horses to lameness in the feet; and I do not think (as is generally supposed) that the horses of the Continent are less subject to it from any superiority in the French method of shoeing.

I am inclined to think, that were proper attention paid to colts immediately on their being taken from their paddocks into the training stables, causing their feet to be cleaned out as often as may be found necessary, according to the strength and growth of their feet, and their shoes with sufficient cover and substance to be properly fitted—aided by such other treatment as I shall presently mention, there would be but few race-horses, or indeed, horses of any description, that would become lame in their feet, from contraction, the navicular, or any other disease, unless such as may be brought on by injuries originating from accidents.

If the stables in which race-horses stand are on the downs on which the horses are to exercise, (as is often

the case,) there will be no hard road for them to walk over in going to the exercise ground, the surface of which, in winter (except in the time of frost) is soft, moist, and cool. Some horses are two or three hours a day at exercise, as many of them have to come to post early in the spring. Their feet, during this period of exercise, become, to a certain extent, relaxed and cool, more particularly if there has been much wet during the night; and if the necessary attention be paid to their feet on returning to the stables, they may be said to be kept nearly approaching to that natural and healthy state in which they were previous to their leaving their paddocks, provided they wear three-quarter shoes instead of those which are made to come full home to the heels of their feet.

Country plate horses that have become stale from travelling and running during the summer, and that have also their feet much broken from the repeated replacing of their shoes and plates, have seldom to come out very early in spring. They are generally wintered in loose boxes; and during the whole of the time that such horses remain in them and out of work, they should wear on their fore-feet three-quarter shoes, with a clip at the toe, and three nails on each side of each foot; but the nails should not approach closer to the heels than is absolutely necessary to keep the shoes on. Once in about every three weeks (depending much on the growth and strength of the feet) the shoes should be removed, and also the front part of the feet properly cleaned out, and, if necessary, the toes should be shortened; the heels and quarters should be allowed to

grow, but the detached parts of the frog may be removed, so that, when a horse is taken to work in the spring, his feet may be put in proper form to have the short shoes applied.

The treatment necessary to be adopted in the care of such horses' feet when they are kept in the stables, is a subject to which grooms should pay the strictest attention.

Horses that have strong feet, require to have them more relaxed by the application of water, than those which have weak feet; the latter require more the application of ointment to the foot to promote growth, and to keep their hoofs tough.

Country plate horses that have strong feet, and that are mostly in strong work in the summer, (at which season it is that training as well as running grounds are very hard,) are often travelling on hot dry roads; and unless moisture be sufficiently and properly applied to their fore-feet, much of the natural expansion and elastic parts of their heels and quarters are destroyed. Those parts become dry, hard, and brittle, and the natural consequence is, that greater concussion takes place in the feet of horses in this state, when they are going at a rapid pace, as in running heats of long lengths in light plates on a hard course than there would otherwise be, were their feet in a more elastic state.

To apply moisture to the feet of horses, the patent sponge water boots have been strongly recommended. They are certainly very useful, and it is probable the

more convenient and ready way of softening and relaxing the hoofs of horses in case active inflammation takes place in their feet from fever, or when contraction comes on suddenly. For such purposes I have used the sponge boots with the best effects, but I should never apply them to moisten the feet of horses that are to be kept in work. On such occasions, I think they relax the feet too suddenly; besides which they are unwieldy things for a boy in a race-horse stable to handle; they are also found to be very inconvenient for horses to rest in, that are in health, and have to go out to exercise twice a day, as most horses in training do.

During my practice in the Cavalry for this last eighteen years, whenever any of the troop horses having strong feet, have become lame from their feet having contracted, and the hoofs hard and brittle, (which is common in a dry Spring, or in the hot Summer months), I have ordered them to stand in clay and water, if I have plenty of spare stable room in the barracks. Their full shoes having previously been taken off, their feet cleaned out, and three-quarter shoes put on them. The period I allow these horses to stand in clay and water depends much on the sort of feet they have and the state they may be in. The stronger horses' feet are, the more they require to be relaxed by moisture. Some horses I keep standing in wet clay every day from morning till night, for three weeks or a month, as I conceive it necessary; others I keep in it for ten days or a fortnight, and unless these

horses are very lame, they go to exercise morning and evening, or do their duty, which ever I think best for them. The feet of many horses soon become relaxed and cool from this sort of treatment, and as the growth of the horse is increased by the moisture, the heels and quarters expand, by which means many horses that have been very feeling and lame in their feet, have become sound.

When a horse has thus recovered, or perhaps a short time before he is quite sound, rather than have a horse's feet get dry too suddenly, I shorten the period of his standing in wet clay, allowing him to stand in it every other day ; and previous to his leaving the hospital stables, I only allow him to stand in it twice a week. During the intervals between these immersions, I order his feet to be rubbed round with the tar ointment, which is a very necessary application, to prevent the feet from cracking, to which they are subject after having been immersed in water. Some troop horses, whose feet have been slowly progressing into a diseased state, and which have not discovered any symptoms of lameness until they have become old, I have seldom succeeded with in getting them sound.

I do not pretend to know more in the cure of horses' feet than other Veterinary Surgeons. I have merely stated here what treatment I have adopted in the cure of the feet of troop horses, and by what means I have succeeded in bringing many of them again into a fit state for duty.

But the feet of race-horses cannot be kept cool and

relaxed by the means which I have described as having been applied for that purpose to the feet of troop horses. The former must not have their work stopped when in regular training. They can scarcely be allowed to miss a single gallop, which by the training groom may be considered necessary. They must also have their beds to lay and rest on by day as well as by night; and under these circumstances, clay and water could not be conveniently applied, nor do I approve of the patent boots for the reasons I have already given.

My own horses and those of other officers of the regiment, stand in the stables much in the same way as horses in training do,—that is, their bedding is kept under them day and night. Whenever any of those horses have been amiss in their feet, either from contraction or from the horn becoming dry, hard, or brittle, and some parts broken away, I have recommended to relax and promote the growth of such feet, the moisture being applied to them by means of a piece of common coarse sacking, long enough to go round the wall or crust of the foot, and soaked in water previous to its being tied on round the hoof with a piece of string. This application should be wetted every stable hour. This is generally my method of applying moisture to my own horses' feet. Pads made for the purpose are, of course, more convenient; they may be made of coarse canvass doubled to the breadth of the hoof, stuffed with a sufficient quantity of tow or any other material that may answer the purpose better, with pieces of broad coarse tape fixed at the ends of each

pad, and long enough to tie in front of the horse's foot. The soles of horses' feet may be kept soft and cool in a similar way, by taking a sufficient quantity of tow, to form pledgets large and thick enough to fill up the cavity at the bottom part of each fore-foot to such extent as to give a certain degree of pressure to the whole surface of the sole. The edges of those pledgets should be pressed round under the shoe with a picker, after which each pledget of tow is to be wetted with a sponge full of water, or the foot may be dipped into a bucket of cold water every stable hour.

The tow, from the weight of the horse while standing in the stable, takes the impression of the foot, and remains in it as long as the horse remains in the stable, whether standing or lying. But the tow as well as the pads are both to be removed, previous to the horses going out to exercise, and may be laid aside against the wall at the back of the stall until the horse comes in and has been dressed. The pad, if well made, will last a long time, and the same stopping of tow will answer very well for a week or ten days. This is a clean and convenient way of applying moisture to the fore feet of horses that are in regular work, and I believe is much practised at the college.

I have found it answer the purposes very well, and it appears to have all the advantages of clay and water in softening, cooling, and relaxing horses' feet. I think the method of stopping with tow is certainly to be preferred to the use of cow dung; for if this latter application is too frequently laid on over the frog, it

will occasionally bring on thrushes, whereas the wet tow may be used without fear of its producing such consequences. Indeed this latter can be more conveniently laid round the sole only—its application need not extend over the frog of the foot, unless when necessary.

When a horse is dressed and done up after sweating, it may perhaps be as well to moisten the pads and tow for his feet, in the same hot water in which his legs were fomented; at least, I expect this will be more satisfactory to the groom.

Although I have had horses go to walking exercise with their feet stopped with tow, and the stopping has remained in until they have returned to the stable; some horses which are wintering in loose houses, are apt to range about the loose house and exercise themselves by walking, trotting, or sometimes even cantering round. To prevent the tow from falling out of their feet, on such occasions, a couple of splints may be laid across each other under the shoes.

The same precautions may be taken with horses that are restless in dressing. I allude to such of them as may stamp, and strike-out with their fore-feet, and range about in the stall. To attend to all that I have here mentioned relative to the application of moisture to the feet of race-horses, will take but a very few minutes in a stable hour. When the boy who looks after a horse is too young to be entrusted with this charge, one of the senior boys or the head lad may do

it for him, after the horse is brushed over, his legs rubbed, and his bed set fair.

This is the sort of treatment I recommend to the notice of training grooms in the care of their horses' feet, and which should be attended to immediately on colts leaving their paddocks, or rather, as soon as they are broke and have been brought into the training stables to go into regular work. I think there cannot be too much attention paid to the feet of horses generally, and particularly race-horses, as many thousands are often depending on them; to say nothing of the expense of training and entrance money, both of which must be paid whether the horse run or not.

The strictest attention should be paid by grooms as well as by smiths, to the paring of horses' feet. Grooms should also make themselves thoroughly acquainted with this matter, so that they may be able to direct any awkward country smith, whom they may occasionally fall in with, how to shoe their horses when travelling; as there are many such smiths who are apt to make rather too free with the knife, while others of more experience are particularly careful.

A good shoeing smith, who has been properly taught and long practiced in the shoeing of different descriptions of feet, has made but bad use of his time if he cannot, on examining the horse's foot, immediately see from what parts it is necessary to remove horn, and what parts he should leave untouched by the knife. If he is a good judge, he will not remove the smallest portion of horn from a weak convex foot, or indeed,

from any foot that is weak or much broken. With the exception of any little detached parts, he should preserve the horn as much as he can, with a view to strengthen and support the foot to the utmost, by which means he obtains a safer and more secure hold in the foot for his nails. To give strength to the heels and quarters, the toes require to be kept short; but previously to removing horn from those parts, the smith should see what strength of horn he has there. Generally speaking, there is more horn at the toes of convex feet than there is at the toes of horses' feet which are much stronger; yet care should be taken, (more particularly if horses are to be kept in work,) not to remove the horn from those parts to an extreme, as this would occasion pressure on the nails.

In case it is necessary, the shoes may be nailed round the toes, or they may be secured by putting a clip here. This latter mode is to be preferred when a foot is not in a state to admit of nails being driven sufficiently far back at the quarters, for the purpose of keeping the shoe secure.

Horses that have convex feet, have the largest and most healthy frogs. It is only necessary to remove from them any detached or ragged parts, so as to prevent the gravel or dirt from accumulating there, and producing thrushes. The foot cleaned out, and the rasp run lightly round the crust to take the rough edges off and level the foot, is all which is necessary previous to the shoe being applied.

Race-horses' feet, generally speaking, are very strong.

It is therefore as necessary for training grooms to be quite as well acquainted with the paring or cleaning out of strong feet as weak ones. Men that are at all conversant with horses, or that have paid any attention to the shoeing of them, are fully aware, that if any part of the shoe when nailed on, should come in contact with the sole, lameness will eventually, if not immediately, be produced. It therefore becomes necessary to remove as much horn from the surface of a strong sole as will give it the concavity requisite to prevent the shoe from pressing on the sole, and producing lameness. It should also be made sufficiently concave to admit of a picker passing easily round under the shoe, when on; this can be done to strong feet with safety as well as with advantage, and leaving the sole at the same time of a sufficient substance, which a good smith takes care to ascertain. After having removed a certain portion of the sole, he applies pressure with his thumb, to discover the substance of horn he has left there. If from the quantity that has been removed, he finds the sole somewhat elastic, he should desist from further weakening it. The horn should be removed from the sole to a similar extent, from between the bars and the crust, when the long shoe is applied; but care must be taken that the former forms a junction with the latter at the heels. This will not only give increased strength to them, but it will also present a wide and firm basis for the heels of the shoes to rest upon. The bars are to be left prominent, if for no other reason than to prevent the

smith from removing any portion of horn from that part of the foot which is under them.

If the bars and the horn which is under them be removed, the substance of the foot in those parts will be much decreased, and the heels will then very soon contract if the horse is in an artificial state. The horn being removed from the surface of the sole of a strong foot as I have here advised, the next thing the smith has to do, is to make the wall or crust of the foot perfectly level, so as to produce an even surface to receive the shoe.

I am not prepared to state how shoes for race-horses are now made; but I very well remember, that those which were formerly in use were very light and narrow; and I conclude that the object in making them in that manner was merely to prevent the horses' feet from breaking. I am decidedly of opinion that such shoes are very improper for any horse, but more particularly for such race-horses as are obliged often to be kept in strong work. Light shoes must be nailed with four nails on each side of the shoe, and these nails must be driven further back towards the heels than is necessary with shoes of more substance and greater width. Unless light shoes are put on in this manner, they are apt to spring a little at the heels when a horse is going a rapid pace on a hard ground; and if this is not immediately attended to, they soon become loose and are thrown. This is not the only inconvenience; for, from these shoes being nailed so far back, the quarters and heels of the horses' feet become, as it were, fixed

by this rim of iron, or sort of shoe; and which is one very great cause of contraction, as those back parts of the wall or crust of the horse's foot, which are the most elastic parts of it, are prevented from expanding. Another disadvantage attending the use of long, light, narrow shoes is, that they are not of sufficient breadth and substance to prevent very great concussion from taking place in the fore-feet of such craving horses as are often obliged in summer to sweat long lengths over hard ground. I think one of the principal causes of such horses in training and in strong work becoming very groggy in their fore-feet, is their wearing shoes of very little more substance and cover than the plates they run in.

I have for several years past, been much in the practice of having short shoes put on the fore-feet of many of our troop horses, and those belonging to the officers. Such of them as have had strong upright feet that were more or less contracted, I have occasionally sent to exercise on soft ground, keeping their feet moist in the way already mentioned. Finding that they went on very well in short shoes for two or three months at a time, or until their feet have been sufficiently expanded, I was inclined to try how they would go when sent to their duty in such shoes. Having made the experiment, I found that the horses not only did their duty in the field, and on the road, but they also marched very well in those shoes on the hot roads in the height of summer, carrying the dragoon, with the whole of the regimental appointments

weighing, upon an average, from seventeen to twenty stone. These horses marched from fifteen to twenty-five miles per day, for a distance of two hundred miles. On examining the feet of those that wore these short shoes, I found they had very much expanded and that the heels and quarters were quite equal to the wear and tear of the roads ; and as there was no complaint made by the men, that their horses did not go equally well in short, as in long shoes, I was induced to try how long horses with strong feet could wear them without inconvenience, and I have had horses in the regiment wear them at head-quarters for upwards of a year.

Major Shirley purchased a horse, with his feet in a bad state, being very much contracted. They had also bad thrushes and corns. This horses' feet were cleaned out and the short shoes applied, the horse kept in regular work on the road and occasionally in the field. In three months, the corns and thrushes got well, and the feet became considerably expanded.

A charger in the regiment belonging to Captain Phillips, had bad contracted feet with diseased frogs and corns. The short shoes were worn by this mare about four months, in which time the feet became much expanded, and the frogs and corns got well. As the mare continued to go on with her duty, both in the field and on the road, and as there was no objection made by the owner of the mare to her wearing the shoes, she continued them for twelve months.

In making short shoes for such race-horses as may wear them, (which are those horses that have feet with

high, strong quarters and heels, with wide crust and good frogs, of which the soles are of course concave), the breadth, length and substance, must of course be regulated according to the weight of the horse and the size of his foot. In order in some measure to guide the smith as to the breadth and substance of such a shoe for a race-horse with a small foot, I will say, that its weight should be from eight to nine ounces, and should be made about two inches shorter than a common long shoe to be applied to such a foot. The surface of the shoe next the foot may be perfectly flat; but the surface next the ground should be gradually bevelled off all round, from the fullering or nailing part to the inner edge, to give the horse a firmer hold on the ground with his feet.

In the fourth plate, figure 5, is represented a foot, with a short stamped shoe and a strong clip at the toe. The heels of the shoe approach to within about two inches of the heels of the foot, to which it is secured by eight countersunk nails. This shoe I recommend to the notice of training grooms when they are doing a little work with their horses in the spring, as, for example, when they are forwarding them in their first preparation; for, on such occasions, horses in training now and then throw their shoes, and more particularly in their sweats; but as this shoe is nailed rather close to the ends of its heels, this sort of thing is not very likely to happen.

Figure 6 is a foot with a fullered short shoe, which has a strong clip at the toe, put on with six nails. I

recommend this shoe for horses that are in gentle work in winter and spring, or for country plate horses that are kept in large loose boxes during winter. I am of opinion, that the feet of those horses last mentioned would be much improved if short shoes were to supersede not only the use of long ones, but also the injurious practice of altogether dispensing with shoes, which was formerly a common custom on those occasions. Nor will the short shoes get into the feet, if the horse is shod, or his shoes removed, at proper intervals; and provided also, that the centre of the web of the shoe at the heels, is placed immediately over the wall or crust of the foot, so that the latter may be in the centre of the heels of the former when nailed on the foot. The two first nail holes, punched in the short shoes, one on each side, may be at a distance of an inch from the centre of the clip. The other nail holes may be placed at a similar distance; but the spaces between the nails must depend on the size of the foot; only observing, that if the horses are in strong work, the last two nail holes should be punched within an inch of the ends of the heels of the shoe; but when race-horses are in gentle work, or out of work, and standing in loose boxes in winter, the shoes will not require being nailed further back than is necessary to keep them in place. At such times, three nails on each side, I think sufficient to keep them secure. No nails having been driven into the quarters and heels, they will be sound and strong, and will have expanded; so that, should it be thought necessary in the

height of summer when the ground is hard, to put long shoes on horses in strong work, their feet will be found to be in a good state to have such shoes applied. But I must again advise, that the long shoes should be made of more substance and cover than they usually were. If made of the same substance and cover as those applied to the feet of race-horses turned out of training, and used as hacks on the road, I am of opinion, that their feet would suffer less from concussion, when in training on hard ground. Aged horses in common use, as coach and post horses, or hacks on the road, that have their feet at all out of order, can no more work in light neat shoes, than an old man with tender feet could travel over hard roads, in a thin pair of pumps.

In the fourth plate, figure 4, is represented a foot the front part of which is pared to receive the short shoe; the heels, quarters, and frog, are left sufficiently high, so as to be level with the short shoe when put on. In race-horses that have strong, upright feet, they soon get sufficiently high for the purpose, unless their heels are much pared every time they are shod. When the quarters and heels are as above described, the smith, in paring the foot to receive the short shoe, is to do it in the same manner as he would, were he going to apply the long shoe; only observing, that instead of levelling the foot as for the long shoe, he is to leave the ends of the heels of the foot, and the quarters to the ends of the heels of the short shoe, a little, or as much higher as may be necessary to bring the heels of the shoe

and this part of the quarters with the heels of the foot and the frog perfectly level with each other; so that each of the above parts (that is, the heels, the frog, and heels of the shoe,) may equally bear the weight when the horse has his foot in contact with the ground, just as if the long shoe had been applied instead of the short one.

If these shoes are put on as I have here advised, there will not be more weight on the tendons and ligaments of the leg, than when the long shoe is used; at least, I have always found this to be the case. Nor will there be, by any means, so much weight on them, as when a country plate horse has three-quarter plates on, (to run perhaps two or three four-mile heats,) which he almost invariably wears when he is running; that is, if his feet are out of order, for then no other plate can be applied with safety; and when running long lengths in such plates, if the ground is hard, a horse's feet are much exposed, and great concussion takes place in them.

Training grooms who have had much to do with country running are fully aware of this, from their having observed the very painful and heated state of a horse's feet at night, after running the above-mentioned lengths in short plates; and they are also aware, that such a horse's feet get well again after a few day's rest, if properly attended to and kept moist.

This, I think, goes to prove, that to pay attention to horses' feet by endeavouring to keep them as nearly in a state of nature as possible, is quite as necessary as to

adopt the best method of shoeing. But it is to be observed, that short shoes can only be applied to such race-horses' feet as have already been described. They must not on any account be applied to horses' feet that are thin and weak, or that have low heels; neither can they be worn by horses that are become at all feeling in their feet, being what is commonly called, a little groggy, be their feet of whatever strength they may. By way of experiment, I have put short shoes on horses' feet thus diseased, and they could scarcely move in them; but on taking off the short shoes and putting on the long ones of more than common substance and cover, the same horses have afterwards gone comparatively sound; and this arises from the substance and cover of the shoe diminishing in a great degree the concussion produced by the horse's weight when in action and going over hard ground.

If short shoes of substance and cover, are found to answer the purpose of preventing concussion and contraction taking place in strong feet, there can be no objection to their use in other respects; for it is to be observed, that race-horses when in training, are not going a rapid pace down very steep or slippery hills, or on sideland ground, as horses often are that are hunting; and when race-horses are pulled up in concluding either their gallops or sweats, it is almost at all times on level ground, or if otherwise, it is on ground ascending instead of descending, so that there is no danger to be apprehended from their slipping in pulling up if their heels are sound and strong. However, as short

shoes were not worn by race-horses at the time I was living in the stables, I cannot speak from experience how they may answer, farther than from the practice I have already noticed in applying them to the feet of troop horses. Nor do I wish to press this method of shoeing on the notice of trainers, but if they choose to try the short shoes for the purposes, and at the seasons of the year mentioned, I am not aware of any inconvenience that can result from such a trial. On the contrary, if the horses' feet in other respects receive the attention and treatment I have advised, I am of opinion they will be found in a more sound and perfect state than if they wore long shoes.

Previous to concluding this chapter, it may be advisable to offer a few cautionary remarks to owners of horses; as a thorough knowledge of those animals is not so easily obtained as people who keep them are led to imagine. In submitting these observations to the consideration of gentlemen, I am led to hope I may not give offence, which I assure them it is far from my intention of doing. Men of education soon learn to discourse familiarly on most subjects, and none acquire knowledge so readily as sportsmen on the truf. I have had frequent opportunities of hearing gentlemen talk with each other on the condition of their horses, and the best method of shoeing them, &c., as if they really understood all that was necessary to be known on such subjects.

I have already instanced mistakes which have been made with regard to the condition of horses, by those

who have kept them. I have also known the owners of horses oblige a good smith, (much against his will) to attend to the neatness and cleaning out or paring of their horses' feet, and often insisting on light shoes with fine fullering being applied, without ever giving the least attention to the sort of feet the horses may happen to have had.

Theoretical knowledge is certainly very useful, I allow, in teaching or explaining the principles of the different arts and sciences; and that neatness and uniformity in the erecting of a building are much to be admired, I will also admit; but such rules can seldom be brought into practice, either in getting horses into condition, or in shoeing them. That many gentlemen, from practice, know very well how to ride across a country, and that they may be tolerable judges of the shape or make of a horse, and that they may occasionally see some imperfections in them, I will readily concede; but to discover all the imperfections that may at times be present in some horses, and which are often the cause of unsoundness, requires the attention and scrutinizing eye of men, who possess exclusive advantages in that respect, the result of a long practical experience.

The plating of race-horses is often almost the last thing done to them previously to their coming to post —that is, when they are plated on the course. But as this chapter has already run to an extreme length, and as plating may be considered distinct from shoeing, I shall devote a separate chapter to it.

CHAPTER XXIII.

ON PLATING RACE-HORSES.

RACE-HORSES should always be plated before they are brought to post, where it can be done with safety. All men conversant with the turf are fully aware of the very great importance of weight. They consider, and very justly too, that every ounce is of consequence, when horses are supposed to be equally matched, and more particularly when they have to come long lengths.

I shall make but few observations on the plating of such horses as are standing at home stables, as they are principally young ones, particularly at Newmarket, being mostly yearlings and two-year-olds. I have never known the former travel, at least when in training, and the latter but in few instances. If, when trained, they are found to be good ones, they are generally entered for stakes with horses of their own year, and run the usual lengths. It is pretty much the same with the three and four-year-olds as with the younger ones; for if those horses are in any repute, they are

kept in reserve to run for the great stakes at the principal meetings, and they are mostly standing in home stables, where, under the superintendance of training grooms, more than usual care is paid to their feet; and as they neither travel so much nor run so often as country plate horses, their feet (unless naturally defective,) are very strong, with plenty of horn. The shoeing smiths who live in a racing neighbourhood, are generally good hands at plating horses, being constantly in the habit of receiving instructions, and as constantly cautioned by training grooms to be careful in fitting the plates, preserving the feet and driving the nails. These advantages, together with their own experience, in plating the number of horses kept every year by the noblemen and gentlemen of turf celebrity in the different counties where racing is known to be so universally patronized, render them so expert, that with such feet as I have here described, they are seldom liable to accidents in plating horses. Yet it is not impossible but that an accident may sometimes happen in plating horses, even in these stables. It may therefore be advisable to plate such horses as may have good sound feet, and that are standing in stables close to the running ground, the evening prior to their running, after their coming in from exercise. On the morning that a horse is going to run, it is usual to walk him out on the heath and there let him take a short canter, merely to see if all is right, and if he is well on his feet and legs. If the horse is observed by the groom to go stiff or short, and if the groom is of opinion that

this is occasioned by anything wrong about either of the horse's feet, there will be time to remove the plates, and to give the nails less hold or a different direction. The foot may afterwards be relaxed in a bucket of water, so that the horse may be brought to post, and run without much danger of being lamed, if the ground be not too hard.

Horses that may be heavily engaged, as some of those which may be entered for either of the great stakes, the Derby, or the Oaks, at Epsom, or that valuable and interesting stake, the St. Leger, at Doncaster, often stand high in public opinion. Under these circumstances, to make all safe, and to satisfy the public, it is usual, and indeed very proper, to bring good shoeing and plating smiths to attend them, from the different neighbourhoods where large training establishments are kept. This arrangement cannot well extend to country plate horses that are travelling during the summer from one meeting to the other; and from the repeated necessity there is for removing the hoses and plates of such horses, their feet are frequently in a very broken and weak state on their return to the home stables in autumn.

The foregoing are remarks which were made by me at a time when I knew but little more about the feet of horses than picking them out and washing them. I have seen some few instances of race-horses' feet being in a bad state, since I have been a Veterinary Surgeon in the Army, and that, too, early in the summer. I am of opinion, from the observations I made in those

instances, that the cause of the diseased state of the feet might be traced to a want of knowledge on the part of both the groom and smith, and not to any neglect of either.

I have had the ordering and arranging of the plating of a few horses in my time, some of which have not had the very best feet; and as I have on such occasions paid more than common attention to the subject, I shall enter upon it, as far as I think necessary, to explain to grooms, head lads, and country shoeing smiths, the most advantageous methods to be adopted in the plating of such feet as from peculiar circumstances may require much care and attention.

There are many shoeing smiths in the country who shoe horses very well; but there are many of them who have but little experience in plating horses, and what is worse, as it frequently happens, they have the most difficult feet to put plates upon.

But I am of opinion, if grooms will take the trouble (and I think they will) of paying proper attention to the following remarks on this subject, they may be enabled to give the country smiths such precautionary instructions and directions as they see necessary; and they may often suggest to them a method of making the plates, and putting them on in difficult cases, not only securely, but without laming their horses; for although, as I have just observed, country smiths may shoe tolerably well, yet if they have not had some experience in putting on plates, or if proper directions be not given them, they may

unintentionally fall into error, and which, with race-horses, I believe most racing men are aware must be guarded against as much as possible.

Whenever horses are to be plated, the groom may go himself, or after the stable hour is concluded, he may send of the boys, to the smith over-night, with orders for him to attend at the stables in the morning, by the time the horses are returned from exercise, that he may take measure of their feet, and make the plates for such of them as may be going to run on the following day.

The smith, when measuring the horses' feet, commonly makes use of two straws, for the purpose of taking the length with one and the breadth with the other, and if he does not understand figures, he will, of course, do it more correctly this way than by a rule. If there is any difference to be made between the size of the shoe and that of the plate, it is that the latter should be rather less than the former in its circumference round the foot, so that the plate may, to a certain extent, rest in the bed which may have been formed by the shoe. The plate should not, by any means, project beyond the edge of the hoof; for, should a restless, irritable horse have to saddle on the course, (which is the case where there is no rubbing house) he may, from ranging about, tread a plate off, unless the precaution is taken of setting the plate level with, or within the edge of the hoof. An accident of this sort not only keeps other horses waiting, but it may create a dispute as to whether the

horses that are ready to start at the time fixed should wait or not.

Now, as the crust or wall of horses' feet which may have been often plated, is more or less brôken, the groom should direct the smith as he is measuring the feet, to make his observations on the most sound parts of the crust, and as the nail holes of plates are placed further apart than those of shoes, it sometimes gives the smith the advantage of driving his nails into the more sound parts of the foot. The groom, on such occasions, cannot too strongly point out the necessity of punching the nail holes in such parts of the plate as will immediately correspond with the sound part of the horn, provided those parts are so situated as to admit of the nails being driven into them, and the plate rendered secure without driving the nails too far back from the end of the heels of the plates; or if, to preserve the hoof, the smith can safely drive a nail occasionally into an old hole, it may be done.

From what has been already said, it will appear pretty evident, that the making of plates must vary according to circumstances. As plates are narrow, they cannot well come in contact with the sole, so as to occasion pressure there; they may therefore be made flat on both sides. Whether the horses' plates should be made to come home to the heels of his fore-feet, (and which I shall call full plates) or whether they are to be made short, (which I shall call the three-quarter plates) will depend on circumstances. I shall first describe how the former should be made. The smith is to observe in the making and fitting of this plate,

that the heels of it are to be brought but just up or home to the horse's heels when on, and not to project the least beyond them; and to prevent any hold being taken by the toes of the hind feet, the heels of the fore plates should be bevelled off.

If plates are properly forged, they require little or no rasping, which only renders them weak. Plates for moderate sized horses need scarcely ever exceed in breadth three-and-a-half eighths of an inch. Middle sized, light horses, running short races, and not heats, (more particularly if the ground is soft) may not require them even of that breadth and substance. But for large horses, whose feet are in proportion to their size, the plate should vary accordingly. The fullering or grove, which is made round the centre of the plate, cannot well be too coarse, provided it does not too much weaken the plate. The fullering must be made in the centre, for if it is made to approach too near the outer edge, it will weaken the plate, in which case the smith cannot well get sufficient hold with his nails to keep the plate secure.

The depth of the fullering must be regulated, and the nail holes punched in it, according to the substance of the plate and the size of the nails which are likely to be used in putting it on; that is to say, that by a smart blow or two from the hammer after the nails are driven, the heads of them should be buried and on a level with the surface of the plates.

The situation in which each nail hole should be placed, will depend in a great measure on the size of the plates. In good feet, the nail holes should begin

where the toe may be said to end. There should be four nails on each side; the first and second nail holes from the toe may be punched an inch or more apart. Be this as it may, the smith must observe to regulate the distance here between these two holes so as to admit of his punching the third within the distance of about an inch and a half of the end of the heel of the plate; and in the centre of the space there left, between the third nail and the end of the plate, the last hole of the four should be punched; otherwise the plates, particularly of the fore-feet, will spring at the heels, from the concussion produced by severe running on hard ground.

Horses that are kept in reserve for particular races, are consequently but seldom running. Their shoes and plates not being often removed, their feet (unless they have been neglected) are sound and strong, with good heels and plenty of horn to nail to. For such horses, the full plate is to be preferred, as it gives the horse a more firm and level tread with his fore-feet than the three-quarter plate can possibly do.

The three-quarter plate is made in most respects like the full plate, except in its length. Being shorter, it seldom requires for its security more than three nails on each side; and as in the first-mentioned plate, where the toe ends, the first nail hole should be punched; the divisions being so arranged by the smith, as to the distance from each other, as to admit of the last hole being punched within half an inch of the end of the plate.

A three-quarter plate is more generally used for

country plate horses, their feet having got out of order from the repeated running and travelling, together with the necessity there is of frequently removing their shoes and plates. The plate must not be made to approach nearer the end of the horse's heels than there is horn sufficiently sound for it to rest upon; and it should also be sufficiently strong at those parts to give the two last nails a firm hold, that the plate may not spring at the heels when the horse is running.

Some horses' feet will allow of a plate of this sort coming within half an inch of the end of the heels; and others may not allow of its coming within an inch or more. It is the soundness and substance of the horn at the horse's heels and quarters which must regulate the length of the plates.

Country plate horses, if they are good ones and properly selected, are generally of pretty strong constitutions; and when they are sent on a circuit, or what is commonly called, a roving commission, it is with a view to pick up what plates they can; and as the season advances, unless great care is taken of them, their feet, from the causes already mentioned, get into a very indifferent state; so much so, that it is often difficult for even a good smith to put their plates on with safety, and at the same time, securely.

The hind plates may be made as the fore ones, and may be brought well home to the heels, as the heels of the hind feet are mostly in a good state. If a horse is a long striding one, and a free runner, he is likely to be rather a difficult one at his turns; and although

it may be bad judgment to run such a horse over a small round course, yet, if such should happen, it may be advisable for the safety of both the rider and the horse, to give the latter some hold of the ground, by turning up the heels of his hind plates. But with a horse of the middle size, that has a short but quick stride, gives his race kindly, and is handy at his turns, there may be no occasion to turn up the plates. However, an experienced training groom, before his horse is plated, generally puts himself in possession of the sort of course he is going to run over, by previously cantering his hack over it, and he should afterwards regulate the plating of his horse according to circumstances.

The plates being made according to the directions given, the groom must then decide whether they shall be put on in the stable or on the course. This will depend on the distance the former is from the latter, and the sort of feet the horse may have.

Many of our country courses have not a stable near them. On such occasions, the horses are often obliged to stand at stables in the adjoining town, which is sometimes at a very considerable distance, perhaps two or three miles. This is much too long a length for horses to walk in their plates; indeed under almost any circumstances, it is too far, unless it be on turf. If there is no other way to the running ground except on the hot surface of a hard turnpike road, I should strongly recommend the groom to have his horse plated

on the course, more particularly if the three-quarter plates are to be used.

I shall now make some few remarks on taking the shoes off from race-horses' feet, preparatory to the putting on of the plates. When the wall or crust of a horse's feet is strong, and there is plenty of horn to nail to, and the soles are of a good substance, the shoes may be taken off in the usual manner, without much risk of injuring the foot. The smith, in taking them off, first knocks up the clinches with his buffer; then with one side of his pincers placed between the shoe and the sole of the foot, and with the other side of them placed on the outside and upper edge of the shoe, he gives sufficient strength in forcing them downwards and inwards, to draw the nails, and the shoe comes off in the pincers. But with horses that have thin weak feet, this method of taking off the shoes must never be had recourse to. I have observed smiths, who were not much in the habit of taking shoes off from horses' feet use more strength than judgment. On such occasions, if they would give themselves time for a moment to examine the sort of feet from which they may be going to remove shoes, they would find that to use less of the former, and more of the latter, would not only be considerably safer for the horses, but much more advantageous to themselves; for by doing the thing properly, they would preserve the foot, and have more horn to nail to.

In removing shoes from bad feet, the smith should first knock up the clinches with one end of the buffer,

and with the other he should start the nails, and then draw them out with the pincers one by one; the shoe would them immediately fall off. This is the way in which the groom should insist on the horse's shoes being taken off, so that the horn may be preserved as much as possible.

In putting on a race-horse's plate, it will be observed that, if the horse's shoes should not have been removed from his feet for the space of three weeks, the hoof will, during that period, have grown, and with the action and weight of the horse, the shoe will, in some degree, have imbedded itself into the foot. After the shoe is taken off, nothing should be done to the foot if it can be avoided, as (if the plate is made as I direct) there will be a sort of seat or bed round the crust in which the plate will lay, and this will in some measure support and assist in keeping it in its place. However, it may sometimes be necessary, after the shoe is off, to run the rasp very lightly round the lower edge of the crust. If the groom and smith see that it is requisite to remove a very small portion of horn, so as to level the foot that the plate may have an even surface to lay on, it must be done; but this is all that can be wanting. The heels of weak feet should be kept strong, that is to say, nothing should unnecessarily be removed from them.

Little need be said with regard to the nails which are used in putting on plates. The sizes which are in general use, are from No. 4 to No. 6, depending much on the size of the foot, and weight of the plates. They

should be tough, and of the best quality; and as it is not necessary to drive them very high up in good feet, the shorter they are, in reason, the better, as the clinches will not be so coarse as a long nail; and this is an object worth attending to, more particularly with such horses as have thin crusts. The smith, having carefully sized, straightened, and judiciously pointed his nails, according to the sort of feet he is going to drive them into, next commences putting on the plates. If he takes but common care, there is not much difficulty or danger to be apprehended in the driving the nails into such feet as are strong, sound, and good. But without the greatest care and attention possible on the part of a good smith, difficulty will be encountered, and danger is to be apprehended in driving nails into weak, broken, and unsound feet.

A smith, on putting plates on such feet, must be very careful, and pitch his nails a little in, or out, so as to give the proper direction to each nail in passing it safely either low down or high up through such parts of the wall or crust of the foot. As he approaches towards the quarters and heels, it will be necessary for him to reduce the size of the nails, not only to prevent those parts from being much broken, but to give to each nail here, of whatever size it may be, a safe and secure hold; or when it is necessary to get a hold higher up in the foot, and when a common shoeing nail is used for the purpose, the smith should take care in beating out the nail, to draw it rather fine at the

point, that in driving it he may not break the upper part of the hoof more than can be avoided.

The nails being driven, the smith gives a smart blow or two with his hammer on the head of each nail, so as to drive it home and bring the head upon a level with the surface of the plates; he then nips off the points with his pincers, and knocks down the clinches. But a smith who may not have been accustomed to plate horses is very likely (unless he is cautioned by the groom) to do in this case as he would in putting on shoes in the common way, which is, before he knocks down the clinches, to make a nick with the edge of his rasp under each clinch, so as to let the clinches into the hoof. This should never be done in plating horses, as it only tends to weaken those parts in the hoof, and more particularly if the crust or wall of the foot should be thin. There is another error into which a smith may fall who is unaccustomed to plate horses, if he is not cautioned. The error to which I allude, is that of his improperly using his rasp in what he calls finishing off the foot, by rasping over almost the whole surface, and thereby weakening the crust. This is not the only disadvantage likely to result from this method, for as the clinches of the nails used for putting on plates are small, the most trifling rub with a rasp may cut through them, or perhaps so much weaken them as to render the plates insecure. If there is any occasion to use the rasp after the plate is put on, it can be only to rub down the head of a common

shoeing nail which may project, when the fullering is not sufficiently coarse to let in the head of it.

I will, for example, suppose an instance at a country meeting at which it is the custom to run heats. When a horse has run the first heat he is pulled up and rode to the scale for the jockey to weigh; after which he is led out from the crowd to some convenient place to be rubbed over, and to be got ready for the second heat. This being done, and the horse's clothes put on, the boy who looks after him, takes up his feet, and if rnecessay, he picks them out. But there is one thing which the boy knows to be very necessary, and that is to see that his horse's plates are not only on, but that nothing has happened to them; that is to say, he must see that the plate is neither broken nor sprung at the heel. Such things will sometimes occur when the ground is hard, and the plates light, or when they are not nailed close to the end of the heels. If a plate is thrown or broken, a fresh one must be put on. If a plate has sprung at the heel, it must be put right, which may be sometimes done without taking it off, provided the horse has very strong sound feet. When a plate can be put right on the feet without removing it, or without any risk of laming the horse, the method of doing it is this,—the smith should place his pincers, shut or nearly so, between the plate and the foot, and by giving a gentle blow or two with his hammer on the end or heel of the latter, he brings it straight again; after which, as the foot is strong, he may, in order to prevent the same thing from recurring, take fresh hold

higher up, or by making use of a larger sized nail in the same hole, secure the plate. But when a plate may have sprung at the heel of a weak foot, the groom must never allow the smith to put the plate right on the foot, or the odds are that the horse will be lamed. The plate must be taken off and brought in place on any hard level surface that will answer the purpose. To prevent anything of this sort happening to a horse's plates, the greatest care and attention should be paid by the groom to the making of them, as also to the putting them on; for when it happens that a horse's plates get at all wrong, it sometimes occasions great trouble and delay, if the horse be high-couraged or impetuous, and more particularly, should he have been called upon rather severely, or perhaps punished a little in running the first heat. From these causes, together with the noise and bustle of the crowd, the horse becomes so irritable and anxious, that it is at times very difficult, where there may not be a stable or rubbing house for the horse to go into, for the boy who looks after him (even with the assistance of the groom,—aye, and I will give him his hack into the bargain) to pacify such a horse and get him to stand quiet on the course for the smith to put the plate aright on his foot; or he may perhaps be obliged to take it off for this purpose. Such occurrences shew how necessary it is for the smith to be in attendance on the race-ground, during the day the horse has to run. Indeed, unless he is on the spot with his tools, spare plates, and plenty of nails properly sorted and

well pointed, the horse cannot (if a plate gets wrong) start for the second or perhaps the third heat, the consequences of which are too self-evident to need explanation.

From incessant travelling and running a horse's feet soon get out of order, unless great care be taken. When they are in that state, the horse must run in three-quarter plates, if he has to run long lengths, or heats; and if the ground be hard, his feet will suffer much from concussion, and become very hot and painful.

If the horse, after running, has a long way to walk to his stable, perhaps on a hard road, his plates should be carefully taken off on the course, and his shoes should afterwards be as carefully put on. But when a horse walks from the course to his stable in his plates, I have known some grooms, after having the plates taken off, let the horse stand without shoes. Of this I do not approve. A horse with his feet in the state I have described, cannot well bear the weight of his body on them without shoes; and until the heat and pain in his feet subside, he is mostly seen lying down. I should recommend grooms not to let a horse, under the above circumstances, stand without shoes. It is better by far to put them lightly on, driving the nails into the old holes, and turning down the clinches as easy as possible. A horse can then bear his weight, and will stand or move about in his stall or box with much more ease to himself, than when he has no shoes on.

Remedies for the relief of his feet can be much better applied, but not bran poultices, as used to be the custom. These are not good on such occasions, as the weight of the horse when standing spreads them abroad, and the heat of the feet soon absorbs the moisture of the poultice; and they are inconvenient for horses either to stand or lie down in. It was the custom, and a very excellent one, on a horse's arriving at his stable after running, to foment his legs and feet. I should afterwards put wet pads round the crust of the fore-feet, and stop the bottoms with wet tow, before the stables are shut up at night. The pads and tow should be fresh wetted every stable hour.

If the horse be a craving one, and is likely to lay by for ten or twelve days, I should recommend a dose of physic to keep him light and to assist in getting his feet cool. As soon as the inflammation and soreness had left his feet, the wet pads should be removed, and the tar ointment occasionally applied round the crust of the feet, always keeping the bottoms constantly stopped with wet tow. This is the treatment I should apply to the feet of horses that may have got out of order from the causes mentioned. If a horse's feet are weak and his heels low, and he has to run on hard ground, it would be advisable to let him run in his shoes.

A horse that has strong feet may be plated in the stable, and walk from thence to the course, and after running, he may return to the stables in his plates, and continue wearing them until he has performed his

engagements for the meeting, which seldom exceeds three days. The groom will not want to do any work with the horse, as his first day's race will keep the length in him. If he requires any thing in the way of exercise, it can only be walking, or at farthest, a short hill gallop, both of which he may accomplish in his plates, without injury to his feet.

CHAPTER XXIV.

ON BREAKING RACING-COLTS.

Noblemen and gentlemen who breed racing stock with a view of either running or selling the produce, generally keep an experienced stud groom to manage an establishment of this description, whose method and manner of handling the young ones, even from the time they are sucklings, is such as will bring them quite gentle and familiar, in comparison with other common stock, which are allowed to range in large fields in a wilder state. The former is certainly an advantage; for when colts and fillies were a year and a half old, it was the custom with some men who had conveniency of ground for the purpose, and who bred principally for sale, to break and try their young ones, particularly early, so as to ascertain the power of speed each colt or filly possessed; and according to the result of these trials, they regulated the price of each. On such occasions, young ones were generally taken

up from their paddocks about the latter end of August; and if, in a month or five weeks, they could be got to ride quiet, and follow each other up a short gallop, they were considered sufficiently broke to be tried for sale; after which, they were returned again to their paddocks, to remain there until sold.

But, noblemen and gentlemen who run the produce of their own stud, and who are not particularly anxious about selling, do not have their colts and fillies taken up before the latter end of September, or early in October, either as yearlings or two-year-olds, just as such breeders may best approve; and if such young ones have been properly treated, they are, when brought into the stables, but little alarmed at the people and the things about them.

Those who have their establishments in the neighbourhood of Newmarket, and who have also their private training grooms and stables in that town, send their young ones there to be broke and tried. When the groom's time is not fully occupied with the number of horses he has in training, he may, with the assistance of the head lad and some of his best riding boys, most likely arrange the breaking of the colts himself; otherwise they are sent to the colt-breaker's residing in the neighbourhood. But whether they are broke at home, or sent to the colt-breaker's for that purpose, is not very material. If the people who undertake the management of them are in all respects well acquainted with what they undertake to do, the thing is done precisely the same in one training stable as in another.

The main object is to give them plenty of time until they are perfectly broke.

Other gentlemen who have large breeding establishments, and who keep in their employ proper persons to make the necessary arrangements in every department of it, as a stud groom, a colt-breaker, a training-groom, and good riding boys, with other requisites, such as suitable ground near the stables to exercise on, or a park sufficiently large to train horses in, with a two or four mile course in it. Such gentlemen as have on their estates the above-mentioned conveniences, like, as well for the sake of secrecy as for the pleasure and amusement it affords them, to have their horses managed at home. Other breeders who have not these conveniences on their premises, are obliged to send the produce of their stock to their own private stables, or to public stables, to be broke, tried, and trained; and these stables may be, and indeed often are, at a very great distance. Under these circumstances, I would advise breeders to have their colts handled or broke in a temporary manner at home; although they may not have an opportunity of doing this effectually, it may be done to a certain extent by the stud groom, and men on the premises. There will be no necessity for backing them; it will be found sufficient to put the tackle on them, and have them led out for a week or ten days, on the roads or downs, and now and then lounged. This sort of treatment will bring them tolerably steady, which is a point worth attending to, prior to their commencing a journey, as there is afterwards

less difficulty and danger in travelling them. Unless this is done, they are very troublesome in passing carts and carriages on the road; and in struggling when frightened, they may get loose and injure themselves. Whenever they travel, having been only temporarily broke, they should be led in cavesons with boots on their fore legs. If they have a long way to travel, they should also be provided with boots for their hind legs.

To shew the necessity of handling or temporarily breaking young ones before they are permitted to travel, I will relate an occurrence which happened to some yearlings that were travelling from the stables in Gloucestershire, belonging to Mr. Cook, to some others in his occupation, adjacent to Maidenhead Thicket. It was the spring of the year, that Mr. Cook had ordered these race-horses, accompanied by the head lad and two boys (I was one of them), to be sent to the Maidenhead stables; and to travel with us, were four unbroken racing yearlings, led in halters by four countrymen, hired for the purpose, the whole being put under the care of the head lad, who was strictly charged to be careful of them. The first two days of our journey, the colts, as might be expected, were troublesome, and often alarmed by the different objects they met on the road; but as none of them got loose, the head lad gave himself very little concern about them, and we were often a long way in front with our horses, and no doubt we were some way forward when the circumstance happened which I am about to

notice. On arriving at about the middle of Marlbro' Downs, on the third day, whether the men had become careless and off their guard, or whether the colts, from seeing so open a country, had made greater efforts than usual to get loose, I cannot say; but loose they all got, and wild and unbroke as they were, they traversed the open plain, gambolling about for some hours, very much to the annoyance of the lad, who at length became seriously alarmed for the safety of this part of his charge. He was at a loss for some time to know what steps he should take to regain them. At last, however, he made up his mind that we should strip the horses, and ride after the colts. We then proceeded a little further to some men who were at work mending the road, and in their care we left our horses' clothes, muzzles, &c. We then put on our saddles, and after giving directions to the men who had been leading the colts to follow us, we went after them. After some hours riding, they allowed us to get close up to them, and one by one, we got them again, to the no small gratification of the lad into whose care they had been given. Now had these colts, before they left the home stables, been but partially broke, and had been led in cavesons, nothing of the sort could well have happened.

I remember, shortly after these colts arrived at their destination, the groom, by way of giving them exercise, and bringing them handy, used to make the boys lead them every day, between stable hours, round a paddock. I was at this time very small, and the colt I was leading soon began his gambols, and kicked me

very severely on the leg, and would no doubt have got away from me, had not the groom, who was standing by, looking on, come to my assistance. I recollect, he gave me a good shaking and some abuse, and I should, no doubt, have felt his ash-plant smartly over my shoulders, (for he was rather familiar with his boys in this way,) but, luckily for me, he did not happen to have it with him. I was sent back to the stables with orders to send a bigger boy to lead the colt, which is what the groom ought to have done in the first instance, as when a colt once gets the better of a boy, he is very apt to try it again.

Let us, for the sake of example, and merely to shew how racing colts are broke, consider a number of yearlings to be taken up from the paddocks of noblemen or gentlemen who, having a large racing establishment, are breeding on an extensive scale, and train and run their own produce. Instead of sending them to be broke at the stables of a colt breaker, we will consider that a man well qualified for breaking racing colts is kept on the above establishment.

The month of October, or thereabouts, is generally the time that colts come up, which are to be effectually broke; and it is about this time that many of the horses of a certain age are put out of training, and are removed from their stables to loose houses to winter. In these stables, or any others on the premises answering the purpose, the colts and fillies may be put; only observe to class them properly, that is, the colts in one stable and the fillies in another.

Having thus arranged them, the next thing to be done in the stables, is to teach them to stand, tied up in the stalls. The collars and reins used for the purpose, should be very firm and good; and care should be taken, that the top part of the head of the collar is fixed close to the back part of the colt's ears. Some of these may be a little unruly at first, and hang back a few times, but if they find they cannot get loose after repeated attempts, they become reconciled.

They should now have their feet cleaned out and properly shod. In first accustoming colts to be dressed, they should be looked after by the big boys, until they come to stand quiet to be wisped and brushed over, and the other necessary operations, such as combing out their manes and tails, and picking out and washing their feet. They should be brought gradually to the habit of being properly dressed, with as little annoyance as possible. They should always be accustomed to wear rollers in the stables, with a girth round the chest, attached on each side to the lower end of the pad of the roller by a strap. This will prevent the roller from getting into the flanks of those that get light in their work. The girth being thus used, they will be less shy of a breast cloth when it is first put on. Some of them may be restless on their being first brought into the stables, and may be much inclined to paw and tumble the bedding about. Those which indicate a disposition of this sort, should have the fetters buckled on round the pastern joints, and continue to wear them until they are brought to stand perfectly quiet.

The breaking of yearlings or two-year olds, was formerly a business much hurried, and was thought by some grooms not to be of much importance; but it should never be considered in this light, for, however promising in appearance, or however well-bred a colt may be,—whatever properties he may possess, the sort of racer he will become must greatly depend on the breaking; as, from bad management, he may be totally spoiled.

Horses, having very retentive memories, are seldom made completely to forget whatever unruly tricks or habits they acquire from being improperly handled in the breaking. Therefore, whether they are broke at home, or sent out for the purpose, it is highly necessary that the colt breaker to whom they are entrusted should be a man of experience, who thoroughly understands what he is going about. Besides being a good horseman, he should be a man of excellent temper, never allowing his passion to get the better of his discretion when persevering with a colt. A man who has been brought up from a boy in racing stables is to be preferred, as he will know better how to forward them for what they are intended, and will do more with them in considerably less time than colt breakers who are accustomed only to break colts for general purposes.

I will now treat on the subject of breaking. The first step, is putting on the cavesons; but before the colts are led out, long boots should be put on their fore legs; for when they first go out, they pull and

hang about, and will sometimes plunge a little, and in so doing, they will now and then give themselves blows on their legs, and thereby bruise and inflame them. They had better wear long boots while they are lounging. When the colts are in from exercise, the groom or colt breaker may observe what part of the boots may or may not be marked from blows, and can accordingly change them for short ones. There may sometimes be even goers which may not appear to require boots, but it is rather a dangerous experiment to attempt working colts without first putting on either short or long boots.

The number of colts that should be got ready to go out at the same time at different periods during the day, must depend upon the number of men and lads the colt breaker has to assist him. There should at first be two to each colt; and each man or lad who is to have the principal charge in the handling of a colt, should be selected from among those who have had the most experience in this way.

On their first being taken out, a steady lad should walk in the rear, in case any colt should hang back, to urge him quietly on by flourishing his whip or ash plant, but not to strike him. Colts with their cavesons and boots on, and thus attended, may be led out to the downs, or into a large paddock. At either place they may be taught to be led quietly about. As soon as they become tractable in this way, attempts may be made to lounge them, by first walking them in a small circle to the right or to the left; and when

they know how to go round at this pace, they may be quietly urged on into a trot, gradually increasing the size of the circle by giving them more length of rein. In three or four days, or when they go boldly and freely at full length of the rein each way in the lounge for fifteen or twenty minutes, having by degrees been brought to this pace and time of lounging, the mouthing bits, rollers, and cruppers, may be put on them.

It may here be necessary for me to give a short description how the two latter should be made. The roller may have a hook in the centre of the pad, but certainly a ring attached on the lower part of each side of the pad, for the purpose of buckling on the side reins. In the front or bottom part of the pad, straps should be attached, as also to that part of the crupper, which, when on, is immediately over the colt's loins. These straps should hang down each side of the crupper as low as the colt's houghs. On the near side where the crupper divides to admit the colt's tail being inserted into it, there should be a buckle to facilitate the putting of it on. When colts are out at exercise in this sort of tackle, these straps, from their action, together with the wind blowing them about, are almost invariably striking against their legs, and lapping under their bellies; and although they are a little annoyed by the tackle when first put on, they soon become accustomed to feel the straps about them, which indeed is what is intended they should do. By these means they are taught not to be alarmed when the wind blows a

rider's coat against their sides, or when the wind is strongly blowing the clothes against them; or when race-horses are travelling, it sometimes happens, from the neglectful manner in which the boys put on the different things about their horses, and by their not making them sufficiently secure, that a breast-cloth may get loose and hang down about a horse, or a muzzle improperly put on, may hang down too low about him; and from either of these circumstances, a horse which has not been broke in such tackle as I have just described, may become alarmed, and will make great efforts to get loose.

Colts should be attended in this way, until they are sufficiently forward in their breaking to be entrusted entirely to the care of one person, under the superintendence of the colt breaker. For the first two or three days of their having the mouthing bits put on them, the bits should be allowed to play loosely in their mouths; and in cruppering them, they should be handled boldly and without fear. The hair should be well cleared out from between the dock and the crupper; nor should the latter be drawn up too tight, at first. The roller should also be tightened very gradually; for if colts are suddenly girthed up tight, most of them will set up their backs and plunge, and if they contract the habit of doing this, it sometimes becomes a difficult task to break them of it.

A horse which may have acquired this habit from being badly managed in his breaking, requires great

care and attention in saddling whenever he is going to run, or he will most likely throw his jockey. The groom is obliged to begin saddling such a horse much earlier than any other; and when the saddle is put on, the girth should be strained up but just tight enough to keep it in situation. The horse may then be walked about for a short time. It is at intervals in this way that the girths should be tightened, and when the saddle is made secure, and the surcingle put on, the boy who looks after the horse should be put up to walk him about, until the horses he may be going to start with, are all saddled; and to prevent an accident, or false start, the boy may give him a canter before the jockey is put up to go to the post with him. But it is much against a horse that is flighty, or that is easily alarmed, to be so long saddling, and to be thus annoyed before he comes to post. The greatest care is therefore necessary to be observed on first girthing colts. It should be done very gradually, so that they may not acquire a habit of plunging.

When colts have had this tackle on two or three days, and have been lounged, and walked on the downs three or four hours each day, the next step is gradually to bear them up, which should be done by attaching the side reins to the bits and rollers, but they should not be strained too tight at first. They should be shortened each day a hole at a time. From this treatment their mouths will become sensible to the pressure of the bit, and they will then get their heads in of themselves.

As some colts may take a little less time in breaking than others, the colt breaker should now and then stop such of them as he may see have moist mouths, and that are getting pretty forward. Placing himself in front of any such colt, and taking hold of each side of the check of the bit, he may, by a gentle pressure, feel the state of the colt's mouth; and if he finds it tolerably sensible to the pressure of the bit, he may, by applying pressure to it at short intervals, get him to rein back a little. Let the colt stand, and make much of him; this will give him a notion of stopping or reining back by pressure being applied to the bit when he is rode. But it must be done in a very gentle way, and he should then be suffered to walk forward again. As each colt progressively improves, he should be handled in this way.

Having now got thus far forward in their breaking, and having left off noticing the straps hanging about them, it may not be amiss now and then to lead such of them as are intended for country running, on such public roads as are level and good, and which are not too much crowded with vehicles, merely with a view to accustom them to the different objects they are likely to meet when travelling from one meeting to another.

As soon as they are sufficiently reconciled to the different objects on a road, so as to walk boldly on, without noticing what they meet, the men walking by their side, instead of walking on before and leading them, they may desist from frequenting the roads. The colt breaker should now direct the men as they are walking

by the side of the colts, in going to and returning from exercise, to put their arms gently over the roller, and each man, with his ash-plant, may lightly, but quietly, keep tapping his colt on his fore and hind quarters, to accustom him to the use of either the ash-plant or the whip; and with a craving colt, a little more strength may now and then be used, with a view of giving a colt of this description a notion of moving on and more readily exerting himself from the application of the whip.

When colts have been sufficiently practised to this sort of treatment, they may next be brought to wear the saddle. Each saddle should have three girths—two in front, and a back girth; this last one not only assists in keeping the saddle steady, but by wearing it, colts become less shy, when on first going into training, they have a body sweater or sheet lapped round them. There may be also a crupper to each saddle, similar to the one attached to the rollers; and the straps, before and behind, as with the rollers, may be buckled on to the saddles.

For the first few times of putting on the saddle, a little caution is necessary. The colt breaker should take the colt's head, and should at the same time caress him. There should be a lad on each side; the one on the off side, before he puts the saddle on, should take care to place the girths and straps over the seat of it; and after the crupper is on, he should hand the girths quietly to the lad on the near side, who should not pull

them up too tight at first. The stirrups may be allowed to hang down, and when the girths are drawn up sufficiently tight, the surcingle may be put on.

For a few days, the colts go on at their usual exercise of lounging and walking about the downs for three or four hours a day, or for such further time as may be thought necessary to steady those that may be rather more flighty and unruly than the rest. But the time of their being at exercise should in some measure be regulated by the state of their condition; for it is to be observed, that the flesh comes off young ones rather rapidly. It is therefore necessary, under these circumstances to attend particularly to their constitutions.

About this time of his breaking, the colt should be accustomed to be led by the colt-breaker, he himself riding on his hack. This is very necessary before a colt is backed, as it accustoms him to see the man above him. Having been used to be thus led, he should be handled and fondled by the people about, in every possible way, previous to his being backed; and the day on which he is to be mounted, he may be kept a little longer working in the lounge, or may be led about an hour or two longer than usual. A small paddock, in which he may at times have been accustomed to be exercised, will be as convenient a place as any other for this sort of thing; or he may be taken to the ground on which he has usually been lounged. It should be a calm, still day; there should be nothing to alarm him until he has become quite familiar with his rider.

For the first few times of mounting a colt, or rather until he stands quiet, there should be three men present. The colt-breaker should place himself in front of the colt, taking hold of each side of the bit, and a man on the off side should have hold of the stirrup-leather. While the man on the near side (who of course should be a good horseman) is making attempts to mount, the one on the off side should give the necessary weight or strength in bearing down on the stirrup-leather, and yield his weight or strength as occasion may require, to keep the saddle from moving out of its place, and thereby annoying the colt at the time the man on the near side is making attempts to mount and dismount, which he should do by first putting his foot into the stirrup, and then taking it out again; but of course taking great care that his foot does not touch the colt's side. This he may, perhaps, more easily accomplish, by lengthening his stirrup-leathers a few holes. He may repeat this once or twice, if he finds the colt does not draw himself in, nor bend his body from him, nor yet shift his position. Having got his foot into the stirrup, he may (taking care that his toe does not come in contact with the colt's side) raise himself gradually up from the ground, until he is perfectly upright, and bear, for a few moments, his whole weight on the stirrup. The colt-breaker should, just at this period, endeavour, by kindness, to engage the colt's attention, while the man who is mounting may put his leg gently over, and quietly seat himself in the saddle; and for

the little time he is sitting here, he should make much of the colt. He should then take up the reins, but at first he should handle them cautiously. The colt-breaker should now lead the colt, and the man on his back should sit perfectly still, and unless he is obliged for his own safety, he should not immediately press his knees or calves of his legs too strongly against the colt's sides. If he feels himself setting up his back, and thinks that he is inclined to make a bound or two, the rider must, of course, sit firm and well down in the saddle, and endeavour to keep the colt's head up. The colt-breaker should check the caveson-rein, and also assist in keeping up the colt's head. They should both keep working quietly at his head until he desists. He should then be led a few times each way round the lounge; if he appears tolerably quiet, he may be pulled up and made much of, and then led about on the down with the man on him, and the colt breaker riding by the side of him on his back.

As soon as the colt is perfectly reconciled to his rider, he may be rode home. The man should take great notice of him before he dismounts, and also after he has dismounted, previously to putting him in the stable.

In the breaking of a number of colts, it will be found that some few of them will require more time and perseverance than others. Before mounting such colts, it may be as well to work them a little longer than the others; and at the time of mounting a colt of this description, it may not be amiss to let a lad stand by, with

some corn in a sieve, and as he is directed, give him a little to eat. Feeding a colt in this way, when he is hungry or fatigued, will very much prevent his noticing what is going on with regard to mounting and dismounting; that is, if he is quietly and properly handled, and also, at the same time, made much of. When mounted, the rider should remain upon such a colt, until he leads about perfectly quiet. The rider should occasionally pull him up and caress him, and let him have a mouthful of corn now and then. Previously to dismounting him, he should be made much of by the rider, as also after he is dismounted, before he is put into the stable.

This sort of colt should be mounted and dismounted with the greatest care, so as not to alarm him, and he should also every day be led, until he is perfectly reconciled to his rider; and on his first being allowed to be rode without leading, he should be put in the midst of a string of colts, with which he is being broke.

If the colt-breaker has an idea that the colt will plunge much on being first mounted, it would be well to mount such a colt in a paved street, where, not having good foot hold, he will be rather afraid to plunge. Horses that are restive seldom set up with their riders in a paved town; they are generally cunning enough not to begin till they have pretty good foot hold, either on the turnpike road, or on the turf.

Giving time and taking pains with colts in this way according to their different tempers, will give them confidence, and they soon stand quiet of themselves

to be mounted and dismounted, and they will then most of them go quietly by the guidance of their riders anywhere they choose to direct them. Their cavesons may now be left off, and in place of them, plain or head-stall martingals or running reins, as occasion may require, should be substituted, to enable their riders to get their heads in place.

The men and lads who may have been the most accustomed to riding young ones, should continue to ride them under the direction of the colt-breaker, from whom they should receive instructions as to the manner in which each colt should be rode, so as to endeavour to bring them all to ride well and with good mouths. To accomplish this, requires a light hand in the application of the pressure with the bit on the colt's mouth. It should be done by the rider's giving and taking by gentle pulls, and thereby keeping the colt's mouth alive to the pressure of the bit. The rider should occasionally gently press the calves of his legs and heels to the colt's sides to urge him on and up to the bit, pulling him up and letting him stand for a few moments, and then reining him back a little, and again moving him forward, teaching him to turn and go in any direction that may be required of him, treating him at the same time with kindness. Some of the colts may not be so forward as others in regard to their mouths. These should be put to stand for an hour every day on the bit after they come in from exercise, at the same time taking care to fasten them up to the pillar reins, and to bear them up to the saddle, or what

is much to be preferred, to a spring cross, until their mouths become more perfect.

There may be some few which may have one side of their mouths more forward than the other, and this arises from the same attention not having been paid in handling that side as the other. This is a matter of importance, and the colt-breaker should be very attentive to it. He should ride all the colts in turn himself, and if he finds a colt's mouth uneven,—that is, one side of the mouth more sensible to the pressure of the bit than the other, he should either continue to ride such colt himself, or have him rode immediately under his direction by a man of experience, who should feel and handle that side of the mouth more frequently than the other; and as soon as this side becomes equally sensible with the other, he should, now and then, by lightly handling the bit, bring the colt's head round towards his own knee; and he should be frequently turned on this side. The other side of the mouth must not, however, in the mean time be neglected.

All race-horses, from the manner in which they are held by the boys when at exercise, pull more or less in their work; but this is of little consequence, provided they pull fair; that is, if their mouths are even, and equally sensible on both sides to the pressure of the bit, otherwise they are very difficult to guide. As soon as their heads can be got sufficiently up and in place, and their mouths are perfectly sensible on both sides to the pressure of the mouthing bit, a second sort

of snaffle may be used, and several should every day be walked out together, in line, on the downs, at a distance of two or three lengths from each other. They should be exercised in this way, and gradually brought accustomed to everything they may have to be put to, or that may be required of them either in training or in running.

When got ready in the morning, with their saddles and bridles on, and turned round in the stalls, they should be accustomed to be mounted there, and rode out of the stables into the yard, and there walked about until their saddles are settled to their backs, or rather until they have done setting up their backs, as some of them will most likely do after being girthed up tight, which by this time they ought to bear without much resistance. The next thing to which they should be trained, is the noise and bustle of a crowd, and the place, of all others, to bring colts to face a crowd in running, is certainly near the rails of a course at a racing meeting. These opportunities, except at Newmarket, are not to be met with often enough at country courses, so as to give colts the confidence which it is necessary they should have in running home by the rails. Therefore colt breakers, who may be breaking racing colts in different parts of the country, should frequent the neighbouring markets with such as may not be intended to be sent to Newmarket.

The colt breaker, in first going to those places, should ride a hack in front of the colts; but they are not immediately to be taken into the body of the

crowd; they should be suffered to stand at first and look on. They are to be brought by degrees into the most crowded parts, observing, at the same time, to avoid any risk. They may be a little alarmed at first, but with good riding boys up, and kind and gentle treatment, they soon acquire confidence, even in places of this sort; and it is absolutely necessary to take them into such situations, for unless they will come freely up the rails of a course and boldly face the crowd in running, they can be but of little use as race-horses. In riding them on the high roads to a market, some of them may be alarmed at the different objects they meet. Whenever this occurs, they are by no means to be resolutely forced up to them. It is, I admit, by no means uncommon, to see men of all descriptions forcing their horses close up to the object which has alarmed them, and some who allow their passions to overcome their cooler judgment, are apt to punish their horses very severely on such occasions. I confess, that when I was a lad, and have at times been riding at exercise by myself, I have often been guilty of this fault when my horse has started. To say nothing of the cruelty of such treatment, it unquestionably betrays a very defective judgment, for when horses are thus treated, they become alarmed from two causes—the object they see is the one cause, and the correction they dread from the rider is the other. When they are frightened, no matter where or at what object, they should be treated kindly and made much of, and they should be kept

wide in passing whatever they may have taken fright at. This sort of treatment, with a good horseman up, gives them confidence, and they soon come to pass boldly on, without noticing anything they meet.

In breaking saddle horses for common use, such as chargers, hacks, or troop horses, it may be very proper to bring them boldly to face all objects ; but in breaking racing colts, there is no such necessity, for when they are broke, and are on the road travelling as race-horses, they are almost invariably led, and horses when led, seldom become alarmed at objects they encounter on the road.

Colts, when brought sufficiently accustomed to the bustle and tumult of crowded places, so as not to be alarmed at any thing in or about them, may gradually omit frequenting those places. The long straps belonging to their saddles may be left off, and they should now be accustomed to wear their clothes at exercise as well as in the stable; not exactly with a view to keep them warm or to bring them light, but merely to prevent them from being alarmed in any way from their use.

It sometimes happens that a colt may have a little hereditary vice, or some few tricks, which may be traced to the same source, and it may be necessary when one of this description becomes unruly, to correct him. It is advisable that such a colt should have a good and patient, yet, at the same time, a determined horseman upon him ; for when once he has been obliged to correct a colt of this sort for any thing

wrong (although he is not to punish or abuse him brutally) yet he must never give up the contest. He must thoroughly defeat the colt; but this should be effected with as few blows as possible, and a great deal may be done by patiently persevering with him and tiring him out. When the rider has carried his point, he may then make much of his colt.

The colts which are troublesome in this particular, are mostly the craving ones; and when such colts are put in training, they should, until their tempers are well known, always have good riding boys upon them. Such craving colts as have good and patient riders on them may, before their breaking is completed, be rode in spurs; but they are to be accustomed to them very gradually. They should be punished as little as possible with the spurs, and even then not rashly. Spurs should be used in such a manner as to make the colt understand that when they are applied to his sides, it is for the purpose of urging him on, or making him exert himself in getting forward at a faster pace. Light impetuous colts scarcely ever want them; yet they should all be trained to them before they are brought to post to try or to run; otherwise some colts, when stabbed sharply with spurs in severe running, may resent the application of them by kicking. Others, from such a circumstance, may shut up and go out. From either of these occurrences, a trial may be undecided or a race lost; and as I have just observed, this would then be the result of the

colt's not being gradually and properly trained to the use of the spurs.

As by this time we may fairly presume that their mouths are sufficiently sensible to the pressure of the last mentioned description of bit, and that their heads, when they are rode, are in proper place, plain snaffles or pelhams, or any sort of bridle, as occasion may require, may be put on them, and they may now be taken every day on the downs to exercise. Colts, breaking at Newmarket, should often be walked about on the flat among the different courses, and at times they should be made to leave each other and walk quietly away to different parts of the downs to exercise by themselves. It is highly necessary to accustom them thus early to leave each other, with a view more easily to preserve the tempers of the light, flighty, or delicate horses or mares, as in training it is at times necessary to change their system.

When they are leaving the downs, they should be walked home, following each other in line, up the Cambridge hill and along by the side of the rails, and when they have gone one hundred yards past the weighing stand at the end of the B. C. it may be as well to pull them up and walk them back again to the weighing stand, and let them remain there a few minutes. At other times, they may be brought home across the flat, passing the weighing stand at the turn of the lands; and at the distance of one hundred yards from it, they may be pulled up and walked back again to the stand. The riders may there dismount, and

make much of them for a short time. They may then mount them and walk them quietly by the side of the rails home to their stables.

During the meetings which are so frequent at Newmarket, all opportunities should be taken by the colt-breaker when the rails are open, to bring his colts home up between them by the crowd, passing the winning-post to where the horses usually pull up. The colts should be pulled up here, and walked back again to the weighing stand, and treated as before mentioned. They should afterwards be kept walking about among the crowd until the races are over; and this should be done every day during the meeting. The meetings being over, they may occasionally be walked out to Warren Heath, and here for a few days let them walk the different gallops; after which, the colt breaker may teach them to follow each other in a canter for about half a mile up either of the gallops. When the colt breaker intends taking the colts out for a short gallop, he should be on a hack in front, so as to rate them off properly. I do not mean by rating them properly, that there is any great occasion to attend much to the pace they may choose to go off at. They may go from a walk into a trot, and from a trot into a canter, or they may go from a walk into a canter; this is of very little importance at present. But it may be necessary to caution the boys to keep fast hold of each colt's head, that is to say, to keep their heads up and in good place; and with any of them that are inclined to pull rather more determinedly than the rest, the reins

should be knotted at a well-proportioned length, so as to give the boy a good hold of his colt's head. Although these precautions may be necessary with some few of them, yet these few are not to be pulled at rashly, for this would not only make them pull more determinedly, but would induce them to go high and clamber in their work, which is a loss of time. When they are off, let them quietly measure their own stride, and as close to the ground as they like. To hold those that pull more resolutely than others, the boys should be directed, in pulling at them, to give and take, and thereby keep their mouths alive. In this manner they should be ordered to hold them in their exercise. It becomes necessary thus to direct such boys as may not be in the habit of riding young ones, and as they may be walking either way at the bottom of the Warren Heath near the gorse, each colt being at a proper distance from the one before him, the colt breaker may give the lads direction to urge them on after his hack, by pressing their legs and heels against the sides of those that may require this excitement; and he himself should, as he is getting towards the bottom of the gallop, rate his hack a little faster, so as to endeavour to get them all to come off in a canter as nearly as he can together. Never mind whether they take the right or the left leg first; but previous to their commencing the gallop, the colt breaker should speak to the boys, and caution each to endeavour all he can to catch with the motion of his body the stride of his

colt as he is settling into a canter. Just at this time, the boys should be particularly still on them, and by no means pull rashly at them. Each colt having been pulled up at the end of this short gallop, they should be nearly in a line with each other. But where there are a number together, there may be one or two that pull more determinedly than the rest, and may pass those that are pulled up for a few lengths, before a boy can get a steady pull on such colt to stop him. To obviate this, it is advisable the next time they go out, to put up a more experienced rider on such colt. The whole of them being pulled up, they walk quietly about until they become cool and collected. They may then go to the troughs and take their water. They should here be made much of, particularly the light ones, as some of them may be alarmed from this little exertion, and will naturally look and stare about when at the troughs, and not like to take their water. Such of them as may do this, should be watered in the stable as soon as they enter it.

Most yearlings, being thoroughly well broke, and afterwards being allowed plenty of time to be at their exercise under the direction of an experienced training groom, until they are properly taught, will be sufficiently well trained to be tried for the lengths they have to come in their trials.

Having now touched upon all the introductory matter connected with my subject, I take leave of the reader, proposing to pursue, in the second volume, the

system of training different race-horses more in detail; in which will be fully explained the particular mode of treatment to be adopted in feeding, watering, and working, according to the age, constitution, and temper of the horse.

END OF VOL. I.

LONDON:
BLATCH AND LAMPERT, PRINTERS, GROVE PLACE, BROMPTON.

A TREATISE

ON THE

CARE, TREATMENT, AND TRAINING

OF

THE ENGLISH RACE HORSE.

A TREATISE

ON THE

CARE, TREATMENT, AND TRAINING

OF THE

ENGLISH RACE HORSE:

IN A

SERIES OF ROUGH NOTES.

BY

RICHARD DARVILL, V. S.

LATE OF THE 7TH HUSSARS.

IN TWO VOLUMES.

VOL. II.

SECOND EDITION.

LONDON:
PUBLISHED BY JAMES RIDGWAY, 169, PICCADILLY.
1840.

LONDON:
CLATCH AND LAMPERT, PRINTERS, GROVE PLACE, BROMPTON.

CONTENTS.

Introduction . . . . . *Page* 1

CHAPTER I.

On the Formation of the Race Horse . . 5

CHAPTER II.

Difference between the *thorough-bred Horse and the Cock-tail,* and the manner of running one against the other 24

CHAPTER III.

The necessary Knowledge to be acquired by Noblemen and Gentlemen of the Turf . . 31

CHAPTER IV.

Practical Observations with which the Reader should make himself thoroughly acquainted, previously to his commencing the Training of Horses to run 41

CHAPTER V.

First class of Horses and Mares returning from a Summer's running to the home stables; the arranging of those Horses and Mares in their boxes; and the treatment of them therein, during the three Winter months 60

CHAPTER VI.

The second class of Horses and Mares returning from a Summer's running to the home stables; the arranging of those Horses and Mares in separate stall stables; and the treatment of them in the stables; as also when they are out at exercise, during the three Winter months 83

CHAPTER VII.

Straw Beds for the Horses to exercise upon in frosty and snowy weather; stating under what circumstances it may occasionally be necessary to alter the Betting 116

CHAPTER VIII.

Instructions to be given by the Training Groom to half a dozen of his lightest and best riding boys, such as will have to receive his principal or secret orders, when they are put up to ride Horses of a particular description . . 128

CHAPTER IX.

Walking Exercise 139

CHAPTER X.

Galloping Exercise 144

CHAPTER XI.

Wind 164

CHAPTER XII.

Feeding Horses in Training on Corn . . 172

CHAPTER XIII.

Watering Horses while they are in Training 183

CHAPTER XIV.

Teaching Yearlings 193

CHAPTER XV.

Physicking Yearlings 216

CHAPTER XVI.

Training Yearlings 221

CHAPTER XVII.

Sweating the first class of Yearlings . . 230

CHAPTER XVIII.

Sweating the second and third class of Yearlings 235

CHAPTER XIX.

Trying of Yearlings 239

CHAPTER XX.

Running Yearlings 252

CHAPTER XXI.

Half a dozen craving Horses doing their first sweat early in March 267

CHAPTER XXII.

Sweating continued 298

CHAPTER XXIII.

Training of Two-year Olds 331

CHAPTER XXIV.

Trying of Two-year Olds 342

CHAPTER XXV.

The Training Groom's Reflections, after having tried a couple of Colts, both as Yearlings and as Two-year Olds, with the opinion he has formed of them as to how they may run 366

CHAPTER XXVI.

The Training Groom conversing privately with three of his best Riding Boys . . . 375

ERRATA.

Page 17, *line* 2, *for* they, *read* it.
for their, *read* the.
68, ... 2, *for* it, *read* him.
371, ... 9, *dele* except.

INTRODUCTION.

IF the training, running, and riding of race horses is not to be considered as a science, I think it may be fairly admitted, that it is a species of knowledge that can only be acquired by early experience, as by boys being put into training stables at twelve years of age, there to remain under a good practical training groom for at least ten or twelve years; and that it is only by the early impressions made on the minds of steady attentive boys, while they are going progressively on throughout the whole practical gradations, both in and out of the stables, that they, on arriving at a state of manhood, become equal to undertaking, in every department of it, the management of a racing establishment.

The first volume I published on the training of the English race horse may be said to be a

sort of ground-work or introduction, containing such preparatory and essential matter as I considered was necessary for my readers to become thoroughly acquainted with, previous to their entering upon the more minute and detailed parts of my subject, viz. the training horses to run. And, as far as I have proceeded in the subsequent chapters of this volume, I have endeavoured to lay down the rules for training race horses with as much perspicuity as possible.

In the training and running of them, the changing of circumstances must occasionally alter things, which of course will be the cause of exceptions to some of the rules I have made mention of. I could readily quote a variety of examples, but such quotations would be but of little use, beyond that of enlarging this volume—a sort of thing I wish to avoid. I have therefore thought it better to lay down generally the whole of the practical principles, as well as all the minute details. Thinking it necessary, I have been led to mention, in different chapters, the above general practical principles very frequently: it may be considered by some of my readers, that I have made too great a repetition in this respect; but those of them who know what little trifling

circumstances of neglect or mis-management will cause horses in training to change considerably for the worse, can well understand the necessity of my being thus particularly minute, so as clearly to elucidate, as far as I have gone on with the subject, all matters relative to the management of race horses while they are being trained.

In this volume, as in my first, I have in many parts expressed myself in the language (if it may be so termed) of the turf, not, I confess, because such language is the most refined or gentlemanly, but because I think it necessary for such noblemen and gentlemen as are engaged in turf matters readily to understand the conversation of the business people of their stables. This language, used by trainers, jockeys, and stable boys, when they are conversing with each other on business, is very expressive, that is to say, they understand each other in very few words; and where I have thought the terms used not generally intelligible, I have explained them. Indeed, that my meaning may not be misconstrued, I have endeavoured, as far as I have proceeded with the management of the condition of thorough-bred horses, to elucidate, as clearly as I possibly could, the manner of feeding, clothing, watering, exercising,

or working of all of them, agreeably to their ages and constitutions. How correctly I may have succeeded in arranging all these matters, I must leave to the consideration of those of my readers, who are known to be thorough good practical judges of how race horses should be treated when lying by in Winter, as well as how they should be treated while they are in training during Spring, Summer, and Autumn.

CHAPTER I.

ON THE FORMATION OF THE RACE HORSE.

Some authors have been of opinion that the just proportions of a horse may be ascertained by measurements, as that of multiplying and dividing of different parts; how far such measurements may be correct I cannot pretend to say. The method I shall take of describing the shape and make of the animal is from practical observation. Nor is it my intention to explain this matter by a greater variety of anatomical phrases than is absolutely necessary, as this would not perhaps be of much advantage to those of my readers whose principal object is to obtain a knowledge of the shape and make of horses that are intended for the purpose of racing; suffice it therefore to say, that the bones of the horse, like those of almost all other

animals, are of a white hard substance; they form and support the animal's frame, and protect in a great measure such of his organs as are important to life; they consist of many joints which are connected together by strong substances, called ligaments; and the whole is termed the skeleton, to which are attached the muscles and tendons; of which such as are under the will of the mind are the organs of motion.

I now commence to describe what I consider a well-formed race horse; and I will here remark, that it is this description of horse to which my observations are principally confined. With regard to the height of such a horse, I confess I am not partial to a tall, overgrown one. I prefer one moderately low, as *fifteen hands, or fifteen* and an *inch* at most, having length with good substance. If there is a standard of perfection for the height of a race horse, for general purposes, perhaps, his height may be fifteen hands two inches. Yet, I do not presume to dictate to my readers the precise height such a horse should be. A horse of either of the above-mentioned heights, but particularly of the first, if well formed and having good actions, will be very likely to become what may be termed a good fair runner, that is,

when his speed as a young one, in the running of short lengths, may in some degree have left him, he afterwards becomes stout, and will, most likely, be capable of running under high weights, as twelve stone for example, for any of his Majesty's plates, at long racing lengths, as from two to four miles; which weights and lengths are still in use at some of our country racing meetings. Tall horses are those from sixteen hands to sixteen and a half, or seventeen hands high, most of which are bred in the south.

Of course, such horses are bred so over-sized for no other purpose than to go into those great stakes run for at Newmarket, as the two thousand, the Riddlesworth, and other valuable stakes and matches, almost all of which are run for over straight courses of short lengths, as across the Flat at Newmarket; the very high state of condition into which such horses are brought to post at two and three years old, enables them to run for those valuable prizes at the above-named place; and from hence to Epsom, to run for the Derby and Oaks; again from Epsom to Ascot—which latter place has now become, from the very liberal patronage of his late Majesty, one of the most pleasing and respectable racing meetings we have

in England. At each of the above-mentioned meetings are those fine large long-striding horses found to be running; yet such horses, generally speaking, are seldom heard much of after running at the above-named places; they are therefore afterwards frequently turned to the stud.

Now, the low lengthy horse of substance, although, as I have already observed, that his speed as a young one, at two or three years old, may in some degree have left him, yet afterwards becomes stout and capable of running on under high weights, at long lengths, over any sort of course, whether hilly or otherwise, and being, as he mostly is, a round-goer, he is tolerably handy at his turns; and whenever such a horse is running in the company of long-striding horses on a small cock-pit or whip-top sort of course, he is almost certain to be a winner. Indeed, as far as my own observations have gone on this subject, I think there is no comparison to be made as to which of the two horses are of the most general utility. I certainly prefer the low lengthy horse of substance to the tall, oversized, leggy, long striding one.

I now come to describe, in as clear a manner as I am capable of, how I think a horse should be

formed to race. His head should be small and lean; his ears small and picked; his eyes brilliantly large; his forehead broad and flat—we mean by this he should have a deer-like sort of face; and from the lower part of the forehead, down to a certain portion of the nostrils, there should be, for a small space or length, a gradual curve or slight concavity; from this point downwards, the nose should be somewhat raised, and the nostrils should be so large, as, when the horse's respiration has, by exertion, been increased, the red membrane lining them should be easily seen during the time of his blowing hard. His muzzle, or mouth, should be proportionably small, and his lips thin, appearing, as it were, by their muscular contraction in covering the gums and teeth, as if they were closely attached to them. His throat should be clean and fine from the butt of the ear down to its centre, with a good wide space between the jaw bones, which latter should be thin. The throat and the hollow space between the jaws, if well formed, bears a strong resemblance, in point of shape, to those parts in a game cock; and a man who is a good judge, on looking at a horse and seeing him well formed about his throat, would be apt to say (using a very com-

mon expression), I like him in this part, for he has a cock's throttle.

The neck should be moderate in length. I prefer its being wide; I mean its width should be formed by the substance of muscles which pass along each side of the top part of it; from the withers to the head it may gradually rise a little in its centre, but by no means to any extreme, as I have a great aversion to a high-crested race horse. Indeed, I would prefer that his neck should be as I have described his face, rather of the ewe or deer-like shape, than that it should be loaded on top, which I will bye-and-bye explain. As to the lower part of the neck, I have no very particular remarks to make, further than that the trachea, or wind-pipe, should be spacious and loosely attached to the neck on its way to the lungs.

The withers may be moderately high, and, if the reader like, they may also be moderately thin; but, with respect to this latter point, I am not so very particular, provided the shoulders lay well back. From the withers the back commences. I confess, that appearances may be in favour of a

horse that has his back a little low or hollow. As a saddle horse, this may be all very well, but for a race horse, to have strength and liberty of stride, his back should be straight and *moderately* long, with the shoulders and loins runing well in at each end. The loins should have great breadth and muscular substance, so much so as for them to have the appearance of being raised as it were on their surface; and those muscles posterior to the loins should fill up level the top part of the quarters to the setting on of the tail, which latter should be set on pretty high up, and in its commencement should extend a little out from the quarters, hanging straight down to near the hocks. At Newmarket, in my time, such tails were called the "Bunbury switches." Bye-the-bye, there is a part under the tail, of which, as I am now so near it, and as it is a point of some importance, it may not be out of place to give a short description:—the anus, or fundament, should contract into a small compass, nor should there appear much, or, indeed, scarcely any space round its surrounding sides; for this is a part that should be small, close, and well formed in all descriptions of horses. The muscles by which it is surrounded should be contracted into small folds; nor can the main sphincter muscle act too powerfully in contract-

ing the anus, not only after the calls of nature are performed, but it should, I again repeat, at all times be invariably small, close, and tight, and rather projecting than otherwise, as it is one of the best or as good a constitutional point as any I am acquainted with belonging to the horse. If the fundament of a horse is as we have here described, and he has a great width between his hips, with a good broad surface of loins, as also a spacious chest, his having those four constitutional points will make up well for any apparent deficiency of the want of carcass; and, further, a horse thus formed, as regards the whole of the points mentioned, is at all times a good feeder, and with little trouble he is soon got ready to run, as he is invariably a good winded horse.

I now come to speak of the body, or what is by some people commonly called the "middle-piece" of the horse, and which is divided, internally, into two cavities, by a muscular substance called the "diaphragm." The anterior cavity, the chest, contains the lungs, the heart, &c. The posterior one, the abdomen, contains the stomach, intestines, liver, kidneys, &c. Now, with respect to the external form of the body, which contains and pro-

tects all those numerous organs so important to life, I shall first make my observations on the chest. To use a common phrase, and somewhat an expressive one, a horse in this part should be what is called "well over the heart," that is, he should be deep in his girth, round or well arched in his ribs. I mean by this, that a rider on the back of a race horse (as they are generally better about the chest than horses in common use) should feel he has some breadth or substance between his legs; and there should be a good swell of muscle before his knees, or the centre of the flaps of the saddle. The chest, thus spaciously formed, gives room for respiration, so that, in training, the horse's wind can be brought to the greatest perfection, which enables him to run on in long lengths.

The next part to be treated of is the abdomen, or belly, or what is usually called the carcass.—It may, perhaps, appear a little strange, but I have a great aversion to what is commonly called a good carcassed horse, nor am I particularly partial to a large sheathed one. I like both these parts to be in the medium, as I do, also, that of his being well ribbed up. It is true, that a horse's being well ribbed up denotes strength, and

a short close-made race horse is, in running, handy at his turns, and, as I have already noticed, he is generally a pretty good one under high weights over a small round cock-pit course; but this description of course and sort of running is not now so much practised as formerly, or rather, it is a sort of racing that does not exactly suit long-striding horses, as most of those are that run at Newmarket. Another thing is, that horses with large carcasses are mostly great gluttons; they put up flesh very rapidly, and are very difficult and troublesome to train, in consequence of their constitutions being too strong, or proportionably too much for their feet and legs.—Such horses not only seldom remain long in training, but they cannot be kept long in condition, without their becoming stale in themselves, as also on their legs, and those are my reasons for objecting to very large carcassed horses; yet, I do not wish horses to be what is termed "tucked up," or waspish in their carcasses. I like a horse's carcass to be in the medium, that is, it should be straight and handsome from behind the girths of his saddle; and what will make up sufficiently well, and give him sufficient strength of constitution, is the well formation of the parts already noticed, as the chest, the loins, and the fundament.

To return to the fore-extremities. The shoulders commence from a little below the withers; they should lie most particularly well back; should be deep, broad, and muscularly strong; yet those muscular parts should appear to the eye as being moderately so, that is, not unproportionably loaded: these muscles should be distinctly seen, there should be no appearance of fat, or, as it is technically termed, "adipose membrane." The shoulders cannot well be too oblique in their descent to the front of the chest; here, on each side, a joint is formed by the lower part of the scapula or shoulder-blade being united with the upper part of the humerus or arm-bone. Those joints, thus formed, are usually called the points of the shoulders; which points should appear straight or level. There should be no coarse, projecting, or heavy appearance about the points of the shoulders of such horses as are intended to race; nor indeed does this often occur, unless where it happens that the chest or counter of the horse is unproportionably wide. In taking a front view of the chest, it should appear moderate as to breadth; and if its prominency is at all to the extreme, it should be in consequence of the fullness or substance of those muscles covering the breast, which

muscles should be lengthy, and their divisions distinctly to be observed.

The fore-arm should be broad and long, and most particularly well furnished with muscles on its top parts, inside as well as out; I mean by this, that the muscles on the top and inside of the arm should here be so large as to leave but a moderate space between the fore-legs, immediately under the chest; and which muscles should appear, as those in front of the chest, distinctly divided. The posterior part of the top of the arm is called the "elbow:" this should appear (the horse in condition) somewhat on a level with the body; if it at all deviates from this appearance, I would prefer its standing in, to that of its standing unproportionably out. The knee-joint should be large, broad, and flat in front; generally speaking, the larger and broader all joints are in reason the better and stronger they are; and the longer, coarser, and rougher their projecting points or *processes* are, the greater and more secure will be the *lever* for the muscles or tendons to act upon, provided such projecting parts or joints (as the hocks and pasterns) do not amount to disease, as that of producing spavins and ringbones. The leg,

from the knee to the fetlock, cannot well be too short, neither can they well be too broad or too flat, nor their flexor tendon scarcely be too large, or appearing too distinctly divided, as it were, from the leg. The fetlock joint should also be large, and the pastern proportionably strong, but its length and obliquity should be in the medium.

The wall or crust of the feet should also be moderately oblique, with the heels open, and frogs sound; this, indeed, is generally the state of racing colts on first leaving their paddocks, if their feet have been paid proper attention to during the time they may have remained there. Yet the feet of such of them as have been some time in work, will occasionally get out of order; they grow upright and strong; the horn gets hard and brittle; and the heels more or less contracted—almost all of which defects are too often occasioned from the want of proper attention being paid to them at the time of shoeing, and of proper applications being applied to them in the stables. With regard to the structure of such horses' feet, and the diseases of them, as also the method of shoeing and plating them, a description will be found in the different chapters on those subjects in the first volume. Previous to concluding my

remarks on the fore-extremities, it may not be amiss to observe to the reader, that, supposing him to stand opposite to these parts of the horse, if the animal is formed in them as I have already described, the centre of the top part of the fore-arm, to be well placed, ought to be nearly or quite in a parallel line with the top or front part of the horse's withers; and again, from the top part of the fore-arm down to the foot, for the horse to stand firm and well, and have the power of using his fore legs well, he should stand perfectly straight on them; I mean by this, they are not to appear too much under him, or too much out or away from him. Suppose again, for example, a man standing in front of the horse, and here taking a view of the foot, the centre part of the wall or crust should be in or on a parallel line with that lower part or joint of the shoulder, commonly termed its point. A horse's feet, thus placed, will neither be too much out or too much in; but should his feet deviate from what I have here observed, by amounting to a fault, in turning too much out or too much in, I should prefer their being a little out, to that of the other extreme, of turning in, and being what is called "pigeon-toed."

I shall now proceed to describe the hind-quarters, or posterior extremities. As may be supposed, the well-formation of those parts is of the utmost importance to a race horse in his running; it is, therefore, necessary that they should be, in breadth, substance, and length, of very superior dimensions. The hips should have a great breadth between them; and if they are a little coarse or projecting, so much the better, provided such coarse projections are not in the extreme, or appear vulgar or unsightly. From the centre and posterior part of the loins to the top of the tail is called the "croup," and should be of great length, and, if it deviates from that of a straight line, it may be somewhat arched in the centre; the croup being thus formed gives great breadth to the top of the quarters, the length of which, from the croup down to the hock, cannot scarcely be of too great an extent, in order that there may be sufficient room here for the attachment of those broad, powerful, lengthy, and distinctly divided muscles on the outside of the quarters and thighs; and there should also be a similar portion of such muscles on the inside of the quarters and thighs; so that a man, who is a good judge, taking a posterior view, may observe how the horse is made. In

this position he should be, as it were, struck by the appearance of the great breadth and length of the back part of the quarters; and as he moves his head to the right or left, the centre and outside of the quarters and thighs, and the swell of the muscles, should appear beyond a level with the hips. The upper part of the muscles on the inside of the quarters should appear quite close to each other, so that no vacant space should be visible between them, as that of an appearance of the horse being (if I may thus express myself) chucked up in the fork. Such should be the lengthy and muscular quarters of a well-made race horse.

The stifle-joint should be in a direct line under the hip, and the length from this joint to that of the hock cannot reasonably be too long, and the farther out of the angular or oblique position of the thigh bone the better, so as to admit of the back part or projecting point of the hock appearing some distance out beyond the top of the hind quarters; those parts being thus formed, admit of a very considerable lever for the main tendon here to act upon the tendon Achilles, which, like the flexor one of the leg, can scarcely be too large or too distinctly seen in its com-

mencement from the lower part of the quarter to its insertion into the posterior or projecting point of the hock—the os calcis. The hock should be broad and wide, with a clean, lean appearance, and those soft parts, which are occasionally the seat of thorough-pins and bog spavins, in a sound well-formed hock, should appear more as cavities than as having the above-mentioned projections, and which are sometimes the cause of lameness. The hind leg, like the fore one, should be short, broad, flat, and straight, the trifling angle formed by the hock should, together with the moderate obliquity of the pastern, bring the extremity of the toe nearly under the stifle-joint.

I now conclude my remarks on the formation or shape and make of the race horse; how far my description of the animal may meet the approbation of my readers is another matter. I have merely given my opinion as far as my own practical observation authorizes me, in the pointing out of such parts of the horse as require to be of capacious dimensions, and such other parts as require to be of substance and length; the former giving strength to his constitution, and the latter

giving to the mechanism of his form force of power; both of which are very well known to be requisite to all race horses in the running of long lengths under high weights.

As it would be difficult, I expect, to find a race horse as I have here described he should be, allowances ought therefore to be made in the engaging of any race horse to run, according to the powers he may possess, and similar allowances should also be made in the purchasing of this or any other description of horse. The way I have always made such allowances, in the purchasing of horses, is, after having examined him thoroughly as to his constitutional and other points, if I find the good points he has overbalance his bad ones, and that he has action (particularly in his walk), and is sound, I buy him, unless indeed the price asked for him should be very considerably above his value.

Before I conclude this chapter, with due submission to my readers, I will here remark, that I think if breeders were to be more cautious in selecting the horses and the mares they intend to breed from, as to how they were bred, and the

running properties they may have possessed, and if they were to be more attentive as to how they cross their mares, they would arrive much nearer at perfection than they do with regard to their produce. But as this is a subject I intend treating on at some future period, nothing more need be said of it here.

CHAPTER II.

DIFFERENCE BETWEEN THE THOROUGH-BRED HORSE AND THE COCK-TAIL, AND THE MANNER OF RUNNING ONE AGAINST THE OTHER.

Why thorough-bred horses so far surpass half-bred ones, is not only from the circumstance of their being thorough-bred, but because they are bred to race; consequently greater pains are taken in selecting of the dams and sires of such superior shape and make, with known good running properties, and kindness of temper, as may be thought best to answer the purpose of insuring good stock to the breeder, as it is natural to conclude that the produce will, more or less, inherit, either from their dams or sires, some of the above-mentioned good qualities. If the frame or bones of the blood horse be proportionably well-formed, he will have a spacious capa-

city of chest, with width of loins, together with breadth, length, and substance of his muscular and tendonous system. If the symmetry of those parts all coincide with each other, they are all of them, in the blood horse, much more compact, or closer in their texture, than the half-bred one. This description of horse is, therefore, unincumbered with any superfluous matter. In short, the thorough-bred horse, being well-formed, has considerably more power in less compass than any other horse that may not have been so highly bred. The advantage this horse has over the coarse half-bred one is, that he is capable, when it may be required of him, to go longer lengths in his gallops and sweats. A good training groom can, therefore, bring his wind and muscular system to greater perfection, by which this sort of horse is enabled to run on longer racing lengths, with much more ease to himself than any other horse of larger dimensions, that may not, as I have before noticed, be quite so well bred. Those are the assigned reasons why a thorough-bred horse can almost always beat a half-bred one in a long race, provided that the former be made proper use of sufficiently early in the running, whatever the length of the course may be, as a mile or two, or more.

Now, by way of example, let us suppose two horses are engaged to run together in a match, one a middling, good, thorough-bred horse, the other a good cock-tail. The trainer of the well-bred horse, in due time, on the morning the race may take place, talks over the subject of his orders to his jockey, as to how he wishes his horse to be ridden in the race. The jockey, of course, being a good judge of pace, the trainer says to him, "You must mind, although our horse is a ready comer, he is no jade. Therefore, in making use of him, take care you don't over set him; yet, be sure you let him come off sufficiently early in the race;" the trainer, perhaps, naming at what part of the ground he thinks it will be best for the jockey to commence running with his horse. Again, he goes on to say, "Mind you come a pretty good telling-pace with our horse, so as to draw their horse well out to the top of his pace; having done so, don't leave him, but stay with him and keep him at the pace, until you are sure you have got him thoroughly well beat, before you come too near home. You may then finish the race, to satisfy the crowd." Unless such a race as we have described is run pretty much as we have advised, the cock-tail, or half-bred horse, may beat the thorough-bred one, if the latter is al-

lowed to run his own race; that is, if he is allowed to run within himself until he comes within a short distance of home, when he is very likely to be quite as fast, or, perhaps, a little faster than the thorough-bred one, and, if so, he would consequently win the match. Now, with regard to how the cock-tail, or half-bred horse is to be ridden, when running in company with a certain number of horses, at a country meeting, five or six perhaps, that may be entered in a stake or handy-cap, at five sovereigns each, with something added by the stewards, and that the whole of the horses, according to their breeding and running properties, are very fairly weighed—the trainer of the half-bred horse, in quietly talking to his jockey on the day of running for the stakes just men tioned, says to him, "The horse we have most to be afraid of in the race is such a one," naming the horse to the jockey, observing at the same time, that he will be rather a busy horse in the running;—"You must, therefore, not attempt to go to the head with our horse, for the shorter the race is for him the better he will like it; the only chance we have to win is to wait, and if we are not beat before we come within the distance, we are, I know, faster than the majority of them for this length; and we may, perhaps, be faster

than the whole of them for it. But, if there should be too much running made for our horse, and he should be beat for pace before he comes within his own rally, take a pull, and decline the race; do not attempt running for a place. In short, if we cannot be first pretty cleverly, it is most likely we cannot be second; and, if we could, it is a bad place, as it only exposes one's horse; and, as the entrance money, in this instance, is scarcely worth saving, we will not abuse or punish our horse to save it." These are much such orders as should be given by trainers to their jockeys, when they are about to ride moderate runners or thorough-bred horses, or pretty good half-bred ones; as such a description of horses do sometimes meet, and, to make sport, they are engaged to run together, in a match, for a plate or stakes, at some one country meeting. But we shall shortly have to describe the very nice, and most advantageous manner for jockeys to ride such horses as may be heavily engaged, or such of the young ones as the two or three years olds, that may have to come out to run for those valuable stakes at Newmarket, Epsom, and Doncaster, on which the betting makes it so well worth while to take the necessary pains to bring a horse out to run in his very best form.

It may not be out of place here to give the definition of a racing cock-tail. This term means, as applied to the horse, that the animal is not clean or thorough-bred, that is, he has some little stain in his pedigree, when traced so far back as the great-grandam or sire, or, perhaps, the great-great-grandam or sire; that is, one or the other of those, certainly not both, had some little flaw in its pedigree, but of so trifling a nature, that, if the cock-tail has good action, and is upon the whole well formed, more particularly over his chest, his wind, which is of the most material consequence, can be brought to the greatest perfection, so that the difference between him and the thorough-bred horse scarcely at times amounts to a distinction, as the former in running will occasionally beat the latter. Indeed, the main object of attending to the breeding of this description of horse is principally to qualify him to enter and run with other half-bred horses, and which he is certainly entitled to do, unless the drawing up of the articles for a hunter's plate or stakes should be so worded, as to shut such a horse out of the race. And, although, a cock-tail horse, in the common acceptation of the word, is not thorough-bred, yet he is so near to being so, as to be able to beat any casually

half-bred horse; which latter is generally understood to be a horse tolerably well; or, indeed, he may perhaps be very near thorough-bred. But then, this horse is bred so, more by chance than by any premeditated design of the breeder to breed such a horse for any other purpose than that of making him a hunter; and if the owner finds that the horse he has bred has pretty good speed, he may perhaps enter him to run for a hunter's stakes, in the neighbourhood in which such a horse may have been hunted, and he is thereby qualified to start in a race with other horses that are much on a par with himself. But, to allow a good cock-tail horse to be entered into such a race as this, would be bad judgment, unless he was heavily weighted; for he is, in every respect, so very closely connected with that of the thorough-bred race horse, that he would most likely, not only beat nearly all the half-bred horses he may be running with, but he may occasionally beat some very fair thorough-bred ones, with which he may have to run.

CHAPTER III.

THE NECESSARY KNOWLEDGE TO BE ACQUIRED BY NOBLEMEN AND GENTLEMEN OF THE TURF.

The nobleman or gentleman who keeps a large establishment of race horses is of course to be considered as the master of them; and if he intend to be paid handsomely the expenses incurred by his horses, he must be industrious, and make himself acquainted with all the practical circumstances belonging thereunto. The first of these circumstances is, he should be a good judge of the formation and action of a race horse, and, in the selection of those for his own stable, he should not lose sight of what is termed fashionable or running blood. Secondly, he should make himself acquainted with all the laws, rules, and regulations of the racing calendar. Unless he understands this book perfectly, and procures for himself a thorough knowledge of the running

of the different horses recorded in it; and particularly the length of the courses they run over, and the weights they carried; as well also as any adjudged cases or items, that may be annually or occasionally changed; he will most likely not enter his horses into their different engagements with that degree of advantageous accuracy he ought. Thirdly, he should turn his attention to that of being on good terms with the people of his stable, as the trainer, the jockey, the head lad, and the best riding boys, of whose sobriety he should be well assured, and that they are faithfully awake to his interest. Fourthly, he is to endeavour, as far as it is in his power, to ascertain how his horses are going on as to their bodily health while in the stables, and how sound they may be on their feet and legs when out of them; as well as also, how fit they may be with respect to the state of their condition, so as to be able to perform well what may be required of them, in their gallops, sweats, and trials; unless they are in a fit state to be tried, the owner will be deceived in them. Fifthly, he is to turn his attention most earnestly to the system of betting, and narrowly watch the movements and changes made in the betting market, as to how justly, from his own private opinion, his own horses or those of others may have been got

up as favourites, or what others may have gone down in the odds, by being made outsiders. Of those matters, the owner may form some idea from the private trials and public running of the horses in his own stable; that is, if the people of his stable know well what they are about, and that they are strictly honest to him; he can also judge a little from the public running of other horses in such races as his own horses have been engaged to run, where they have, in getting near home, come to a pretty close finish on passing the winning-post. Sixthly, he must be careful how he backs his fancy, or takes the odds out of his own stable. As racing matters are so very differently managed now to what they were formerly, he cannot be too cautious how he places confidence in the opinion of others, which may be given him unasked; he should be very careful in acting on such information, at least in such of the great stakes as are made play or pay, as it is generally the case that stakes thus made make the betting P. P. Under the above circumstances, the old way of betting round is the safe game to play, by beginning early in all great stakes, as the Derby, the Oaks, the St. Leger, and many other similar ones, as some of those at Newmarket, and a few others at

some of the meetings in the country. If a man has money to back himself on, let him begin early to lay the odds against all the horses in every great play or pay race, where the bets are P. P., as there is only one in each race that can win. To play this game, he must attend on such days as the betting market is open, and watch narrowly the fluctuations of it, keeping his own stable as secret and as much in reserve as may best suit his book, which latter he must often and well con over; he must watch and see if there is any favourable or unfavourable changes in the market, that may induce him to lay on, or hedge off, just as he may conceive is necessary to bring himself safe and well home; he is to look cautiously at these matters, and in due time, as a week before the running of each race, he should compare his book with those of others with whom he may have betted, who of course are such men as are capable of paying their losings, for lose they all must, by taking the long odds in those great races, upon every horse except one in each race. If a man has entered a couple of good colts in any one of the above stakes, and has proved such two colts to be superior to any colt he had ever previously tried out of his own stable, and that they

have neither of them fallen amiss, either constitutionally or from accident,—and that he has been able to keep these two colts in the dark, until just before the time of their coming to post —if the owner of such two colts be a man of long practical experience in racing matters, he will have a right to expect to win one or other of the great stakes mentioned, (let us say, for example, it is the Derby, for which stake the getting a couple of colts ready to run will be described in a future chapter). We will, therefore, consider the owner to be a good judge, and capable of betting his money with as much advantage as a betting man; by his being capable of doing this, he saves the expense of employing a commission better, and by his not employing this man he keeps the secrets of what his colts can do more to himself, until the race is over. Now, under these circumstances, the odds would be likely to be high against the two colts in question near the time of their coming to the post—by the owner taking such odds as may suit him, and afterwards hedging the little he would lose in case of any thing unforeseen happening, he will have made all safe; but, if either of the colts should win the Derby, the owner will, in casting up his book, previous to his paying

and receiving, find he has a strong useful stake in his favour, as well as in favour of the stable. It is very well known, that the word "stable" is applied to a building erected for the purpose of keeping horses in; but, in the present instance, as that of a balance being in favour of the stable, it alludes principally to the people who are in the secret of what the horses in a racing stable can do, (which, of course, the master ought to be in every department of it), as the private training groom, the private jockey, the head lad, and perhaps one or two of the best riding boys; should these people have kept faithfully and honestly the secrets of what their master's horses may be equal to doing, their master should liberally reward them for their integrity, by letting them stand their money to a certain extent in his own book; and further, if a master finds, in the settling of his book, that he has won a good stake, as from five to ten or fifteen thousand pounds, and that he is fully aware that his good success has been occasioned as much, or perhaps more, by the good management and secrecy of his people than from his own good judgment, he should, in addition to allowing his people to stand their money with him, give to each of them, according to the class

or rank they may individually hold, a bonus for their honest fidelity towards him.

Those who keep racing establishments will find the above method much more beneficial to their interest, than to employ commission betters; men thus employed may act honestly in executing the commission given to them, whether it be to bet against your own bad horses, to pay the expense of keeping them, or whether it be to bet in favour of your own good ones, to win a large stake on them: still, however, a betting man having performed his commission in the market according to the orders he may have received from the owner of a stable of race horses, (who may not like to bet against his own horses himself), has it in his power, and can, if he chooses, from knowing the secrets either the one way or the other of such stables, commence doing what business for himself he thinks will be the most advantageous for his own book; and after having done this, he can also, if he chooses, furnish one or two of his particular friends with the information thus acquired, which they will well know how to turn to good account.

I would recommend all noblemen and gen-

tlemen who are on the turf to endeavour to return to the good old fashioned way of doing the business of the stables and their horses, viz. by keeping their private training groom and jockey on their own premises. Honesty is the best policy; and no doubt there are plenty of men in each of the above capacities still to be found that will do justice to their employers; and when such men can be had, confidence, should be placed in them, that is, if they are found upon trial to be men of integrity they should be encouraged in the way I have already mentioned. It will not be found to answer the purpose of the owner of a stable of race horses to act towards his training groom and jockey as he might do to the domestic servants of his family; the latter, if they did not suit him, he might discharge, and hire others in their places, without any great inconvenience to his establishment. But for the owner to dismiss for a mere trifle either his trainer or jockey, both of whom, we are to suppose, are not only good judges of their art, but know well the constitutions and tempers of the horses, which they may have had for a long time under their care, (unless they should be found to be tricky), would be attended, for some time,

in a variety of ways, with great inconvenience if not considerable losses of money.

Lastly, we further advise gentlemen of the turf not to be too fond of giving their own orders to their jockeys, as to how they wish them to ride their horses in their different engagements, unless they are very good judges. A gentleman having a horse going to run for a small stake, as a fifty pound plate, and choosing to give his own orders, on such an occasion as this, his making his own arrangements with his jockey is not of much importance—the orders given by the owner may be proper enough, but by chance they may be wrong. In racing it will not do to trust much to chance; it is true, chance may give a lucky hit now and then; but where a horse is deeply engaged, as having to run in any of the great stakes we have mentioned, the most likely way to win the game in the end will be to trust to the cool, patient consideration and practical experienced knowledge of the trainer, who has had the feeding and the working of the horse that may be engaged to run, and knows what the lengths were, and at what pace the horse was capable of coming in those lengths; and he also knows

what length of rally the horse could come at his best pace in the finishing certain parts of his work, near to the time of his running. From these circumstances the trainer best knows how the powers of the horse should be economized, agreeable to the state and length of the ground on which he is going to run, as well also as his taking into his consideration the sort of running that may be made by the party of horses in which the one we are alluding to may be engaged.

We shall now conclude this chapter, supposing that every nobleman or gentleman on the turf is perfectly acquainted with the matter we have here laid down; at all events we shall consider the owner of our racing establishment a good judge of what is going on in his stables, and this because we shall bye-and-bye want to make use of him.

CHAPTER IV.

PRACTICAL OBSERVATIONS WITH WHICH THE READER SHOULD MAKE HIMSELF THOROUGHLY ACQUAINTED, PREVIOUSLY TO HIS COMMENCING THE TRAINING OF HORSES TO RUN.

In speaking of the properties race horses should possess, and the state they should be in previous to their being put into training—The principal requisites to be noticed in the animal are, that he should have good blood, good speed, and good temper; if he is deficient in any one of the above very essential qualities, there is but little dependance to be placed on him, as a race horse, when running. It may be almost unnecessary to observe, that a race horse should not have, previous to his going into training, the least tendency to unsoundness, either local or constitutional, as that

of any thing approaching to a chronic affection of the lungs, which may occasion even a trifling cough; nor must there be the slightest possible disease or enlargement of any of the tendons of the legs, or ligaments of the joints; and this more particularly holds good in the training of a gluttonous sort of horse. To bring such horse to post with any thing about him as above stated, would be throwing money away.

Let us next notice the state our horses should be in as to flesh. Speaking first of the young ones, either as yearlings or two year olds—if they have been paid proper attention to during the time of their being in their paddocks, they will, on leaving them, be sound, lusty, and healthy; and this is the state they should be in after being broke, previous to their going into training; and it is, also, this same state that all race horses, of all ages, and of all different constitutions, should be in, while out of training, or when they are put into training after their having been laid by for the winter; that is, they should have what is commonly called a "good bit of flesh" upon them; and we must be very careful how we remove the superfluous flesh from the surface of the bodies of all horses in training.

In training different horses, we are principally to be guided by their structure, age, and tempers, which regulate the strength of their mechanical powers, as to action, as well also as their constitutional ones; and just according as any one horse may vary from the other in those respects, so will each horse require a different sort of treatment. And, that all those matters, with regard to the training of horses, may be properly carried into effect, it will be necessary for us to explain sufficiently often the different causes and effects, that may arise from the various sorts of treatment we shall bye-and-bye have occasion to adopt in the training of every description of thorough-bred horses. On my first entering the stables as exercise-boy, the system of training horses was not so attentively studied as at the present day. It was too much the custom with grooms to work too many horses together in one class, without their sufficiently discriminating as to how their ages and constitutions might vary, as well also as the lengths their horses were to come in their different races; consequently, some flighty delicate horses lost their tempers, and went off their feed; while others, by being kept too long in strong work, drew too fine, became stale, or, perhaps, got amiss

on their legs. Another thing, training grooms of the old school were too much in the habit of letting horses of all descriptions go on with their work, until, as they considered, they were drawn sufficiently fine to come the length they had to run, not making due allowances that the length a horse may have to run might be short, and that the horse's wind, from the work he had been doing, may be good enough to enable him to go on in his race, and finish at his best pace, without his being worked to too great an excess, with a view to reduce him of his flesh.

This sort of treatment was too much adopted with gluttonous horses, that were mostly engaged, after a certain age, to run long lengths under high weights, as in country running. As such horses generally fed voraciously, it was often difficult to keep many of them from putting up a great deal of flesh; and as grooms usually considered that those horses could not run, unless drawn very fine, it was, therefore, the custom with many of them, to work these horses according as they fed, concluding that the more work they could get into them, provided they kept feeding, the lighter they would be in flesh, and the stouter and longer they would be

able to run. Those rules, in some few instances, certainly stand good up to the present day, as horses cannot run very long lengths if they are very fat, but more particularly if they are too fat in their insides, and which may be known by the difficulty of their breathing, after having been much exerted. But, if a horse is clear and well in his wind, he is not very likely to be too fat in his inside; and if he has done the necessary lengths in his gallops and sweats at the pace he ought to do them according to the length he has to run, I should not mind his being high in flesh, or appearing fat on the surface of his body, provided the length he had to run did not exceed a mile and a half; that is, if the horse we are now alluding to is not more than three years old. I believe there is no state or habit of body a horse can be in, that renders his constitution so susceptible of a dangerous disease, as that of his being very fat and full of juices; and as horses on their first coming into training are somewhat approaching to this state, the greatest care must be taken not to hurry them in their work, and more particularly young ones; for, as they run but short lengths, it is not necessary to draw them fine. Neither should large long-striding horses be drawn too fine; such tall,

large-framed horses should have a good bit of flesh kept on them, they will then bear, occasionally, a little brushing along, at intervals, in some portion of their exercise. It is at Newmarket that those long-striding horses are most in use, and the main object to be considered in the training of them here, is to bring them as stout as is necessary to come the short lengths in which they may be engaged to run, and at the same time to preserve their speed as much as possible. In the north of England, and also in country running, horses are engaged for longer lengths than at Newmarket, they are therefore trained to be brought stouter, according to their ages, and the length they have to come in their different races; and for this last-mentioned sort of running, I prefer horses shorter on their legs, and rather closer made than the horses are that run at Newmarket.

It is to be observed, that the exercising of race horses is one thing, and the doing of work with them is another. The former is to keep them steady and in health, and the latter, when properly administered, is to bring them clear in their wind, to lighten those that require it of their flesh, and to give tone and substance to the

muscles of their bodies and tendons of their legs; such are the advantages of proper exercise and work for horses in training. Most of them will more or less draw fine in training, depending on the work they may be doing, and this in the medium is what we want, provided that they are hearty, and that they go cheerful to their work, that their legs are cool and in shape, and that they feed and drink well. We mean by the above observations, that all horses in training should enjoy both their food and their work; if they are over-marked, as has already been observed, at either the one or the other, they will not come out to run in their best form.

By the word "form," as it regards the race horse, is meant that the animal has been brought by training into a fit state to perform or continue his best exertions, as they may be occasionally required of him, when he is running in company with other horses; and in this state he is able to continue those exertions with comparative ease to himself, and without endangering his constitution, that is, if he is not unfairly over-matched in any of his engagements, as by putting too much weight on him, and engaging him to run long lengths, to which he may not be equal.

Be it further known to the reader, that when a horse is engaged to run in a race of a certain length, as, for example, two or four miles, whichever of these lengths he may have to run, he must occasionally, and at a good telling pace, go a little longer length in the concluding of his work than he has to do in his race; and this when it takes place is called "getting the length he has to run into him;" and unless this part of his training is well arranged, the horse cannot win his engagement, although he may be the best horse in the party in which he may have to run; and what is more, he may appear to the eye to be in very fine condition, and most likely he is so for the running of a short length, but certainly not for the running of a long one. The reader is therefore to bear in mind, that unless his horse is well trained, according to the length he has to run, however good he may be, he will not only be beat by the company he may be running in, but that company need not be of the most choice description to do so; in other words, he will often be beat by bad horses, unless he is in the care of an honest good training groom. Indeed, from any casual circumstance, as if a strong horse miss a sweat or two, and it should be near the time of his coming to post, it would most likely be the

cause of his being beat in the race in which he may be engaged.

As to the appearance of a horse in condition, when brought to the post to run.—He should appear (if I may be allowed the expression) bloomingly ripe, fresh, and healthy in himself, clean and unloaded in his muscular surface from what is commonly called the "waste and spare;" in other words, there should be neither in him, nor on him, any superfluous flesh or adipose membrane (fat). He should be clear in his wind, kind and glossy in his skin, cool and clean on his legs, and, from behind the girths of his saddle, he should be straight and handsome in his carcass (if he is not too great a glutton). The muscles of his body should feel hard and springy to the touch, with a sort of projecting swell or substance in the body part of them, and particularly those of his hind quarters, which should also appear as if they were distinctly divided from each other. His crest, not being too high, should feel firm and closely attached to his neck. This is the appearance, or state of condition, in which a horse should be when brought to post to run; and the orders to be given to the jockey, how such a horse is to be ridden in his race, must be according

to the nature of the ground, and the state in which it may be at the time, as also the company the horse has to run in—and which orders, as we have already noticed, cannot be correctly given but by the training groom who has trained the horse, and who will point out to the jockey how the horse is to be most advantageously made use of, in coming over the sort of course he may have to run on, as also as to the length of rally he can live in, in maintaining his best pace. And if the horse in question is a stout, game one, and kind in his temper, and has been as well taught as trained, he will, when called upon to come by his rider (who should be a thorough good one), or challenged by any horse in the company he may be running with, not only exert himself with all the elastic muscular force which he possesses, but will, as he is approaching near home, not only boldly face the crowd, but, by his continued exertions, will dispute the conquest for every stride of ground, until he is pulled up past the winning-post. Now, if a horse appear at the post as we have just described him, he would then be in a fit state to run; but, with regard to the beauty of his appearance, as that of his being straight and handsome in his carcass, glossy in his skin, and gay and animated in himself, he may

have all these last-mentioned appearances about him, and yet he may not be in a fit state to run. He may be short of work, as we have already observed; he may not have done the necessary lengths in it at the pace he ought; or he may have been kept too long in strong work, and have become rather stale; or he may not have sufficiently recovered, perhaps, from an attack of the distemper; and from any of those causes he may be seven pounds or a stone below his proper form, and yet, to the eye of a common observer, he may be thought fit to run. I have met with men, who profess to be very knowing on the turf, rather too premature in making their remarks on the appearances of horses at the post; some men do not like bones, that is, they think some horses are drawn too fine; others do not like horses brought out too high, as having too much flesh on them. However, those remarks are mostly made by men who often know but little, or, perhaps, nothing of such matters; they are guided more by a theoretical sort of fancy than by good, practical judgment. In fact, there are no men who can, or at least ought to be so capable of judging of the fitness or state, in all respects, in which horses should be to race, as those who have had the working, the feeding, and the wa-

tering of them. A training-groom must never, therefore, be led astray about the condition of his horses by the opinion of others. Different horses will vary, more or less, in appearance from the ones we have just described; yet, notwithstanding horses may more or less differ from each other in those respects, as some of them being rather coarser in their carcasses, and having more flesh on them, still these horses may be in a fit state to run. In short, it will not do to train horses, as men would build houses, by fancy, or by rule; to adopt such modes of treatment would destroy them. As we have already noticed their ages, their constitutions, and the lengths they have to run, must be separately and duly considered; and according as those circumstances may vary, so must each horse be differently treated.

The horses which are likely to be abused by too much work are the five and six year olds, of strong constitutions. Such of these as may have gone somewhat off their speed for the running of short lengths, are mostly engaged to run the longer ones, as those of two and four miles, for some of his Majesty's plates; and it sometimes happens, that such horses have no chance to win but by cutting out the work, that is, by going off

from the start, and making as much running in the race as may be necessary to draw any of the young ones well out to the top of their pace, so as to get them thoroughly beat before they come too near home; otherwise the latter would, on approaching the winning-post, have enough left in them to make the last run, and go in and win. Now, to enable the old ones to make the running above described, it may be necessary to draw some of them rather fine, that their flesh may not fatigue them in running of long lengths. If the training-groom finds that his horses are not likely to suffer, either locally or constitutionally, from the work he may be giving them, and that they keep training on, that is, if he finds that his horses can go faster and stay longer at the pace by being drawn fine, the trainer will be right in stripping them of their superfluous flesh, still bearing in mind the circumstances which have already been noticed, viz. that his horses feed well, and go cheerfully to their work, that they are cool and clean on their legs, and sound on their feet. The hints here given as to the feeding and working of horses are all of great importance; if there be any deviation from any one of them, the animal's bodily health or soundness of his limbs will suffer more or less. By

being forced on in length and pace at his work, contrary to the powers of his constitution, the horse will not only become stale in himself, and relaxed and large in his carcass, but stale and round on his legs, which would be likely to lead to the cracking and bleeding of his heels, which would be the cause of their suppurating. From bad management, a horse is brought into the state I have here described, which renders him unfit to run; his work must, therefore, be stopped, and his engagement is not only done away with for the present, but another race may not, probably, be got out of him again for the whole season.

The grand criterion in training of horses, and the best of all others (at least I found it so) for a training groom constantly to bear in mind, is, that Nature will ever claim her rights, in regulating the whole economy of the animal system. This she will do in spite of all our efforts to oppose her. Hardy, gluttonous, strong horses are difficult to train, or rather it is difficult to keep them from putting up flesh, so as to prevent them from coming too fat to post; and training grooms have sometimes been led astray from the circumstance, that, if horses are fat in their insides, they cannot run on for any length; nor can

any animal that is fat internally run its best pace but for a very short distance. Yet this rule does not in the same degree hold good as to the fat there may be on the surface of horses' bodies. If hardy horses in training do not draw fine on their external surface, from the work they may have been doing, they may, nevertheless, have got rid of a sufficient portion of the superfluous fat in their insides; and if I found them right in their wind, for the length they may have to come in their races, I should not mind their coming out high. Such horses had better come out thus to run, than that they should be drawn fine for appearance sake, at the risk of very much injuring their constitutions, and thereby disabling them from running in their best form, for the length in which they may be engaged.

Another thing to be observed in the training of race horses is, that they should be got ready to run precisely to the day on which their engagements are to take place, as they will not remain in the artificial state of condition to which they may have been brought but for a very short time; and unless they run on the day for which they are prepared, they will change more or less, and but seldom for the better, except indeed they

should not have been forwarded sufficiently early up to the time they ought to run. Now, such horses as are employed for purposes of pleasure, as saddle horses, if regularly fed and exercised, and in other respects properly looked after, will be healthy and kind in their skins, with a sufficient portion of flesh on them, and they are then considered by the pad groom to be in condition; and so they are, and in a very proper state for the purposes for which they are intended to be used. But even in those horses, if neglected in any of the little essential regularities in the management of them, as that of their being allowed to lie by only for a few days, a change in their appearance, from the healthy state described, will soon be observed. Indeed it is good training that will sometimes make bad ones win. Therefore the observations we have made in this chapter are such as we particularly wish our readers to pay attention to; and that they may not lose sight of such observations, we shall in the following chapters, in the practical detail, when getting the horses ready, occasionally repeat some of the remarks noticed here, merely to prevent mistakes arising, as very trifling errors will throw race horses back in their condition, more than can well be imagined by those who have not been

accustomed to the training of them. Now, before we conclude this chapter, we will notice some other little circumstances respecting the entering of young ones. Those matters are arranged in various ways—

In produce stakes, it is one of the regulations, immediately after the mares are stinted, to name, on the probability of their being in foal, that their produce shall run at two or three years old, in some of the best stakes; and if such produce be from untried mares, and got by untried stallions, the usual allowance of weight given in favour of such young ones, when they first come to post, is three, or sometimes five pounds; but should there be no produce, there is of course no forfeit. But there is no weight given in favour of produce that may be got by tried stallions out of tried mares. Breeders and owners have, therefore, to depend for the success of their young ones on the goodness of the stock from which they descend, as, agreeably to the regulations, the above produce cannot possibly be tried previous to being entered. These are some of the arrangements laid down in the Racing Calendar, to which book we beg to refer the

reader for further information on the entering of different produce.

In the entering of young ones, as yearlings and two year olds, into good stakes, whenever the first mentioned of them have to be tried, or have to run early, it is always in their own class; the weights they carry, and the lengths they run, are all laid down in the Racing Calendar; and the same thing stands good with regard to two year olds, when running in their own class. This, therefore, makes the matter simple enough in the entering of yearlings or two year olds. But should the latter be engaged to run with horses of all ages, the thing then becomes more complicated, on account of the varying of the weights and lengths. For the present we will defer explaining and simplifying the effects of those matters until we come to the entering of horses of all ages to run.

I must, however, here advert to some other little circumstances with regard to the entering of yearlings and two year olds.—If the owner or breeder of them is fully aware that his young ones are from good and tried stock, and has

tried them to be very superior, has plenty of money to back himself on, and has his own private trainer and jockey, he should, agreeably to the articles or rules of the different meetings, in due time engage his colts or fillies deeply; for the greater number of good things they are engaged in, the greater probability there will be of their paying their owner: but he must take care, in the entering of them, not to let their engagements follow so closely in succession as to cause them to be too much abused, or they will win but few races.

CHAPTER V.

FIRST CLASS OF HORSES AND MARES RETURNING FROM A SUMMER'S RUNNING TO THE HOME STABLES; THE ARRANGING OF THOSE HORSES AND MARES IN THEIR BOXES; AND THE TREATMENT OF THEM THEREIN DURING THE THREE WINTER MONTHS.

Most of our racing meetings are over by the end of September, the few which are run in October are concluded by the end of that month, with the occasional exception of the Newmarket meetings, and one or two others. The various number of plate horses, which have been engaged during the summer in running at the different meetings, as also in travelling from one meeting to the other, return in the autumn to their different home stables to winter. Some of them are taken for this purpose to the private stables of their owners, and others to the public training stables of the different trainers.

I will now, by way of example, and also with a view to bring the subject more clearly before my readers, lay down the treatment to be adopted, supposing the whole of the stables to be opened and occupied by any reasonable number of horses and mares, say twenty for example, of different ages and constitutions, and at the different periods as they arrive home, let us say by the 1st of October. We will place them in such stables or loose houses as may be most proper for them; for it is to be understood, that all home racing establishments have or at least should have every conveniency for every description of horse. (See Vol. I, Chapter 1st, on Stables.) It is also to be understood, that the training groom who undertakes the charge of a large racing establishment, must be a downright good judge of his profession. For a description of each person's peculiar department in a race horse stable, I recommend to my readers a perusal of the following chapters in the first volume, viz. 13, 16, 17, 18, 19, 20, and 21. According to the number of horses the trainer has under his care, he will engage such requisite assistance as may be wanted, so that his orders may be properly carried into effect—as a steady man, or a couple of very

steady head lads, with a good set of riding boys: and whether a large establishment of this kind is to be carried on at Newmarket, or Epsom, or at any of the training establishments in the north, is of no consequence. Bye-and-bye I will point out the difference to be observed between the training of horses in the north, and the training them in the south. I will just here remark, that, when noblemen or gentlemen send their race horses to a public training stable, and do not send their own groom with them, it will of course be necessary to put the public trainer in possession of what information they can, with regard to either the good or bad properties their horses may possess. It is true, the trainer will find out in time the good and bad qualities of all the horses he may be training; but if he is immediately apprized of any little unfavourable circumstance, he may take early precautionary measures, if not wholly to prevent, at least to diminish, any trifling defects a horse may have; as, for example, if a horse is tricky, the trainer may put up a good riding boy, who may in some measure be a check upon such a horse; and perhaps, if his tricks are not of long standing, they may be got the better of altogether. The racing properties of strange

horses should be clearly pointed out to the trainer, what they beat, or what beat them; whether they gave or received weight according to their different years; and at what weights and lengths they can best come, and what was the state of the ground at the time. Of course, the different engagements of horses and the time of their coming to post, the weights and the horses they are to meet, are accurately noted in the Calendar. A trainer possessing the above information respecting the different horses in his stable, together with what he ascertains in training them, as also by his constant reference to the Calendar for a thorough knowledge of the rules or laws of the Jockey Club and for the public running of the various horses, will have a tolerable good idea of what chance (barring an accident) the horses he may have to bring to post have of winning.

Having now made my preparatory remarks relative to the horses coming to the home stables to winter, let us now consider them as having arrived there, as they usually do at different periods, as the various meetings conclude up to the month of October, I will now, for example,

place the above mentioned horses and mares in the different stables of a public training establishment, according to their respective ages, as young ones or old ones. It may not be out of place here to observe, that a race horse, like any other horse, is of age at five years old, as a man is at twenty-one; but if a race horse continues to run on until he is six or seven years old, he is usually considered in racing an aged horse, (although not eight years old), and he is therefore considered in the stables an old horse. As different horses arrive at the home stables, they are to be classed off in them, according to the condition they may be in, and the running properties they may each possess. The first class to notice are the craving ones, which are mostly found to be running in the summer as plate horses; they are four, five, and six years old; they are of strong constitutions, and many of them have been much accustomed to strong work in their training; and in their running, they have often had to come heats of long lengths under high weights, as for example, in running for many of his Majesty's plates. Such horses, on their return to the home stables, are, many of them, drawn fine, in

other words they are low in flesh; and most of them are stale in their constitutions, as also on their legs; and from so often removing their shoes and plates their feet are occasionally in a bad state; and from want of proper attention during the hot weather, their backs are sometimes also a little sore. Many of those craving horses that return in autumn to the home stables, are in this state or approaching to it; such, whether horses or mares, if happy by themselves, should be put into large loose boxes, so that they may put up flesh, and recover the tone and strength of such parts as may have suffered from the repeated exertions they may have undergone in training and running. When horses have thus suffered from one or other or perhaps all of the above causes, they are not in a fit state, immediately on arriving at the home stables, to go out to exercise daily, throughout the winter, with the rest of the horses. It is the custom, and a very good one, from the 1st of October to the 1st of January, to winter the above horses in large loose boxes, or barn-like sort of stables; and if they are well managed in those places, they should be, by the time I have mentioned, in a fit state to go

again into training, that is, they should be hearty, sound, and lusty.

Let us now make such remarks with regard to the attention necessary to be observed in regard to the loose box, in which a race horse has to stand, as will suffice for the arrangement of such loose boxes or stables generally. As to the size of them, they should be thirteen feet by twenty, (for the manner of ventilating it, see Vol. 1, Chap. 3); the box being thoroughly dry, it should be plentifully supplied with good clean wheat straw; and be it observed, that, as, when a horse lies down in his box to rest himself, he mostly does it in the centre of his bed, it should therefore be made of good substance in this part. But, as horses get fresh from rest and good feeding, there are at times some among them, who, to amuse themselves, get into little tricks and habits which are annoying to a trainer; they stand back close to the sides of the box, and here rub their tails and tops of their quarters, and they knock, and kick, and bruise their hocks and feet, by kicking against the boards or walls. With a view to prevent a horse as much as possible from practising those habits, every time his bed is set fair, the sides of the box should, as it were, be banked up wide and

high all round with plenty of straw, so that the horse cannot so readily get back to rub or kick the sides of the box; and if a horse is inclined to paw, and knock his bed about with his fore-feet, the fetters can be put on him. The first thing in the morning a boy has to do who looks after a horse in a box, is, when he goes in, to chain up his horse's head, at such a length as to admit of his feeding; he then gives him his corn, and while the horse is eating it the boy is to set fair his horse's bed; in commencing this, he is first to look about on the surface of the bed, to see where the horse may have emptied himself; he is also to feel about under the straw for the same purpose, and throw towards the door all the dung he can find; he is next to shake up the straw all over the box, leaving the greater part of it round the sides or walls; and any part of the straw in the centre appearing wet, from the horse having lately staled on it, should be removed; there should be nothing allowed to accumulate here in the way of dung; the box, in short, to use a common stable phrase, should be mucked out twice a week. But on all such occasions there must be, previous to the horse being dressed, a sufficient portion of the bedding put back to the centre of

the box, to allow of the horse having good foothold for it to stand safely on while being dressed. The boy having done these little matters, and swept out the stable, after putting on his horse's dressing muzzle, and having securely shortened the rack-chain, strips off his horse's clothes, and gives him a good dressing. This done, the horse is re-clothed, and his saddle put on, and a hood may be thrown over his quarters, while the boy is rubbing his horse's legs for a short time; after this, he sets fair the bed, and again sweeps out the stable. This being done, as the horse is not now supposed to be in training, his head is let down to the length of the chain, and a bit of hay, by way of amusing him, may be put in his rack or manger; the stable-door is now locked up, and the horse is left ready (all but bridling) to go out with the other horses, either before or after breakfast, as the groom may direct, or as weather may permit. The horse, having been out and done his exercise, returns to his box; here he is dressed and attended to in every respect as in the morning; having done his corn, his hay is given to him. The boy should now take the precaution to remove every sort of implement out of the box; having put them away, he returns again, and lets down his horse's head, leaving

him perfectly loose; and in walking away from him he strips the hood off his quarters; he then goes out, and safely locks the stable-door, leaving his horse to enjoy himself until the next stable-hour, when he is watered, dressed, and fed as at noon-day, and at the same time the other horses are that stand in the stall stables.

Unless the horses in boxes, as well as those in stall stables, are properly attended to during the winter, it is not to be expected that they will be in a fit state to go into training early in the spring. These are my reasons for entering so minutely into the practical detailed account of how such horses should be attended to, while they are standing during the winter months in loose boxes, as have to go out daily to exercise at the same time with other horses standing in the stall stables.

There is a method of wintering a horse in a loose place, which is to be had recourse to with such gluttonous horses as may, as we have already noticed, from the repeated races in which they have been engaged, have met with more than common abuse; such horses, on arriving in autumn at the home stables, require some little preparing before they are turned into the loose

places it is intended they shall winter in, as they are most likely very stale in themselves, as well as on their legs; and if they should have plenty of flesh on them, but certainly not otherwise, it may be advisable to give them a couple or three doses of physic each to cool them. After the effects of the medicine are subsided, they should gradually be stripped of their standing clothes. Their feet, which are mostly in a bad state, should be examined and properly attended to once in three weeks (See Vol. 1, Chap. 22, on the Treatment of Feet and on Shoeing). Horses, such as above described, being thus prepared, should, with a collar on each of their heads, be turned loose into a clean, well-littered, and well-ventilated loose place; here they should each remain in what is called the rough, that is, there is no necessity for either dressing or exercising them; they generally take care to give themselves quite enough of the latter to keep them in health, either by their walking, trotting, or, not unfrequently, cantering round their loose places. Such of those horses as may have been running in summer until late in the autumn should be allowed to remain at rest until the month of March, before they are taken again into training, as it is hardly to be expected they can be brought out in

their best form before the end of May or beginning of June. Now, the main object to be attended to in the managing of horses in these situations is, to water them, to feed them, to set fair their beds at the accustomed stable-hours, and to pick out their feet once a day.

I should not have been thus minute in describing how horses ought to be treated in their loose places, but from the very negligent manner in which I have repeatedly seen them attended to in such situations, and this at no very distant period. As I have a pretty good reason to remember the careless treatment in the wintering of a horse in a loose place, I will, by way of example, here mention the sort of inattention I mean, as it happened to a horse I was at the time looking after when a boy.

The groom had ordered me to put my horse into a loose place, and here he was kept in the rough during the winter. I fed and watered him at the usual stable hours, and put clean straw into his stable occasionally. My horse, therefore, stood in his own litter, I think, for two or three months, until at last the stable became so insufferably hot, that, in the morning, when the door

was opened, the fumes arising from the putrefaction of the accumulated manure issued forth as if from a boiler of hot water. The groom going with me on occasional mornings to look at the horse, I presumed that he observed what I have above stated, and at last he no doubt saw the impropriety of allowing the stable to remain any longer in so unhealthy a state, as he ordered that it should be immediately cleaned out, and which I very well remember gave two or three of us boys a very long job. At the time the circumstance occurred to which I have been alluding, I was too young and too thoughtless to trouble myself more about my horse's feet, either in a stall stable or loose place, than the trifling orders of the groom obliged me to do, so that I neither picked out nor washed my horse's feet, that I remember, during the time he had been standing as I have above described; the consequence of which was, his feet were in a very bad state.

But the cause of horses' feet getting thus out of order, when they have been kept in the rough in such loose places as may not have been sufficiently often cleaned out, should not at all times be attributed to any want of attention on the part of

the groom: such things more principally arise from unforeseen circumstances; as, for example, a strong constitutional country plate horse, that may have been travelling from race to race during summer, and occasionally, perhaps, running three times a fortnight, such a horse's feet, on his arriving at the home stables late in the autumn, would be in rather a shattered state, from the circumstance of his shoes and plates having been so often removed, as to have occasioned the wall or crust of his feet to be much broken; in short, this used to be a very common occurrence. A horse arriving at home in the state we have here described, the training-groom considers, and very properly, that such a horse will not be in a fit state to go again into training before the month of March; he is also aware, that this same horse cannot be so well got fresh by standing in a stall stable, as he can by being put into a loose place. The horse being properly prepared, by being gradually stripped, and having, if not too low in flesh, as I before noticed, a couple of doses of physic given him, the groom orders him to be put into a large loose place, or barn-like sort of stable. Now, with the exception of the horse's feet being broken away, there may be nothing more the matter with him, unless, indeed, his back,

perhaps, from the changing of saddles, may have been bruised, and become sore; the irritability of such a sore would be kept up from the heat and friction of the clothing; but, by the horse being turned stripped into a loose place to rest, the causes which occasioned the back being sore are removed, and the parts injured recover of themselves; and of this most grooms are aware, as they are also aware that the horse's feet will be sufficiently grown, and that there will be plenty of horn to nail the shoes to in the spring. As regarded a horse's feet, this was all a groom ever troubled himself about; nor do I believe that smiths, in my juvenile days, knew any thing more of the nature and component parts of horses' feet than grooms themselves; for, in their cleaning out horses' feet, they cut away the horn, very injudiciously, from all descriptions of feet, without even duly discriminating, so as to leave the horn of a weak, delicate foot untouched, or to remove a sufficient portion of it from a very strong one, with a view to aid, to a certain degree, the elasticity that may be required in the latter. Neither were smiths, at the time I have been alluding to, too careful in the forging, fitting, or nailing on of horses' shoes. Indeed, such things as regard the

treatment of horses' feet, and the shoeing of them, can be known well only by such men as have become familiar with horses, from their being brought up with them very early in life, and having, in due time, qualified themselves by attentive study at the Veterinary College, where they have had the opportunity, as well as the inclination, industriously to employ themselves in practising in the right sort of school, so as to obtain a good ground-work, or thorough knowledge, on the subject of all such matters as concern not only the treatment of horses' feet and shoeing, but also the treatment of the various diseases to which horses are subject, either local or constitutional. But to return to the groom.

Now, it is not to be expected that this man can possibly be well acquainted with all the minute practical matters we have been making mention of. In truth, a training-groom's attention is principally absorbed in considering the constitutional health of the horse; the object the groom is looking forward to, is to have the horse hearty, with a sufficient portion of flesh on him, and cool and clean on his legs, by the time he is wanted to be again taken into training in the spring; the groom, perhaps, never once thinking, that, as the horse's frogs were sound when

he was put into the loose place, it would be needful to pay any further attention to his feet until the time arrived for his being shod, when, on examining the horse's feet, at the end of three months, it is mostly found that they are, from want of being repeatedly attended to, in a very diseased state, the frogs of them occasionally being so undermined, as to have little or no horny substance left, and the feet in all probability much contracted. These are generally the bad effects arising from horses' feet being neglected, at the time of their standing in the rough in such loose places as are not sufficiently often cleaned out, and which may in some instances be the case even up to the present day. Let us, by way of example, suppose, that two or three craving horses have returned from their summer's running to the home stable of a racing establishment, and that those horses, to put up flesh and get fresh, are put to stand, for the period already mentioned, in loose stables, either in their clothes and regularly dressed, or stripped and kept in the rough, whichever may be thought, according to circumstances, to be the most advantageous. The last-mentioned way of keeping those craving horses that may have been more abused than others, is to be preferred, to their going out

every day to exercise, and returning to stand in the small usual-sized loose boxes. These stale horses will benefit more by standing constantly, for three or four months, in large barn-like sort of stables, than in the loose boxes, as the coldness of the air in such situations braces up their muscular system, if they are not inclined to give themselves, in ranging about, too much exercise in such places.

Let us now make a few remarks regarding another sort of treatment of such horses as may have to winter in loose places. It was formerly the custom with training grooms, and it may most likely be practised by many of them up to the present time, to give their horses, on their having done their running in the autumn, three doses of physic each, with an interval of a week or eight days between each dose; this was formerly a standing rule with those men, without their duly considering the state of each horse's condition; and again three doses more were given to them, either about the end of February or beginning of March, depending on the time such horses might have to come to post in the spring. This method of indiscriminately physicing horses ought to a certain extent to be done away with. Yet, I am

fully aware that race horses, generally speaking, cannot be brought to post in their best form, without having physic administered to them as occasion may require. But such artificial means may be dispensed with almost altogether, particularly in the autumn; for it is at this season of the year (the autumn) that many such horses as we are alluding to are drawn fine, (light of flesh); and notwithstanding that they may be stale in themselves, and also on their legs, there will be no occasion to physic such horses to the extent we have alluded to. The few of them, such as may be gross and fleshy, with their heels perhaps a little cracked, may require a couple of doses of physic, on their being laid by; but only under such circumstances can physic be of any use. Stale horses are no sooner laid by in loose places, to eat, drink, sleep, and enjoy themselves, for three or perhaps four months, than from this sort of indulgence they soon put up flesh; and by the gentle exercise they take in those places, they soon get fresh in themselves, and cool and clean on their legs, without their having so much physic administered to them.

We will now lay down some few plain rules as to the manner of feeding the above horses,

which are supposed to have been stripped and laid by in the rough, with an old collar on each of their heads. These horses are to be fed and watered at the usual stable hours; and from their having been living so long on the most nutritious dry food, as plenty of the best of corn, there may be some of them a good deal heated in their constitutions; therefore, to gradually cool them, and keep their bodies of a proper temperature, as also to prevent them from becoming too costive, we will at first give them some mixed food, which shall consist of three parts;—of oats, say a quartern; one double handful of bran; one of clean sliced carrots; and the other of chaff, cut from the very best of hay only. This may be considered a large feed, but I know it to be a wholesome one. The portion of corn will be quite sufficient to nourish the horse's system, on his first being laid by; the bran will cool and keep the bowels in a good state; the carrots are sweet, nutritious, and easy of digestion, and race horses are very fond of them; the chaff is also nutritious, and causes the horse to masticate thoroughly the corn he eats. But if those sort of horses are plentifully fed on corn alone, on their first being laid by, it will be very likely to keep up

that degree of heat and costiveness to which some of them are subject on their returning from a summer's running; therefore, let them take their usual quantity of hay, with the above-mentioned manger food, and they will eat less of their litter, and, from the succulent matter contained in the carrots, will be inclined to drink less water. Oil cake is very nutritious, we allow, and may be very well to fatten oxen upon, but the manger food, above recommended, we consider much more natural for horses. Should any one horse appear more costive than another, a mash of equal parts of scalled bran and oats may be given him once or twice a week, to keep his bowels in a good state. Those sort of horses, kept as we have here advised, will not only put up flesh, but they will be less subject to inflammatory attacks, either local or constitutional. Still, the progress of each horse's putting up flesh should be duly observed; if a horse is found to get very quickly into a plethoric state, it may be advisable to bleed such horse, to the extent of four or five quarts, (depending on his age, size, and constitution), to prevent him from going wrong in any way; indeed, it was the custom among grooms (when I was a boy) to bleed their horses a fortnight or three weeks after they had been laid by,

from extreme labour, to enjoy that of extreme indulgence. They bled those that put up flesh quickly, to prevent them from falling amiss; and those that did not thrive as readily as they could wish, they bled rather sparingly, with a view to improve their condition; and as the practice of bleeding horses on such occasions is a rational one, I would recommend its still being adhered to, whenever it may be considered necessary; the quantity of blood taken may be from three to five quarts, depending, as I have just observed, on the age, size, constitution, and condition of the horse.

With regard to the second class, the hearty horses, (the treatment of which is stated in the following chapter), those that are valuable good runners, feed well, and are content to be alone without ranging too much about, will do well in boxes, either dressed and clothed, and going daily to exercise, or stripped and kept in the rough, whichever the training-groom may consider they will benefit the most by. As these horses are not so gluttonously inclined as those which were first described, and are lighter in their carcasses, they may have corn alone given them; and if at any time they become costive, or, indeed, to

prevent their being so, they may have bran mashes given them, as occasion may require.

As these horses take less work in training, consequently, on their return to the home stables, in autumn, they will not require the artificial aid of physic, until they go again into training in the spring, unless they may have become stale in themselves and on their legs, by repeated running, and then a couple of doses to commence with will be sufficient, keeping a dose or two in reserve, until they have done a certain portion of their work.

We have now made such arrangements as we conceive necessary to be attended to, with respect to the first class of horses, whether they have to lie by in boxes, or to be daily exercised during the winter months, when they are out of training.

CHAPTER VI.

THE SECOND CLASS OF HORSES AND MARES RETURNING FROM A SUMMER'S RUNNING TO THE HOME STABLES; THE ARRANGING OF THOSE HORSES AND MARES IN SEPARATE STALL STABLES, AND THE TREATMENT OF THEM IN THE STABLES; AS ALSO WHEN THEY ARE OUT AT EXERCISE, DURING THE THREE WINTER MONTHS.

In the preceding chapter I described the necessary arrangements to be observed for three months, in the wintering of the craving or first class of horses in boxes or loose places. In this I shall have to make the arrangement for the same period, in wintering of the hearty or second class of horses and mares in the stalls of the home stables. This class consists of those horses, as I have before noticed, whose constitutional or

physical powers are in the medium, and at three or four years old may have been found to have gone off their speed in the running of short lengths for any of the great stakes at Newmarket. These horses, under those circumstances, are usually selected for what is called a campaign, or roving commission; in other words, they are got ready as early in the spring as may be necessary; and are then sent off to run as plate horses, at the different meetings on the circuit, in which they have to travel during the summer; and, like the horses of the first class, they return in autumn to the home stables to winter.

These hearty horses are generally pretty good ones, if allowed to have their day, that is, not to come out to run too often. If they are brought fresh to post, they can most of them come tolerable good lengths under racing weights; and as there are many of them that do not require so very much work in training, and as they do not run so frequently as the first class of horses, they generally return fresher to the home stables in the autumn. These hearty horses or mares, not being gluttonously inclined, do very well in stall stables; indeed, many of them do better than in boxes, as they feed bet-

ter in company than when alone; but I must observe that they are to be classed, the horses in one stable, and the mares in another, for reasons I shall bye-and-bye explain. But should there be a horse of this class a valuable good runner, that may have met with some little abuse, either from severity of contest or frequency of running, such horse or mare (if happy alone) would of course be much sooner refreshed by lying by two or three weeks in a box, than by standing in a stall all night and the greater part of the day.

The second class horses mostly run under lighter weights and at shorter lengths than the horses of the first; those of them that are considered by their owners to be of sufficient racing celebrity, are entered to run for the lighter weighted King's plates or gold cups; and two or three of them now and then are kept in reserve, to be entered into some good stake or plate, with something handsome added. When neither of these good things is to be met with at a meeting at which such horses may arrive, they are frequently, to help pay expenses, if qualified, entered into any of the weight for age county or town plates. The

lengths for any of the above mentioned plates or stakes, although they occasionally vary, do not often exceed two miles; nor is it an invariable rule at even these lengths to run heats.

As these hearty horses are not often engaged to run under high weights or long lengths at heats, they generally arrive, as I have already noticed, fresher at the home stables in autumn than the craving horses; and as they are more speedy than the last mentioned, they are (previous to being laid by) the horses from which one or two of the most superior runners among them are selected, to try any of the two year olds, or any horses that may have been longer at home, and which it may be thought necessary to try, to see what such horses may be entered into in the following spring; or perhaps to ascertain whether they may be worth keeping in training or not. But it is to be observed, that those horses of the second class, on their return in the autumn, are not to be considered to be in a fit state immediately to try other horses, but should have ten days or a fortnight's rest, if necessary. When I say that these are to rest, it is not to be understood that they are to lie by and do nothing; I mean by the word "rest," that

it is not necessary they should be in very strong work: their work should be such as will keep them sufficiently clear in their wind, and light and fresh enough in themselves, so as to come their best pace for a little longer length than the length of the trial-ground on which the two year olds or any other horses may have to be tried. The particulars of those and other trials will be found fully explained in their proper places.

The third class of horses, as they will have to winter with the second class, I shall only cursorily mention them here as being horses of delicate constitutions, as I shall speak more particularly of them when I come to notice the different sort of treatment to be adopted in the training of different horses.

We now come to the noticing of the arrangements necessary to be attended to in the treatment of the second and third class horses for three months. The days shortening as the autumn further advances, the hour for opening the stables in the morning gradually becomes later, as of course does the time for the going out of the horses in the morning to exercise. After the middle or twenty-fifth of September,

the going out of the horses twice a day should be discontinued, and they should now only go out once a day to exercise, unless indeed the weather should remain very fine and warm to the end of the month; they may, up to that time, walk out on the downs in the afternoon, to stretch their legs and empty themselves, and take their water and a slow gallop after. The doing those little things with them in the pure open air conduces to their health, and affords them some amusement, if the weather, as I have just observed, is really very fine. This method is to be preferred to their being watered and brushed over in the stables, unless indeed any of their coats have begun to move, and that they are getting what is commonly termed "pen-feathered;" for at this critical time horses are weak and faint, they sweat from little exertion, and are very susceptible of cold; and the sooner horses thus affected in autumn have done their running, the better for them and their owners.

The hours of opening and shutting up the stables during each day, as also the going out of the horses to and returning from exercise, cannot well be precisely defined. In the commencement of the month of October, if the mornings are

fine and warm, the horses may be out as early as eight o'clock; but as the days are shortening, and the mornings get colder, the horses must go out on each succeeding morning later. The opening of the stables, during this month, should be at daylight; and the business of the day should be regulated by the training groom as follows:—On his opening the stables, he immediately calls up his boys; having dressed themselves, they turn up their bed-settles, take down the bales, and having cleaned out their horses' mangers, they immediately assemble at the corn-binn; the groom being here, gives each boy a feed of corn for his horse, which, after it is well sifted, is given to him. The whole of the horses having eaten their corn, and the stables being set fair, the boys put on their horses' dressing muzzles, and chain up their heads; the horses are then stripped of their standing clothes, these being thrown over the tops of the racks. The horses after being dressed are re-clothed in their exercise clothes, and their saddles put on; their legs being rubbed, the stables again set fair, and the bales put up, they are left to stand with their heads up and muzzles on; the stable-door being locked by the groom, he and his boys go to their breakfast.

After this meal they immediately return to the stables; the bales being taken down, the horses' bridles and hoods being put on, the boys mount their horses; and as each boy knows the place his horse has in the string, and the distance he is to keep him from the horse in front of him, they are all in their turn ridden out of the stable into the yard, here to walk round until the saddles are settled to their backs, after which the yard-door is opened, and they now proceed in line, by the most private road, to the downs; and following them at a suitable distance, so as to see well what both boys and horses are about, (for I have known the boys to be quite as tricky as the horses), must be the training groom on his hack.

For a moment I will just here observe, that, during the whole of the time the horses are out, the stable doors and windows are all to be left open, to admit the pure air, so that the stables may be cooled and well ventilated by the time the horses return; indeed, this matter of opening the doors and windows of the stables is to take place on all occasions when the horses are at exercise.

But to return to the string of horses we left

going to the downs—I shall just here remark, that the reader is to bear in mind, that the horses above alluded to are of various ages, as country platers, and that they have all of them done their running by the end of September; therefore, they are to be considered, now, in the month of October, as being out of training. I am aware that the meetings at Newmarket, and some few other places, are not concluded until the end of October, or, perhaps, sometimes not until the commencement of November. Indeed, to have yearlings and two year olds ready to come to post in Spring, the training of horses may be said to be going on all the year round at Newmarket; I shall therefore treat bye-and-bye of training horses in November, as well as in all other months in which it may be necessary to train them.

Now, then, with regard to the exercising of the first and second class of horses, it is to be observed, that the exercise for them, and, indeed, for all other race horses that may at any time be out of training, is to be such as will keep them in good health. No matter at what time of the year it is that horses are brought to post, our object must be, when they have done their running, to bring them, by degrees, from the artificial state in which they have so long been

kept, to that which approaches nearer to their state of nature, and this is, of course, to be done by a relaxation of their strong work. Their exercise will, therefore, be principally that of walking; and when it may be occasionally required to gallop them, it is only with a view to steady those that, from indulgence, are getting too hearty, and this must necessarily be done; for, if a horse is allowed to get very hearty, he may daily follow up his gambols, until he becomes decidedly tricky, and more particularly so, should the boy, from being off his guard, get thrown off the horse; this sort of thing, from neglect, is not an uncommon occurrence.

As I shall shortly have to describe the different sorts of exercise for different sorts of horses, and the effects these exercises are likely to produce, under all the circumstances in which it may be required, it will, therefore, not be necessary for me to say more at present, than that, when the horses that are now supposed to be on the downs have done the principal part of their exercise for the morning, they may, during this month (October), go to the troughs to water; after which, they may take a short gallop. On their being pulled up, they are to be walked back to the stables.

Each boy having ridden his horse into his stall, and turned him round in it, they all of them dismount, and slack their horses' girths; they then take off their horses' hoods and bridles, and if the horses' tempers are such as will admit of it, each of the boys puts a handful of hay on the ground before his horse's head, for him to eat or pick at, while his head, neck, and fore-quarters are being dressed. These matters being done, the horses are turned round in their stalls; their collars and dressing muzzles being put on, and their heads chained up, the boys pick out and wash their horses' feet; and after giving their legs a few strokes down with some clean straw, they take off their saddles and body clothes, and dress their horses well; they then re-clothe them in their standing clothes, throwing a hood over their quarters, their manes and tails being combed out, their legs rubbed, and their beds set fair.

The exercise clothing and other things in the stable being put tidily away, as the horses are not now in training, their muzzles are taken off, and their heads let down to the length of the chain; their mangers being cleaned out, the whole of the boys immediately, as in the morning, assemble at the corn-binn, where each receives from

the groom or head lad (for one or the other must invariably be present during the whole of every stable hour) a feed of corn for his horse: the whole of the horses having got their corn, the boys go out. The groom is now to lock the stable door, so that the horses may be left at this stable hour to eat their first feed of corn undisturbed, during which time the boys may be cleaning up the stable yard. By the time the yard is done, the horses will, all of them, have finished their corn; when the groom again opens the stables, and the boys as before assemble at the corn-binn for a second feed of corn for the horses; which, when given, the groom and boys again go out, the stables are locked up, and the horses are left, as before, to eat their second feed undisturbed, during which time the boys may fill the water troughs and boiler. On the groom again opening the stables, the boys immediately betake themselves to the hay-binn, where each boy carefully selects his horse's hay, which being given, and the bales put up, the horses' quarters are stripped; the boys and the groom now go out. The horses being done, the stables are again locked up, which, in this month (October), should take place at or as near to one o'clock in the day as circumstances will admit. The boys now

proceed to their dinners; after having taken this meal, their time is generally their own, unless with those who may be looking after the horses in the boxes; those boys may have between stable hours to wash and slice a few carrots for their horses. If the stables are shut up, as I have just observed, at one in the day, they are opened again at four in the afternoon; but as this month approaches to its close, the days are shortening, so that the time for the horses' going out to be exercised in the mornings, of course, becomes gradually somewhat later, and towards the conclusion of the month the stables will not be shut up much before two o'clock in the day. Therefore, to equally divide the time for the horses to rest, the opening of the stables in the afternoon becomes proportionably later, that is, if, by the end of the month, they are shut up at two in the day, they are to be opened again at five o'clock in the afternoon.

On the groom opening the stables in the afternoon, a repetition of the same duties, as in the morning, takes place, that of taking down the bales and setting fair the horses' beds. This being done, each boy, with his bucket, repairs to the pump for water, and from hence to the boiler; the groom, or head lad, here

takes care that the water is mixed of a proper temperature; but unless the water is hard, it will not now require the chill being taken so much off as in the depth of winter. As the water is got ready, each boy takes up his bucket, and proceeds to the stable, and waters his horse as directed by the groom; after which, the horses' muzzles are put on and their heads chained up, and the whole of them being stripped, their bodies are dressed, when they are again re-clothed; their muzzles and collars being taken off, they turn round to have their heads dressed; which when done, they are turned round again in the stable, their collars put on, their manes and tails combed out, and they now stand with their heads secure to the end of the chain, until their legs are rubbed and their beds set fair. Those little matters being done, and the mangers cleaned out, the boys now, as in the morning, proceed to the corn-binn, where they each receive from the groom, or head lad, the corn for their horses; which being given to them, the boys go out as before, the groom locks the stable door, and the horses are left to eat their corn undisturbed, while the boys are removing from the yard the manure swept out from the stables. The groom, having considered that the whole of the horses have eaten their corn, returns and

opens the stables, and, as the horses are not now in training, he orders the boys to give them a small portion of hay, to eat or amuse themselves with; their heads being let down, and the bales put up, the stables are again shut at five o'clock in the evening, or, as the month approaches towards its end, it may be a little later. The horses are left to rest from this period until about eight o'clock, when the groom again opens the stables, and the operation of taking down the bales, chaining up the horses' heads, and setting the beds fair, is repeated. If the groom observes any horse to have lain down, and perhaps, by rolling in his stall, to have displaced his clothing, he is to order such horse to be stripped, to be wiped over, and re-clothed. The hoods being thrown on the quarters of all the horses in the stable, their manes and tails combed out, their legs for a short time rubbed, their beds set fair, their heads let down to reach the manger, and the latter cleaned out, they are all fed, and the bales put up, when the stables are again to be locked. While the horses are feeding, the boys get their suppers; after which they return with the groom to the stables, when the horses have their hay given them and their heads let down, and their quarters

stripped. The boys that sleep in the stable now let down their bed-settles, and go to bed; the groom having put out the lights, he goes out, and locks up the stable door for the night, which, in this month (October), generally takes place at about half past eight o'clock. In the month of November, the stables should be opened by the groom at six o'clock in the morning, but now, as at night, candles become necessary.

Before I proceed further, it may not be out of place here cursorily to observe, that, at the time of my juvenile days as exercise boy, it was the custom with training-grooms to go to their stables in winter as early as three or four o'clock in the morning; the boys being roused up, the horses were fed, stripped, and brushed over; the stables being again set fair, and the bales put up, the boys went to their beds; and the groom, having put out the lights in the stable, left the door securely locked, and returned to his own bed, where he usually lay till daylight. Grooms went thus early to their stables, not only with a view more equally to divide the time of feeding the horses during the twenty-four hours, but also to occupy the time of the horses by giving them something to do; as it

was found that some thorough-bred horses, when lying by in winter short of work, will, by way of amusing themselves, get into as bad habits or tricks in the stables as some others of them will, from bad management, occasionally get tricky out of the stables. The tricks that they will at times get at in the night, in their loose boxes and stalls, are various: some horses get a habit of rolling, until they cast themselves; others are inclined to kick with violence the sides of the stalls; others lick the sides of the stalls or boxes; from this they go on to lick their manger rails, some lay hold of them, and thus take to crib-biting and sucking their wind; others of them will take to weaving, that is, moving their heads and fore-quarters from one side of the stall to the other; some take to pawing up their litter, but this is easily prevented by putting fetters on them. Now, that those habits and tricks are very bad we must allow; but I scarcely ever remember a horse, who had been addicted to any one of those or other tricks not here mentioned, to have been permanently cured. When they are in strong work, as in training, they do not appear to have so great a propensity to practise them as in winter, when

many of them are lying by idle. Therefore, unless horses could be broken of their inconvenient and objectionable habits, by going thus early to the stables in winter mornings, I think it is a pity to disturb them at such unseasonable hours; for most of them that were not tricky were found lying down resting themselves, which is the very thing they ought to do, until five or six o'clock in the morning; for, be it remembered, this is the season of the year that race horses are allowed to rest, and enjoy themselves. But if it should still be thought necessary to divide the time of feeding and dressing, with a view to employ or amuse them, perhaps the better way would be, instead of shutting up the stables at eight o'clock at night, to shut them up at nine, and open them again in the morning at five, that is, should there be any horses in the stables disposed to such habits or tricks as have been noticed; for certain it is, horses will occasionally teach each other bad habits.

But to return from this digression to the month of November. In the commencement of this month, the mornings may be somewhat mo-

derately warm and dry, and then the horses may be out as early as nine o'clock; but, as the month advances, the days get shorter, the mornings get colder, and the weather is becoming more uncertain, the winds are frequently high, and it is often wet over head; the time therefore of the horses going out in the morning progressively gets later, indeed the hour of their going to exercise in winter can hardly be said to be generally determined; but, when all favourable circumstances concur, ten o'clock in the morning is the most convenient hour for the horses to go out at this season of the year.

The clothing of the horses, either in or out of the stables, should, at all times, be paid the strictest attention to, by increasing or diminishing their clothes, according as the temperature of the atmosphere may vary; and, as the clothing of race horses differs materially from that of horses in common use, I shall make a few remarks on this subject.—The clothes the horses sleep in at night and stand in during the day are usually called their standing clothes; these consist of the old check clothes, and such of the blanket-like sort of sheets, that, from use, have

become too much soiled, and too thin to be put under the exercise clothes for the horses to go out in. The latter consist of the best sort of check clothes, under which are placed (sufficient in quantity) the most warm blanket-like sort of sheets (see the different descriptions of clothing, and their use, in Volume the 1st, Chapter the 9th).

When the horses are stripped in the morning of their standing clothes, they are thrown over the tops of the racks, until the horses are dressed, when the standing or exercise clothing is put on; but which of the two will depend on the appearance of the day. Let us, by way of example, suppose that it rains when the stables are first opened; the groom, being anxious not to miss a day of going out with his horses, regulates the duties of the stable as I have already noticed; and while the boys are dressing the horses, he goes out into the yard to see if there is any likelihood of the morning clearing up; if not, he returns to the stables, and when the horses are dressed, he orders the boys to re-clothe them in their standing clothes; all the other before-mentioned duties being performed, a handful of hay may be given the horses, for them to pick at or amuse themselves with. The groom locking

up the stable, goes into his house to breakfast, and the boys into the hall to take theirs. The former, still being desirous to get the horses out, again goes out as before into the yard, to make his observations on the weather, which if not cleared up by eleven o'clock, he orders the horses' water to be got ready. The head lad, with the boys, arrange this matter; but the former must take care to see that the water as ordered for each horse is sufficient in quantity, as also that the chill is sufficiently taken off. The horses having all had their water, are again stripped and well dressed. As the stalls of race horses are roomy, and as the horses in dressing range about a great deal in them, they do, by those exertions, give to themselves a certain degree of exercise, which not only excites some warmth in them, but moderately circulates the blood and fluids of their bodies.

The horses being dressed, they are re-clothed in their standing clothes, and the hoods and rubbers are thrown over their quarters. Their legs are now to be well rubbed for at least twenty minutes, as they have most likely to stop in for the day. Friction to their legs for this period is highly essential; indeed, it may be considered as a

local sort of exercise to them. The feeding the horses, the setting fair their beds, and locking up the stables at the mid-day stable hours take place, allowing for any thing extra to be done, at the times I have already directed. The stable hours are the same as in the preceding month. If the stables are shut up at one o'clock, they are to be opened again at four; but if shut up at two o'clock, they are to be opened again at five, when the setting fair the stables, the watering and dressing the horses, and particularly the rubbing of their legs take place, as have already been noticed, and the stables are again locked up until eight o'clock. On their again being opened, the same process takes place at this hour at night as I have mentioned for the same stable hour in the preceding month, with, however, two exceptions,—the one is, it being a wet day, and the horses not having been out, the groom is to allow the boys more time to rub their horses' legs; the other is, as the horses have not had their usual exercise for the day, so as to increase the action of their bowels, and thereby promote their digestion, the groom should give each of them, the last thing at night, a luke-warm mash; this is a clean, cool, and relaxing sort of diet, and should be given on such occasions as I have here di-

rected; indeed, this is a sort of food which should be had recourse to on winter nights, with craving horses that are out of training, as often as twice or three times a week, if the weather be such as to prevent them from going to their regular daily exercise. The horses having had their hay given them, the boys that sleep in the stable, having previously had their suppers, now go to bed; and at about nine o'clock the groom should lock the stable door for the night.

Having made my observations on the arrangements relative to the treatment of the horses and the regularity of the stables, and on the horses stopping in on a wet day, I shall now proceed to state what are the requisites to be attended to, when the horses go to exercise on a dry day. The feeding the horses, and the duties of the stable will be the same as have already been noticed for the month of October; but now, as the weather gets colder, so in proportion must the clothing of the horses be increased, as well when they are standing in the stables, as when they have to go out to exercise. Indeed, so changeable is the climate of England, that this attention to clothing is not only necessary now, in winter, but at all times and seasons of the year,

and more particularly so in the spring; for it is, as I have before observed, at this season of the year that race horses are very subject to fall amiss in coughs and colds, or, what is much worse, to get severe attacks of the distemper, from which many of them are not only ill for the greater part of the spring, but, what is very common, their constitutions suffer so much afterwards, from the effects of the complaint, as to render them useless for the greater part of the racing season. This, therefore, shews how necessary it is, not only for grooms to attend strictly to the clothing of their horses, but also, to prevent their horses from falling amiss, to be most particularly attentive to the ventilating of their stables, agreeably to the various changes of the atmosphere (see Vol. I. Chap. 3, on Ventilation). The morning being dry over-head, the horses are got ready to go out, being comfortably clothed; next their skins they should have their soft, warm blankets, which should be long enough to reach from the middle or near the top of the horse's neck, to the top of his tail, and they should be broad enough to lap well under his belly, for I have a great dislike to a race horse's belly being wet; which would otherwise frequently happen, as the water will occasionally lie in the vales or

hollows of some downs for a few days in winter, that is, if there has previously been much rain. My objection to a horse's belly being uncovered and exposed to wet in winter is, that the horse would naturally be cold and uncomfortable in this part, and would most likely catch cold from it; and when he returns to the stable, in dressing, his belly would have to be rubbed perfectly dry, and the rubbing of him here for any length of time, if he is an irritable horse to dress, annoys and puts him very much out of temper—even this last-mentioned circumstance alone is quite sufficient to sanction the covering the belly of the horse when at exercise in the winter. But, to return again to the clothing, in addition to the rugs, quarter-pieces, and sheets, is to be added a sufficient portion of check clothing, as occasion may require. The saddles, bridles, and hoods being put on the horses, they are now ready to go out; but, in case of its being a very windy morning, it would be advisable to put on their breast sweaters to keep their other clothes snugly down in front, and, for the same purpose of keeping them down behind, their quarter-strings are of course to be put on, or, if the groom approves of it better, he may have some pieces of binding temporarily put on to the quarter-pieces, by way of cruppers.

The horses being properly clothed, the boys mount them, and ride them out of the stables into the yard; if, from bad weather the horses have been lying by for a day or two, it would be advisable to have them out earlier than usual. The first part of their exercise is, of course, that of walking, and which should at first invariably take place in the stable-yard. In summer, when horses are in strong work, it may not be necessary for them to walk here longer than until the saddles are settled to their backs, or until some of them have done setting up their backs. But, during winter, it is often necessary for them to walk in the yard for a considerable time, perhaps for an hour; for, should they, as I have just observed, been lying idle for a day or two, they would most of them have become very fresh and hearty, and were they in this state to be ridden out from the stables immediately on to the downs, one or two of the most hearty would certainly begin their gambols, and which would set all the rest a-going at theirs; the consequence of this would be, that some of the bad riders would get thrown, from which I have occasionally known both boys and horses to be seriously injured. Therefore, to prevent such accidents from occurring,

the horses should walk, shut up in the yard, for as long a time as the groom may think it necessary to steady them, and prevent their becoming tricky. Those precautions having been taken, the yard door is opened, and the horses are walked out; being followed by the groom on his hack, they proceed to the downs to exercise. But, to make all as safe as we can, we will mention another little precaution that the groom may advantageously take when his horses are very hearty from having lain by:—the horses having been, as we have just described, walking in the yard for at least an hour, by which time they will have emptied themselves, stretched their legs, and have got somewhat off their calfish tricks, the groom should, before he lets the horses out of the yard, give his orders to the boy leading the gallop, by saying to him—"Mind, Frank, they are rather hearty this morning, (meaning the horses); as soon as you see that all the horses have got as far on the turf as will give them good foot-hold, keep fast your own horse's head, and go right away up the long gallop, at a good steady even pace." The groom, in speaking to the rest of the boys, says—"Mind, you all keep fast hold of your horses' heads, and, in following Frank, be sure you all

keep well up in your places; do not let me see one of you loose, or lay out of your ground in any part of the gallop." This mode of galloping horses out of training is only to be had recourse to with a view to steadying them, which it mostly does; and, further, it is not of course intended to include, in this gallop, either yearlings or two year olds.

Generally speaking, the parts of the downs the groom should select for his horses to exercise on will depend on the uncertain or settled state of the weather; if the mornings are likely to be wet, the nearer to the stables the exercise ground can be had the better, as, in case of rain coming on suddenly, the horses' clothes would not be much wetted. If the wind is high, and the mornings cold, the warmest situations should be chosen for the horses to walk in, as the vales, or indeed any situations that may afford the most shelter.

Whatever exercise may be deemed necessary, the training groom is to give his orders according to the different effects he intends such exercise to produce on the horses he may have under his care, at this season of the year. But such other exercise as is necessary to invigorate the whole system of the horse, and bring the surface of his

body into a proper state, as also to give strength and firmness to his muscles and tendons, we shall fully explain when we put the horses into training. All we wish to say of exercise, on the present occasion, is to speak of the effects we wish to be produced on the horses, as regards their tempers and constitutions; which may now be pretty well understood, from the publications of the various authors that have written on this subject. It is exercise, when properly administered, that will create an appetite, promote digestion, and assist in converting the food into nourishment; and it also promotes all the secretions and excretions, and gives room for a fresh supply of food. In fact, unless horses are regularly exercised, or kept in situations where they can exercise themselves, they cannot possibly continue in health. Let us now return to the exercising of the different classes of horses we have just left out on the downs.

The first class to be noticed are those that feed voraciously, and when out of training put up flesh very fast; their exercise should therefore be such as will not only keep them in health, but will also keep them from getting into a plethoric state: although it is absolutely ne-

cessary that all race horses that are to go into training should be well fed and have plenty of flesh on them; yet those among them, that do not remain constantly in boxes, and that are gluttonously inclined, should in winter, when out of training, have such walking exercise and occasional long slow gallops as will keep them in a moderate state as to flesh. If the groom regulates these exercises as I have advised, he will not only keep them healthy and right as to flesh, but he will obtain other very essential points, such as keeping his horses legs cool and in shape, and their tendons will receive sufficient action to keep them strong and well braced, and approaching rather near to what they are when in training. These are circumstances that should be strictly attended to, for it will not do to allow such horses as these to become from indulgence too much relaxed in their constitutional or mechanical system, and more particularly if they have to come to post early in the spring.

The second class of horses are those already noticed as being in the medium; by this I mean, that, although they feed very well, they do not, generally speaking, put up flesh to the

extreme the first-mentioned class of horses do, but being, as many of them mostly are, very hearty, they are often inclined to gambol and play about when in the string, at walking exercise; and although they should be fresh and happy in themselves at this season of the year, yet they should not be allowed to repeat their gambols too often, or some of them will become tricky, and perhaps, as I have before noticed, throw the boys. Therefore, when walking exercise is not found sufficient to steady those of them that are so very playfully inclined, recourse must be had occasionally to giving them long steady gallops.

The third class of horses are the delicate and flighty—many of them become alarmed at the most trifling causes; these the groom had better send to some quiet part of the downs, and there let them be exercised singly. The sort of exercise these horses require is principally that of walking. Now the groom must bear in mind, that, by this exercise, there are two points he is to endeavour to obtain in favour of these horses —one is, to steady them and give them confidence in themselves; the other, to give them an appetite for their food, as well as to induce

them to drink. I confess it is difficult to get them to do either the one or the other; yet it is the only method likely to answer, at least the only one I am acquainted with.

Supposing the horses to have done their exercise, the whole of them are of course to return to the stables, where the business of the day is to go on, as has been already sufficiently described. One other little circumstance must be mentioned: the mornings at the season of the year we have been alluding to, will, of course, occasionally be wet, which will prevent the horses from being taken out to exercise at their accustomed hour. But, that no opportunity may be lost, should the day be likely to clear up by twelve o'clock, the boys ought to dine half an hour earlier than usual, so that the groom may, if the weather permit, be out with his horses at two or about three o'clock in the day, and give them the exercise now they should have had in the morning; and regulate the stables in the evening and at night accordingly. I have repeatedly spoken of the taking down and putting up of the bales, as also the setting fair of the stables, which is to be understood by the reader as invariably to take

place before and after the feeding and dressing of the horses; the bales, in particular, must not on any account be left down, unless it is during the time the groom and boys are in the stables.

During the month of December the same regulations and treatment are to be observed with respect to the boys and horses as we have already directed for the preceding month.

CHAPTER VII.

STRAW BEDS FOR THE HORSES TO EXERCISE UPON IN FROSTY AND SNOWY WEATHER, STATING UNDER WHAT CIRCUMSTANCES IT MAY OCCASIONALLY BE NECESSARY TO ALTER THE BETTING.

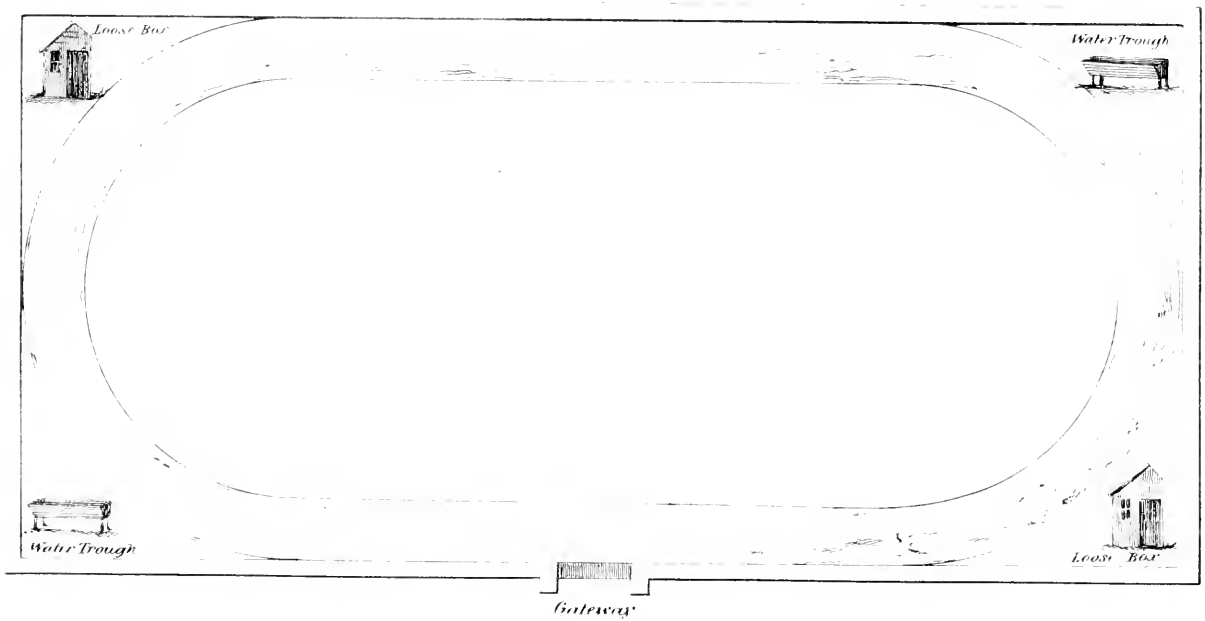
Now that the racing season is over, and the winter commenced, it becomes proper to describe the arrangements necessary to meet the inconveniences that may arise at this season of the year from the severity of the frost; as, in a large racing establishment, or neighbourhood, there are mostly some young ones, and occasionally a few old ones, that may have to come to post early in the spring. Indeed, the training of young ones may be said to be going on gradually the whole of the winter; and the old ones, that are early engaged, must also (if of strong constitutions) commence their physic in the beginning of January.

In this month, when the frost sets in, the horses are prevented from going out to exercise on the downs, consequently recourse must be had to exercise them in rather a more artificial way. The arrangement for this purpose, for the want of a better, is generally made in the yard fronting the stables; such a yard is described in Vol. I. as 180 feet by 354, and which may answer for the forming of the straw beds tolerably well; indeed, I have often had to ride horses slowly in their sweats in more confined situations than the one I have there noticed. But it is my duty to state what I consider to be a sufficiently commodious place for the horses to be exercised in with safety, without considering the expense, rather than run the risk of having an accident happen to a valuable horse or two by being exercised in too contracted a space.

The sort of place we would recommend for the above purpose should be a long well-fenced paddock, adjacent to the stables, about 200 yards in length by 70 in breadth, with a wall round it six feet high, entered by a boarded gate, of the same height, by seven feet in breadth. The space to be taken up round the inside of the walls of the paddock, on which the beds of the

long straw-like sort of dung is to be formed, should be five yards in breadth; and, if arranged agreeably to the annexed Plate, the corners being left well out, as laid down in the Plan, the turns at the top and bottom, or each end, of the paddock, will be safe and easy for the horses to make, if proper boys are put up to ride them at such times as they may be going to sweat here. It is to be observed, that, where there is a large establishment of horses, there is also, if it is not too often removed, a sufficient portion of long dung always at hand for the making the sort of beds we want in the paddock, which is to be of the breadth, as just noticed, of five yards. This artificial surface is to be thick enough, not only to give the horses good foot-hold, but also to prevent any concussion taking place in their feet when they have to sweat here from the hardness of the ground. In case of a fall of snow, there is nothing more to be done than for the boys to brush the snow off the middle of the bed; and when the latter gets much worn from use, the edges of it may be brushed into the centre, and, if necessary, more long dung can be added. The bed may now be supposed to be properly arranged for the horses to commence their walking exercise upon, which they should daily continue for a

PLAN OF THE STRAW BEDS.



few days, or until the dung, of which the bed is composed, has become, by use, short enough for the horses to go their sweats on; and which is to be preferred to their sweating here when the dung is fresh put on. The paddock I have here arranged will answer the purpose very well; and on the breaking up of the frost, it may be well manured, so that by the first of May there would be some fine spring grass. If the paddock were to be temporarily fenced off in the centre, and if, at a trifling expense, there were erected in one of the corners at each end a loose house, and at the other corners a small wooden trough for water, two good paddocks would be formed, in each of which might be turned out a mare and foal, or three or four weanlings, or a yearling, or any horse that may be on the premises requiring to be refreshed.

Let us now proceed to describe the great advantage of our straw bed. We will first suppose, what is very commonly the case, that the frost has not yet set in, and that those horses which have to come out to run early in the spring, have been got through their physic by about the 26th of January. After they have had a few days' walking exercise, so as to recover from the effects

of their medicine, they will begin to take such gallops as will sufficiently forward them to commence their first slow gentle sweats; and those that may have to sweat often may have got over two or three of them on the downs by the 10th or 15th of February, by which time we will say a frost sets in; this then obliges us to have immediate recourse to the straw bed in the paddock, for the time the frost may last. The horses on the present occasion have been got ready in the morning much as usual, the only little difference to be attended to is in the clothing and booting of them. With regard to the former, they must all be warmly and comfortably clothed for walking or galloping exercise; and the adding or diminishing of the quantity of their clothes on sweating days must depend, as has already been mentioned, on the ages and constitutions of each of them; for it is by exercise being properly administered, and particularly as regards sweating them, that they are kept right as to flesh during the severity of the frosty weather.

Let us suppose that our horses have been got ready in the morning, that is to say, have been fed and dressed, and their body clothes and saddles put on; the boys go out of the stables, the

groom locks the door, and the horses are left to stand with their heads up and muzzles on. The groom and boys, having got their breakfasts, return, and again open the stables; the horses' bridles and hoods are now put on, the best riding boys mount them, and they are now ridden out to the paddock to be exercised. The exercise they are first to commence with is to be that of walking; this is not only for the purpose of their stretching their legs and emptying themselves, but to let them see the sort of place they are in, and to make them acquainted with the turns at the top and bottom of the paddock, as well also as to get the straw bed in rather a firm or settled state, before the horses go a faster pace on it. In frosty, as in windy weather, they are very apt to be playsome, and on any strange object suddenly catching their attention to be alarmed, and if one or two in front of the string start or fly out, the rest are almost certain to follow their example; but, as the best riding boys are to be put upon them, and the groom at all times is present, there is not much danger to be apprehended from those circumstances. On the first day the horses should be walked here until they are steady, and have become somewhat familiar with the place. After

they have been a sufficient time at exercise, as for an hour or more, they may take their water (with the chill well taken off), which the groom has previously ordered to be got ready in their buckets, and placed on the top of the troughs in the stable-yard. On their return to the paddock, after being watered, the boys should be ordered to keep fast hold of their heads, merely to collect them a little; and then, by pressing with their legs, or, if necessary, striking them with their heels, to move them on briskly for a few minutes in a *very, very* slow gallop, merely for the purpose of what is called "warming their water," or otherwise preventing them from becoming chilly after taking it, when they are to be pulled up into a walk, and continue at this sort of exercise until the groom orders them into the stable; where, after being fed and dressed, they are to remain for the day.

The horses having now become a little familiar with the paddock and straw bed, on the next and following days (if fine over head) they are to be exercised here during the frost, as they would be were they to go on the downs, only with this difference, that of making allowances for the confined situation in which they

have to exercise in, and the sort of surface they have to go over, and then regulate the pace accordingly.

Whenever the day comes round for any of the horses to do their sweats here, they are to be set and got ready as usual on such occasions. On their coming into the paddock, they are to walk for a short time, the groom having given orders to the boys to keep fast their horses' heads, so that they may be collected in their stride; the head lad on a hack should be in front of them, to rate them, not only at a very even pace, but at a *very*, very slow one: and the length of time it will take to sweat them here will not be for a longer period, or at least very triflingly so, than if they were sweating very slowly on the downs; as it is well known by those who have made their observations on such matters, that horses will sweat more readily, either in clothes or out of them, in winter, in cold frosty weather, than they would do by the same exertion when the weather is more open, and feeling in some trifling degree warmer. This circumstance is said to be occasioned from the air in frosty weather being a greater non-conductor of heat. The groom is to observe how his horses are going on, and be

guided by the usual circumstances, as to the length of time it may be necessary for the horses to keep on at the gentle sweating pace mentioned; and which may be ascertained by his observing when the sweat begins to issue forth from the fore-quarters, passing on to the top of the fore-arm a little below the clothing; and the same observations are to be made on the hind-quarters, as at the top and inside of the thighs. On these appearances being present, the horses should be pulled up, and ridden into the stable, and here treated the same as if they had been sweated on the downs. And as regards their going out to take their sweating gallop, if they are well clothed, that is, comfortably so, there is not that danger of their catching cold after sweating as grooms were formerly so very apprehensive of. They may then go into the paddock again and take a short gallop, and after their having been pulled up from it, let them walk round once or twice, so that they may not come into the stable too much heated, which may occasion some of them, as we have already noticed, to break out into a second sweat; they are now to be finished in all respects as usual, and to be allowed to remain in the stable for the day.

The different advantages derived from the use of a straw bed, in a paddock such as has been described, are, that the horses may do their exercise and sweats with some degree of safety during the continuance of a frost; and should it continue for a long period, as until about the middle of March, and perhaps no signs then of its immediately breaking up, under those circumstances may be given, to assist in lightening the bodies and cooling the legs of some of the strong gluttonous horses, a couple of doses of physic, which the groom may or ought to have kept in reserve, as we have elsewhere advised. If matters are arranged as we have directed, the horses will be kept from becoming too much loaded in their muscular system, and the tendons of their legs, from the exercise they have continually been taking, will retain their strength and tone. The only thing the horses will be deficient in will be wind; but when the frost breaks, and they have to go again on to the downs, this deficiency is soon remedied by the brushing gallops they will have to take to prepare them for their sweats here.

We have said, by way of example, that the frost sets in on the fifteenth of February, and we

will suppose it breaks up on the tenth of March. Now, should the first spring meeting at Newmarket, or elsewhere, not commence, as is sometimes the case, until near the end of April, we shall have seven weeks for our horses to be on the downs at their usual exercise, after leaving their paddocks, which will give us as much time as will be necessary to bring the most idle of them in their best form to post. But, on the other hand, should the frost continue until towards the end of March, and the spring meeting not commence at Newmarket till the end of April, there would then be five weeks left, which would be an ample portion of time for the young ones to do what further work may be necessary for them before they come out to post. But if the spring meeting commences, as is sometimes the case, at the end of March, or early in April, there might not be time to get the first class horses sufficiently well ready to meet their engagements; this, fairly speaking, would alter the betting in the market, as most people who are engaged in turf matters know well enough that strong constitutioned horses coming out short of work to run, are not very likely to be winners; the second class, the hearty horses, requiring less work than those of the first, the

change in the betting would naturally be in favour of these, or perhaps of one or two of the best of the third class, that may have to come but short lengths in their races.

CHAPTER VIII.

INSTRUCTIONS TO BE GIVEN BY THE TRAINING GROOM TO HALF A DOZEN OF HIS LIGHTEST AND BEST RIDING BOYS, SUCH AS WILL HAVE TO RECEIVE HIS PRINCIPAL OR SECRET ORDERS, WHEN THEY ARE PUT UP TO RIDE HORSES OF A PARTICULAR DESCRIPTION.

Boys, as I have elsewhere observed, are most of them, more or less, tricky; and on no account should they ever be trusted with race horses by themselves, either in or out of the stables. I beg strongly to recommend these precautions being taken by my readers, yet not more strongly than my own early experience has warranted; for I confess that when a boy I have, when opportunities offered, been almost as mischievous as my companions in playing off very dangerous tricks with horses. The best course for the groom to adopt, is, to select for instruction from the number of

boys he may have (perhaps fifteen or twenty) half a dozen of the lightest of them, that are the best conducted, best riders, and least inclined to talk. The course of discipline I would recommend is, by mild and civil treatment, progressively to make them acquainted with their duty, so as at last to thoroughly understand such secret or scientific orders as he may have occasion to give them. It is true, that boys should be kept in the dark; but this is not at all times practicable, especially with those that are good riders, as these are often wanted to ride horses under particular circumstances.

A groom should take occasional opportunities of talking to those boys in whom he has often to place confidence, and endeavour to instil into their minds, how necessary it is for them to be secret with regard to what is going on in the training of the horses; and to point out to them the consequences that may arise from their being too communicative with boys of other stables, or, indeed, any persons they may come in contact with in the neighbourhood in which they may live, and more particularly with strange persons whom they may meet when they are travelling

with their horses on the road. He should talk to them on the subject of such orders as he is aware he shall now and then have to give them, and point out to them the causes and effects of such orders, especially as to how they are to ride some particular horses; and further, he should explain the consequences that may result from their deviating from the orders given them. He should occasionally, when talking to those boys in whom he will often have to place such confidence, mention the very essential parts that a good riding boy should be well acquainted with; one of the first of those is, that of his being a good judge of pace, so as to be able to economize the powers of the horse agreeably to the state of his condition, with that of the state and length of the ground over which he may have to ride different horses, so as not to over-mark any of them, but rather to take care to have a little left in them to finish or come home with. It is the severity of the pace that horses go in long lengths that is the cause of their being over-marked, perhaps at a time when they may be a little too fat in their insides, from their having been kept too short of work. Now, it is on such occasions as the above, that the

groom should caution his boys, and endeavour to make them acquainted with the different paces, as that of the slow-gallop which the horses take to set them on their legs, and which is had recourse to on hot summer evenings; and next, the pace termed "half speed;" then the pace termed "three parts speed."—"You must mind, boys, on no account, ever to increase or decrease from the orders I give you, as to how you are to rate your horses. To find out the different degrees of paces, you must all of you attend to Charles, (the head lad), when he is upon any horse leading a gallop or sweat for you, as you will always hear the orders I give him on those occasions; and I will take care he shall be up sufficiently often to rate you, till the clearest headed boy among you can distinguish one from another of each of the above-mentioned paces; whichever of you can first discover this, I shall put up to lead the gallop of a class of horses himself; and if he is attentive and steady on horseback, I shall put him forward, and let him ride in public some of the light weights."

Again, the groom should point out to them the symptoms of distress that horses will shew

in going along, should the pace they are going be too fast for them. In speaking to his confidential boys, he says, " If any one of you find that the horse you are riding, from not being in very good condition, cannot keep his place in the string, and should reach out his head as he is going along, as if he wanted more liberty of rein, it denotes he is tiring; you must instantly take a pull, and hold him together for a little way; never mind the other horses passing you; let the horse you ride that may be distressed come quietly on after them. On the other hand, if you act otherwise than I tell you, by persevering in the pace, your horse will soon shew further symptoms of distress; he will, to relieve himself, take a heavy sigh, and, in his doing so, you will find he will spread your knees out. You must mind, boys, never to persevere with the pace of any horse you are riding, either in his gallop or sweat, until he becomes so distressed as to cause him to give the sigh I have just mentioned; if it comes to this with him, he will require a much longer time to be held together to recover his wind, than he would have done in the first instance, when he stretched out his head. Therefore,

mind, always take a pull in time, and never let it come to the last-described symptom of distress with any horse. Nor must any of you, on any account, get up your ash plant, even to flourish it over your own head or that of a hearty horse; and this more particularly stands good in your riding of young ones, as yearlings or two year olds. The only instance in which you may, now and then, have occasion to raise your plant, is, when any of you may be riding a craving, idle, game sort of horse; such a horse will not only bear a blow patiently, but will answer to it by increasing his pace; and it is necessary that such an one should at times be roused in coming along with him, so as to make him keep his place in going on in his sweat, and more particularly when he comes to that part of the ground where he is to be made to further extend his stride, as when he is about to finish his last two or three sweats."

Such are the discourses, when opportunities offer, that grooms should have with their boys, so as to bring them not only to understand the orders given them, but to understand such orders in as few words as possible. For, bye-and-bye,

when he comes to the training of horses that have been some time in strong work, he will most likely have occasion to call out to some one boy or other, who may be riding rather an unruly horse, to tell him what he is to do, to enable him to manage his horse under any particular circumstance; as, for example, a horse may be making rather too free with himself in leading a gallop, and the groom may see it necessary to speak to the boy, to give him confidence, by calling out to him as he may be passing, "Sit well down, Tom, get your feet before you, and keep fast hold of your horse's head." To another boy, that may be on an idle horse, the groom may say, "Get at your horse's head, and twist him along, Frank." It will, therefore, be better to give names to the half dozen boys in question, which may be as follows—Francis, Samuel, James, Henry, Thomas, and William. We, when speaking to these boys, by way of briefness, will call them Frank, Sam, Jem, Harry, Tom, and Bill. The orders to be given to any of the other boys that may be but inferior riders, and not likely to improve, are merely to tell them to keep their places in the string, and follow the horses in front of them.

It may be considered by some of my readers, that I have been rather too minute on the subject of exercise boys; but, by others, as those who train horses, and have known the want of good riding boys, and are best capable of appreciating their value, my minuteness will, I hope, be readily excused. To prevent the groom from encountering any difficulty from a boy unexpectedly leaving him, the better way to obviate such an inconvenience, and hold the boys in some little check, would be to keep one or two spare ones on the premises, that know tolerably well what they are about.

Having spoken of how boys that have to ride race horses in their exercise are to be disciplined, so as to make them useful to their employers, we will now describe the sort of man we wish our jockey to be, and the necessary requisites he should be in possession of. His height should be five feet five, he should be proportionably well made, and very strong on horseback, have good nerve, good hands, with a cool, clear head; added to this, he should be bold, ready, active, and as quick of apprehension as occasion may require of him, so that he may know well when

to take any momentary advantage that may offer in any race in which he may be riding; and he is, of course, to be a secret, sober, honest man, and an experienced good rider, in riding both young ones and old ones, in trials as well as in races, under all the various circumstances in which they take place; in addition to these, he should know well how to win any race he is put up to ride in, that is, if he is on the best horse in the party; and he should do this without discovering the whole of the properties such a horse may possess. If our jockey can do these things snugly, it is all we will ask of him, as the best one among them can do no more.

I feel a little at a loss how to address the trainer and jockey. Mr. Holcroft, in his interesting Memoirs, observing upon the change of manners, says, that there were no *Misters* among training grooms and jockeys in his time; nor, indeed, were there in my juvenile days, and I came several years after the above celebrated author. However, such, it appears, has since been the progress made in the march of intellect, that most of the above-mentioned persons at the present day are, I believe, when spoken

of by their exercise boys, or spoken to by persons on business, who may be employed in bringing the necessary supplies to a racing establishment, addressed as Sirs. Indeed, so respectable a man as Mr. Robinson, late trainer at Newmarket, and many other trainers as well as jockeys that we could name, may fairly be entitled to those ceremonious distinctions of etiquette from such persons as those above mentioned.

There has of late years been a further change in the style of addressing trainers and jockeys by the noblemen and gentlemen of the turf themselves: in speaking to the trainers and jockeys of their establishment, and in whom they repose a familiar sort of confidence, they address them by their surnames, instead of their Christian names; and, on some occasions, as that of sending a verbal message by an exercise-boy, they generally add the title of Misters. This change of manners, now infused among the above class of persons, adds to their respectability, and appears to us to be justly fair, at least, towards those among them who have proved themselves to be worthy of high trust; for in very high trust

they certainly are, at least those of them who may have to train and ride such race horses as may be deeply or heavily engaged; and as we shall consider our own private jockey to be a man of high integrity, we shall class him with those of the Misters, and call him Mister Day.

CHAPTER IX.

WALKING EXERCISE.

To lay down all the precise rules for exercising the different descriptions of horses, would occasion the extending of this work to a voluminous size, a thing of all others I very much wish to avoid. Yet I shall endeavour to lay down, in the most explicit manner I possibly can, the different sorts of exercise that should be adopted, according to the circumstances that are likely to occur in the training of a number of race horses, with reference to the effects such exercises may produce on horses of different tempers and constitutions. In this chapter I confine myself alone to the various uses or advantages to be derived from walking exercise being properly administered to horses, according as they may require it.

This exercise first commences in the morning in the stable-yard. The horses should all walk round here, as long as the groom considers it is requisite, which will depend on the season of the year, as also the state or condition the horses may be in. In winter, should the weather be unfavourable, as frost, their principal exercise will daily be here; but in the summer they walk here only for the purpose of allowing the saddles to get settled to their backs, or rather until some of them may have done setting up their backs. But the time they may have to walk here in winter will depend on whether they are in strong work, as being in training; or whether, from indulgence, they may have become pretty hearty: if they are in the latter state, they will require a longer time to walk here, to steady them, before they are allowed to be walked out on to the downs: unless these precautions are taken, accidents will, as I have already observed, sometimes occur. If horses are in strong work, the walking exercise they have to take in the morning on the downs, previous to taking their gallops, need be but for a very short time; they may walk here in a large circle, merely for the purpose of allowing them to stretch their legs and empty themselves, during which time the groom is to

give his orders to the boys, as to what classes each of their horses are to go into, prior to the whole of them going up their gallops. Their gallops being done, they may return to the usual walking ground, where they are to walk until they are perfectly cool and collected; they then proceed to the troughs to water, and then, after taking a short slow gallop, they are walked into the stable; this, generally speaking, is the usual or daily arrangement of their walking exercise. But to what further extent this sort of exercise may occasionally be continued must depend on a variety of circumstances, such as the physical or mechanical powers of different horses. The walking exercise formerly given to horses gluttonously inclined was often carried to too great an extent, and more particularly after they had been sweating. For my own part, I am not partial to more of this sort of exercise than is absolutely necessary.

Walking exercise will be found requisite, first, to allow to all horses time for emptying themselves, to give flexibility to their muscular system, and keep fine their legs; and more particularly to those among them that may have to be often in strong work. Secondly, to assist in steadying

those horses which may be too hearty, and full of their gambols. Thirdly, to give delicate flighty horses an appetite for their food, as well as to assist in steadying them.

To describe the precise time that may be required for horses when in training to be at walking exercise, to accomplish the purposes I have just mentioned, would be too tedious; suffice it, therefore, to say, that some horses may not require to be at this sort of exercise more than half an hour, some others an hour or an hour and a half; on some occasions two hours may be given to very delicate flighty horses, for the purpose of increasing their appetites and steadying them. Horses that are in strong work, when kept too long at walking exercise, get careless and become stale and weary on their legs. There is no greater proof of this, than that when they are in the stables, and have been dressed and fed, the stables are no sooner shut up, than they immediately lay themselves down at full length, and thus they lie stretched out until the stables are again opened. Now, generally speaking, unless horses are over fatigued in their work, they have no natural propensity to lie down more than six or eight hours out of the four-and-twenty.

Whenever horses may be at walking exercise on a course, up between the rails, the groom is to bear in mind never to let them turn to come back, until they have passed the winning-post for the usual length at which the horses are pulled up after running, previous to their going home to the stables. This rule stands good when horses take their gallops on a course, and the same when they may have to sweat over one.

To conclude this subject, we will suppose a number of horses (say a dozen) to have had their physic, and to have been long enough at walking exercise, to have given sufficient strength and tone to the tendons of their legs, so as to allow them with safety to commence their gallops; the use and effects of which we will speak of in the next chapter.

CHAPTER X.

GALLOPING EXERCISE.

The gallops given to race horses in the morning, when they are in training, is to a certain extent for the purpose of improving their wind, and increasing the strength of their muscular and tendonous powers. Yet this sort of exercise must be regulated, as to pace and length, just according as it may be found to affect different horses, as it produces very different effects on some to what it does on others. Horses, therefore, in an early state of their condition, should begin their gallops very gradually. Now, as the trainer will have to increase the pace and length of their gallops, previous to the horses beginning their sweats, he will soon be able to judge how each horse is likely to become affected by

this sort of exercise, as it is not at all an uncommon occurrence for gallops to produce much more severe effects on some horses than even long slow sweats would produce on others. It must, therefore, be ascertained what sort of exercise is best likely to suit each horse, or class of horses. The pace and length horses may go in their gallops may very well be regulated by their eyes and constitutions, and the state of their condition; yet these are not the whole of the criterions by which the groom is to form his judgment: he is attentively to look at and examine his horses when they are stripped and being dressed; and if he should observe any horse drawing suddenly fine (losing flesh), or if he perceives that any horse has become alarmed at this sort of exercise, the daily repetition of his gallops should immediately be discontinued, and a different manner of treating him adopted; walking exercise should be substituted for that of galloping, and should be continued until he has again put up flesh, and become reconciled in his temper. When that he is again put to go up a gallop, he should go by himself, for the length that suits him, or, if his disposition will allow of its being done, he may follow the horses,

being last in the string, the groom ordering his boy to pull him up after he has gone perhaps half a mile. But even this short gallop is only to be taken occasionally, as it may suit the horse; and when he has taken it, he may be sent to walk by himself, or if it is thought he will be happy by following the other horses at walking exercise, he may do so; the method we shall take to bring him stout for the length he may have to run, we shall state in due time.

The gallops given mornings and evenings (but more particularly in the mornings) to horses in training, are principally for the following purposes: —First, to teach them how to go up a gallop, and to bring them into a knowledge of their own stride. Secondly, by increasing the pace to improve their wind. Thirdly, to steady those that may be too hearty. Fourthly, to prevent those that are gluttonously inclined from putting up flesh too quickly from one sweating day to the other. These objects are to be effected by occasionally increasing the length of the galloping ground, (for the length of the different gallops, and the description of ground on which they should be chosen, see Vol. I. Chap. 10), as circumstances

may require, or according as the ages and constitutions of different horses may vary.

The groom must bear in mind, that he is, on no account, to allow of his boys being out of his sight while they are riding the horses at any sort of exercise. Boys are tricky; at least, they were so when I was one, and if they are at any time allowed to take horses up their gallops alone, they will suddenly spring and spurt them along here and there; this not only makes young ones unsteady, but they get into the habit of striding too quick and hurrying themselves. Horses in training are not to be hurried in any part of their exercise or work; they are at all times to go a fair even pace, and when it does become necessary to increase the pace in the concluding of a gallop or sweat, it should be properly put into practice by the groom ordering it to be gradually increased from any one point or object on the ground to that of another, and which I shall presently take an opportunity of mentioning. Among the boys of a racing establishment, there are invariably some of them that ride much better than others; and from among those that are light and ride the best, the groom

should take care to select those to lead the gallop as have been accustomed to do this sort of thing. Indeed there should always be, at the time the horses are at exercise, an experienced riding boy (in whom the groom has confidence) placed in front of any class of horses, however small. From the repeated orders the groom is in the habit of giving to an intelligent boy who leads the gallop, as to how he is to rate the horse he is on, he will soon be brought to be a tolerable good judge of pace, and from custom, in the riding of different horses in their exercise, he will know pretty well at what rate any horse he has before ridden is going; and, according to the orders he may receive from the groom, he urges the horse on in the concluding of the gallop to as near the top of the horse's pace as he (the boy) may have been required to do, without drawing the horse quite out, in other words, extending him to the extent of his stride.

Another circumstance to be attended to is, that, among a number of horses in training, there are occasionally some much more difficult to ride than others. Such horses have sagacity enough to discover very quickly the sort of riders

they have on them; they will almost instantly take advantage of those that are bad ones, as they will also of small light boys that may be incapable of holding them, or of forcing them on at such times as it may be necessary for them to go at a breathing pace, as in the concluding of a certain length of their last two or three sweats, or in the last two or three gallops, they will have to take on the two or three last days previous to their coming out to run.

Whenever a groom intends giving any of his horses a good brushing gallop, as perhaps a day or two before sweating, or indeed more particularly at the time I have just mentioned, as when horses are about to finish their work before their races, the groom must bear in mind, that, generally speaking, those that are free goers are much more difficult to be held when going a good pace in company with others, than they would be in going a slow pace when alone; while others that are idle and lurchingly disposed will be quite as difficult to be made go at the pace required of them. Under the above-mentioned circumstances, the groom must change the light or bad riding boys for bigger ones of much more power and experience, who, when they are put up to

ride, are well able, as soon as they have got the horses they are riding well off and settled in their stride, to take a pull and keep them together; those that may be on the class of free goers, (for, as I have repeatedly observed, all horses that have to go a good pace occasionally in their exercise must be classed according to what they are), as well as those that may be on the idle, lurching sort of horses, will, as soon as they have them settled in their stride, get determinedly at them, and not only keep them straight in their gallops as they are going along with them, but will also draw them well out, and continue them on to the end of the gallop at the pace the groom may have ordered them to go. Nor will the additional weight of the bigger boys be of any consequence, at least at the particular time to which I am now alluding, that is, the time the horses are about to finish their work before they come out to run; for, although at this period they have to go faster in their gallops, the length they go in them is somewhat shortened. In fact, it is always the best plan, when horses have to go a telling pace in any part of their exercise or work, if firm and well on their feet and legs, to put up boys of power to ride them, as they not only make them go straight, and keep them

within their stride, but make them do, as to pace, what is necessary they should; and horses go better and more kindly with good riders upon them than when they are ridden by bad or inferior ones, as with those last-mentioned they are apt to take liberties. Unless, as occasion may require, grooms regulate the selection of their boys, as I have directed them to do in respect to the riding of different horses, some of them would get into bad tricks or habits, which it may afterwards be difficult to get them out of. Those among them that may be idle, lurching horses would become cunning, they would, what is termed, "shut up" with bad riders in their gallops and sweats; in other words, they would sulk, and not go in them at the pace they ought. Horses having got into tricks of this sort, it is not only difficult, but often next to impossible, for even a good and determined jockey to rouse them out of such habits at the time they may be running. If a jockey cannot succeed in getting a horse to give his race kindly, the horse will of course be beat. Other horses that pull a little and are rather determined goers, and that may sometimes require to be taken along at a tolerable good pace in their exercise, if on such occasions they are ridden by light boys,

most of them will endeavour to get the advantage of such light weights; if the horses succeed in so doing, they will then go farther and faster than it was intended they should; from these circumstances they soon get to know their speed in their exercise—a sort of thing that should be avoided as much as possible; for, when a horse gets to know his speed in his exercise, it is but seldom he can afterwards be got to struggle well in a severe contested race.

We now come to make our remarks on the classing of horses in their exercise, the arranging of which will depend on a variety of circumstances. First, as to the different ages of the horses. Secondly, as to their physical powers, as regards their stoutness. Thirdly, as to their mechanical powers, as regards their speed. And lastly, as to their tempers; but those that are very irritable cannot well go into any class; these will have to take singly, that is, alone, what little exercise may be required of them.

I have already observed that yearlings are invariably in their own class. Two year olds are to be in theirs; three year olds in theirs; and four year olds in theirs. Five year olds, six, and

aged horses, may be in any class. Yet the reader must bear in mind, that some one or other of the horses we have just classed according to their ages, will occasionally have to be removed from their own class (the yearlings excepted) into that of a senior one, (taking care that the length of the gallop is not too far for the young ones); or a horse or two will have to be removed from a senior class into a junior; but this is merely to ascertain, in some degree, how good the best colt of a class of young ones may be: there is no great difficulty in observing which is the best colt or horse of any class; but it is necessary, if possible, to know in due time how much one colt may be better than others in the same class in which he is. This cannot be accurately known but by a private or public trial, or removing the best colt of a junior into a class of older ones, that are pretty well known; or by putting an older one into a junior class to lead the gallop for them. This brings us to the subject of one horse leading others in their exercise.

The horse that leads others in their gallops or sweats is, of course, the one that goes first in any string or class of horses; and when it is not

intended that horses are to go a fast pace in their exercise, it is not of much consequence what horse leads them, provided he is a kind goer, that is to say, is not inclined in any way to be tricky. But when horses are in strong work, and have to go long lengths at a breathing pace in their gallops and sweats, that the training groom may not be deceived, and that the horse that leads others may not be abused or over-marked, it is necessary that he should be of superior powers, as to speed and stoutness, to those that have to follow him; or, if he is not, the thing may be managed by putting up on the horse a much lighter boy, but then you must take care that the boy is a tolerable good judge of the pace his horse is going. But, if a horse is very superior to the class he is leading, he should have a strong, good riding boy on him, that can rate him at such a fair and even pace as will not be likely to over-mark those that may have to follow him; and more particularly should the horse in question be leading others in their sweats.

It is also to be understood that a horse is not, on every occasion, to be put to lead other horses in their work, just because he is capable

of doing so; if he is too often made use of in this way, he not only becomes stale and slow, but he soon gets below his proper form, and he will, unless he is very placid in his temper, want to be first in every thing, which may not, under all circumstances, be exactly what is required of him; in other words, he becomes difficult to be held when going in company with other horses, not only in his exercise, but what may be of more consequence, in his races; and if he is difficult to be held in those, a jockey may not be able, when riding such a horse, to get him to run agreeably to the orders he (the jockey) may have received from the trainer. It is therefore not only advisable that a horse should not too often lead the gallop for others, but that such horse should be put into a string to follow others; or if a horse cannot be got to do this sort of thing quietly, he should be allowed to go by himself in his gallops.

Further, with regard to selecting a horse to lead others in their work; the training groom of a private establishment has the power of selecting any one he may best approve of; but he must recollect that the horse that leads is in want of the same sort of treatment as those that are

to follow him. The public training groom may sometimes have more difficulties to encounter in selecting a horse for this purpose than the private trainer; as the former may be directed by some of his employers to work their horses by themselves, while others may leave the working of theirs entirely to his better judgment; and as we shall here consider him to be an honest man, the latter arrangement is to be preferred. (See Vol. I. Chap. 21, on the Duties of the Public and Private Training Grooms, and on Jockeys).

We next come to make our remarks on the speed or pace of horses. How much faster some can go than others, in their exercise or running, must depend on a variety of circumstances. First, on their physical powers, as to the strength of their constitutions. Secondly, on their mechanical ones, as to how they may be formed in the length, depth, and breadth of the different parts of their bodies and extremities. Thirdly, on their muscular strength, and on the state of perfection to which their whole muscular system may have been brought by their being well trained. Fourthly, and indeed almost principally, on the weight they may have to carry, and which must ever regulate the length of rally that differ-

ent horses may be capable of continuing on at their best pace. Fifthly, as to how horses may vary in size; this last-mentioned circumstance very frequently regulates their manner of going as to stride.

We will first make some remarks as to how different horses go in their gallops according to their size and structure, and how each description of horse is generally found to vary in maintaining their best pace either in their exercise or running. A small-sized, close-made race horse is mostly what is termed a "round goer," that is, he is rather short, but quick in his stride; when drawn out to the top of his pace, to use a common expression, he is generally a sticker in a pretty long rally, and a good one in deep ground. A horse somewhat larger than the one above mentioned, as from fifteen hands one inch to fifteen two, if he has substance, and is well formed over the heart and loins, with a good straight back and a moderate length of body, and not too high upon his legs, and has good action, that is, can get his fore legs well out, and can bring his haunches well under him, is the sort of race horse I very much fancy for general purposes—he can mostly go on with the pace, and in good com-

pany too, for any racing length. The large-sized horse, bred at the present day, is mostly from sixteen to seventeen hands high. Horses of the above size are generally engaged, at two and three years old, to run rather short lengths, for a few of the good things at Newmarket; and, as the season advances, they (principally the three-year olds) also run for other good things, at Epsom, Ascot Heath, Goodwood, York, and Doncaster. From those horses being so very over-sized, their length of stride is amazing; it is by their stride when running that they tell out almost all other horses that are lower in stature. These very large-sized horses can seldom come but certain lengths, as from three quarters of a mile to a mile and a half; which lengths generally suit them best; when these horses are called upon to come for the rally they can live in, in the finishing of their races, their speed is tremendous, if the ground is dry. But as such big horses are not always so well proportioned in their make as the smaller ones, they cannot go so well through dirt, as in their stride they pitch their feet, when running, farther in the ground, if wet, than the close-made horse that is more of a round goer. Another thing is, those large, long-striding horses cannot continue for so long a length at their best

pace as the last-mentioned close-made horse, as they cannot so readily collect themselves in their stride, by quickly bringing their haunches well under them. In noticing the action of a race horse, that may be a speedy good galloper, it will be seen, that, generally speaking, when drawn out pretty well to the top of his pace, he can (without bending his knees too much) put his fore feet well out, and bring his haunches well under him, that is, his hind feet will mostly be seen to come nearly opposite, or quite in a parallel line with the outside of his fore ones.

The stride of different horses depends on their size, varying from eighteen to twenty, or even to two or three and twenty feet. But how long a horse will be able to continue on this last-mentioned length of stride, will depend on the weight he is carrying, as also on his formation, structure, and muscular powers; and, as we have already noticed, he must have a moderate well-proportioned length of body and breadth of loins, together with lengthy, muscular, strong hind quarters and well-formed back. Those unaccustomed to observe the stride of different horses, when going at the top of their pace, may not immediately see exactly to what extent they bring

their haunches under them. Should a person, under such circumstances, have a doubt as to the action of any horse, he had better, if a pretty good horseman, ride the horse himself; and, to be certain of drawing out the horse he rides, he should, if necessary, have another to go head and girth with him in finishing the gallop, for whatever length of rally it may be; and as the horse alluded to is pressed on to the top of his pace, he naturally, although fairly, pulls pretty strong at the rider, which occasions him to sit well down in his saddle, keeping good hold of its flaps with his knees, as well as a tolerably good hold of his stirrups with his feet, which, to give him power in holding the horse with his hands, he places rather more forward than is usual. The horse now being drawn out to nearly the top of his pace, it is just at this time the rider should, for a few strides, lean a little over to either side, and, by looking down on the ground, see how near the horse he is riding will bring his hind feet up or close to the outside of his fore ones. The rider is not to be astonished, if, in riding a number of horses in this way, he should occasionally find a horse bringing his hind feet a trifle beyond his fore ones. If the horse can do this sort of thing to the extent above-mentioned, he will be found to be a

difficult horse to beat, and therefore a dangerous one to bet against, unless he gives away a great deal of weight to those horses that he may be running with. The manner above mentioned of finding out a horse's stride was practised in my juvenile days, and I have often had recourse to the same method myself. I allow it is an old fashioned way, nevertheless it will not be found to be a bad one; and I think it more certain than that of measuring a horse's stride on the ground he has gone over; as, to do this, the ground must be wet, with some degree of foot hold.

Having mentioned all that appears to be necessary on the subject of the action of race horses, the next thing to notice is the pace they have to go in their different sorts of exercise, and how, on various occasions, it is to be arranged. However slow the pace race horses may have to go in their gallops, they, from the manner in which they are taught to go in training, mostly put their fore legs better out, and their hind ones better under them, than horses in common use, and which gives them (as has already been noticed), a more settled and advantageous sort of stride; that is, they will be observed to stride or gallop along, instead of going the up and down cantering

pace of hacks and chargers. The slow pace is mostly had recourse to, when the horses have done the stronger part of their work, as in the mornings after they have been watered. On an hot summer's evening, the orders given by the groom to the boy who leads the gallop, should be—"Tom, do not hurry them this evening, or we shall have some of them breaking out in a sweat." If the evening is cold, the groom's orders are to be reversed, by saying to the boy who leads—"Just go fast enough with them to keep them warm."

Having noticed the slowest pace horses have to go in their gallops, we will now rate them at a little faster pace, which is termed half speed; this pace is generally had recourse to by way of moderate exercise, that is to say, it does not come under the denomination of horses doing work. This pace is proper for horses on the morning following the day on which they may have sweated, that is, if the groom is of opinion that any of them have been a little over-marked in their sweats, perhaps from the horse that led the sweat breaking away with the boy, and coming too fast for some of the other horses; or it may be adopted when stronger gallops do not suit them so well as slow frequent sweats.

The next pace to notice is called "three parts speed." This pace horses have to go in finishing a certain length of their gallops, at the time the groom may be doing what is usually called a "bit of work" with them. This is also the pace horses go in their brushing gallops, which they take the morning before sweating; and it is also the pace they have to go in the finishing of a certain portion of the last two or three sweats thay have to take just previous to their running. It is also the pace that some of the horses have occasionally to go in their sweating gallops; and it is this sort of pace a little increased that they have to go on the first, second, or third day (according to their constitutions), previous to their coming out to run. But the different paces, and the lengths that different horses will have to go in them, under a variety of circumstances, will be more fully explained in the third Volume.

CHAPTER XI.

WIND.

If the lungs of horses are sound, their inspiration and expiration are equal, and forms what is called "their respiration," or breathing. Race horses that have large circular chests, formed by their ribs being well arched over their hearts, and that are moderately straight in their carcasses, have mostly good winds; indeed, it is principally from the circumstance of the chests of well formed, thorough-bred horses having a more spacious capacity, that their wind is brought to the highest degree of excellence, or rather that it may soon be brought to great perfection by the management and exercise they have to undergo in training, which enables them to run on for long lengths with comparative ease to themselves.

To improve their wind, galloping or sweating exercise is to be had recourse to, whichever of these two may best suit the constitutions of different horses. But it is to be observed, that it is the first-mentioned exercise with which we must first commence, and which is to take place as soon as the horses have been sufficiently long at walking exercise to recover from the effects of their physic, which may be in about a week, depending upon how their physic may have operated on them. Now, when the horses first commence their gallops, it is with a view, in some degree, of improving their wind, so as to enable them to go through their first sweats. A groom having sent his horses for a few days up their gallops, is to begin to think about sweating some of them; but, previous to his allowing them to undergo this exertion, he is to find out whether the horses he may intend to sweat are all sufficiently clear in their wind to admit of their going through it without becoming unusually distressed. To ascertain this fact, he must in due time speak to the boy who leads the gallop for the class of horses that are to be sweated, by saying to him, either in the stable or as the horses are going to the ground—"Bill, keep fast your horse's head this morning, and

go along with them, and finish them at something near a breathing pace." To the other boys the groom says—"Mind you all keep your places; do not be losing or gaining ground in going along."

These orders being given, the groom on his hack is to cross over, or, if the gallop is straight, to go in time to that part of the ground on which the horses have to be pulled up; here he is to wait for the horses to arrive, and, on their being pulled up in front of him, he is narrowly to watch their breathing, and observe how soon any one or two of them may blow their noses. Those that can do this in half a minute or a few seconds more (allowing for their structure), after they are pulled up, may be considered as being sufficiently clear in their wind to go through their first gentle sweat; others, that may not blow their noses for some time longer than the first period mentioned, should not be sweated on the following morning; the better way will be to allow the latter to go on for a few mornings more with their gallops at rather a better pace; and on some morning after these horses have been ordered to go at a tolerable fair pace up their gallops, the groom must, as before, be

at the top of the gallop in time to see them pull up, and attentively observe what improvement they may have made. By this time their wind to a certain extent will no doubt have improved, which may be seen by their blowing their noses in a shorter time than when they were first examined with the other horses. If the groom has any doubt on his mind, as to the time horses may take in blowing their noses, for they will not all do this equally alike as to time, he may in a quiet way count them out; that is, immediately on the horses pulling up, the groom may begin to reckon to himself, dividing the time of each numbering, as near as he can, to the sixtieth part of a minute. If the horses blow their noses within the above-mentioned time, or in the counting of seventy, or at furthest eighty, they may sweat.

It is by the exertion which horses undergo in strong exercise, as in their gallops and sweats, that their wind is improved; but it is more particularly so by the latter, as by this their lungs are brought into strong action, not only from the pace they go in their sweats, but from the additional quantity of clothing which they have to stand under in the rubbing-house after they are

pulled up, which not only causes them to sweat profusely, but forces them to blow hard. The great absorption produced throughout their whole system, by sweating, relieves them of their superfluous fat, and gives room for their lungs to expand: and from the increased action of the lungs being so long continued, they acquire a habit of quickly dilating and contracting them. From these circumstances the air-cells, if not actually enlarged, are improved and strengthened in their action to such an extent as to enable horses to go at a tolerable good pace for a considerable length (as, four miles, for example) with comparative ease to themselves; and when they are drawn out or called upon to go at nearly or perhaps quite the top of their pace, to finish the above length, they will be found to do so without feeling the least or very little distressed; or, if they are a little distressed on being pulled up, it is but for a short time, during which period they may be seen to blow hard, but free, clear, and strong, until they blow their noses.

Light, delicate horses, are generally in good wind, or, if not, they require but little in the way of exercise to bring them to this state; to use the

common expression of the stables, they will scarcely blow a candle out after being pulled up from a gallop. But hearty horses, and those of still stronger constitutions, if short of work, cannot be in good wind; and were such horses called upon to go for any thing like a length, at a breathing pace, they would soon be obliged to slacken; or, if from bad judgment they should be persevered with to go on, they would soon stop of themselves, when they would shew marked symptoms of distress; instead of blowing strong and clear, they would stand panting with extreme difficulty, and be a long time before they would sufficiently recover themselves to blow their noses; for horses, unless in the act of coughing, never breathe through their mouths.

When a horse has been pulled up from his gallop or sweat, and is heard to blow his nose, or snort with his nostrils, it is commonly supposed that the horse is sneezing; this we shall not dispute; but, in the language of the stable, it is termed "a horse blowing his nose," on being pulled up from either of the exercises we have mentioned; and it denotes that his lungs have recovered from the efforts they may have just undergone, to their usual or natural tranquil state

of respiration; and the sooner a horse can blow his nose on being pulled up from a brushing gallop, or from having finished his sweat at a good telling pace, the clearer and better he may be considered to be in his wind. Some horses, while in training, and that are getting forward in their condition, as they are going along in their exercise get into a habit of snorting, as they are expelling the air from their lungs; but this is not the snorting we above allude to, nor is it to be considered as any criterion for the reader to judge of the state of his horse's wind.

I shall mention another practice, for the purpose of expressing my disapprobation of it, which though perhaps of little or no importance, yet, as it was of no utility, ought long since to have been done away with. Exercise boys, in my time, were very apt, on the horses being pulled up from their gallops, and being, as is the custom, let stand for a short time to recover their wind before they walked away, to begin making a noise with their lips similar to that the horses made with their nostrils when they blowed their noses. As horses mostly follow the examples, tricks, or habits, of each other, the noise thus made by the boys probably often

induced the horses to blow their noses quicker after they were pulled up than they naturally would have done had not such example been set them; for, I well remember, that, if we stopped a little longer than usual at the top of the gallop, the horses would keep on blowing their noses, as we kept on repeating the noise with our lips. Whether they did this sort of thing from the example set them by the boys or not, I will not pretend to say; but, as there certainly can be no good derived from such noise being made by the boys, it should not be allowed to be done.

CHAPTER XII.

FEEDING HORSES IN TRAINING ON CORN.

Various are the different articles of food, either in a fluid or a solid state, by which the bodies of animals are supported. Among the different sorts, that which has been found the most nutritious and wholesome for horses that are kept in an artificial state (as race horses), appears to consist of hay, oats, and hulled split-beans. On the qualities of the various sorts of food, and the different effects they produce on different horses, see Vol. I. Chap. 4.

As the feeding of horses in training will require the most scrupulous attention on the part of a training groom, it may not be amiss here, previous to my speaking more at large

on the subject, to give a plain statement of the course of the food, as well as also a brief sketch of the process of digestion. The food on being taken into the mouth is immediately conveyed by the tongue to the upper or back part; here it is acted upon by the teeth or molars, which grind it down, and by the fluids of the saliva glands, previous to its passing into the pharynx, down the œsophagus, or throat, into the stomach. Here, the food undergoes a further change, in being acted upon by the gastric juice, which forms it into a pulpy solution; this solution, is propelled by the muscular contraction of the stomach into the intestines. Here, the food again undergoes a further change, by its being mixed with the bile and other fluids of the body; and, by a process wisely ordained by nature, the most nutritious parts of the food are now converted into a fluid called chyle. This chyle fluid is taken up by a system of absorbent vessels, called lacteals, and by those vessels it is conveyed into a tube called the thoracic duct, which conveys it along the spine to the left jugular vein, where it mixes with the blood. That part of the food which remains separated, is acted upon by the muscular powers of the intestines, and propelled forward to the rectum

to be evacuated. By the chyle thus formed from the nutritious parts of the food, nature is recruited and refreshed, or, in other words, the waste of blood is supplied. I will just here remark, that this last-mentioned fluid is propelled through all parts of the body for the growth and support of animal life, and from which all secretions are supplied.

At a large public training establishment, it will scarcely be possible for a training groom himself to look minutely into every little individual circumstance relative to the training of a very considerable number of horses. If a groom has not more than ten or a dozen horses under his care, he may, by strict attention, and the assistance of a steady head lad, and a sufficient number of good riding boys, get on well enough. But, if a training establishment should consist of more horses than above mentioned, as for example, from twenty to thirty, or perhaps even more, the business of so large an establishment must necessarily be divided; therefore, in proportion to the number of horses to be trained, so must the groom augment the number of persons he may want to assist him. He is himself

to work and water the whole of the horses while they are in training; he is also to direct and arrange the different departments allotted to each of his assistants. Among them there should be a quiet, steady man, and experienced in the training of horses. This is the person who should be placed next in authority to the principal trainer, and to whom the feeding of the whole of the horses (if the number of them is to the extent I have mentioned) is to be intrusted. It occasionally happens that a horse will now and then go off his feed—a thing which, when it occurs, is of course immediately to be reported to the principal trainer; for, as at the time of their being out on the downs, he works and waters the horses, he may at once be able to account for such a circumstance. A flighty horse may go off his feed from the boy and horse not agreeing as they ought, while out at exercise, as, the boy may in some measure have been too severe with such horse, and alarmed him; or, a hearty horse may have gone off his feed from being rather over-marked in his work; or, a gluttonous horse may, in his strong work, have been kept too short of water, which may have caused him to refuse his corn. No matter from what cause it arises, it is a circum-

cumstance that must be immediately attended to. The groom must quickly turn the thing over in his mind, and consider whether it may have taken place from any unintentional little mismanagement on his part in the working or watering of such horse, or, as I before observed, from the rash treatment of the boy who may have ridden a flighty one. If a horse should have gone off his feed from either of the above-mentioned causes, the groom must change his system of treatment, in the working and watering of his horses, for one of less severity, and which may be more suitable to the horse's constitution. If, on the other hand, the cause originates in the rash treatment of the boy who rode him, one of a more placid temper should supply his place. From whichsoever of the causes just mentioned, a horse goes off his feed, his work must be stopped, and the necessary steps are to be taken to bring him again to his usual manner of feeding; and of this, we shall have occasion to say more presently. But, should a horse go off his feed from indisposition, this would be of much more serious consequence than either of the first-mentioned circumstances; therefore, a minute inspection must immediately take place, so as accurately to ascertain with

what disease he may have become affected; and which can only be judged of from the symptoms that may be present, as that of an increased action of the horse's pulse and respiration, and the degree of temperature of his mouth, ears, and extremities; or if he has a difficulty in swallowing his water, and which may be generally known by his coughing immediately afterwards. Now, if a training groom is not well versed in the knowledge of those symptoms, or any others that may be present, as well also as the effects which may be likely to follow them, and the treatment to be immediately adopted for the relief and permanent cure of the horse, I should strongly recommend him to call in, with as little delay as possible, an experienced veterinary surgeon.

I confess, I have digressed a little from the immediate subject of feeding the horses; but I have done so with a view of giving a brief sketch of the course of the food, and making a few remarks on the process of digestion, and the causes likely to occasion horses to go off their food. I have been induced to make those remarks in due time, so as to prevent, as much as possible, any inconvenience from

arising, should any of them go off their food at the time of their being in strong work.

But to return to the feeding of them during the time of their being in training. Now, whether an establishment for the training of horses is on a small scale, and the horses are fed by the training groom himself, or whether the establishment be on a large scale, and the horses fed by an assistant, the greatest care must be taken in the feeding of every description of horse, agreeably to his constitution, and to add or diminish to each horse's feed of corn according as each may be inclined to feed. Horses that feed more voraciously than others, not only put up flesh quicker, but they put up more, in proportion to their height, than those that are larger, and that feed and drink less sparingly. Such are the natural effects observed to take place as the size and structure of different horses may vary; and however much flesh any of them may put up, they must all be well fed. Most of the light flighty horses are but indifferent feeders; the principal object to be attended to in the feeding of these, is to feed them in small quantities, as a dishful (a double handful) at each feed, gradually increasing their different feeds, until it is

ascertained what portion of corn they can be got to eat during the day, and to observe that, whatever portion of corn may be given in each feed, each horse eats up all that is given him. Any horse that may not have eaten the whole of his corn, should have that which he has left immediately taken away, and his hay given him. The means whereby the horse is again to be brought to his appetite, we shall bye-and-bye describe, when we are on the subject of doing a little bit of work with such horses.

The hearty horses are those that have often been noticed as being in the medium as regards their constitutions; these are moderate good feeders, will eat from a peck to a peck and a half of corn in the course of the day, and some few of them will now and then exceed this quantity. Strong constitutioned, hearty-feeding horses will eat, by measure, in the course of the day, from a peck and a half to two pecks; and I have known some very gluttonous horses that would now and then exceed this quantity. Now, if we speak of the feeding by weight, and suppose the oats to weigh, which they should at least, forty pounds per bushel, the above horses would eat a stone and a half, or perhaps rather more, during

the day. The very strong constitutioned horses are mostly inclined to eat a great quantity of corn, which, to a certain extent, is necessary, not only with a view to nourish and strengthen them, for they should be liberally fed, but with a view to prevent them, as much as possible, from eating too much hay, or, what is still worse, and which many of them will do, eat a great deal of their litter. Yet, notwithstanding this, these horses should not at all times be permitted voraciously to gorge themselves, by having their corn given to them in very large feeds. There are times when a little relaxation from such high feeding would not only be advisable, but beneficial; as, for example, on wet days, when the horses have to stop in; on such days, those that are gluttonously inclined should have each feed diminished a little, and, if not too near the time of their coming out to run, they should have a good mash at night. Indeed, if they were to have, at each stable hour, as much corn as they could eat, most of them, from being thus over-fed, would soon loathe their food, in the same manner as they would, from being over-worked, get sulky when at exercise; if these horses were kept long in strong work, merely because they are good feeders, they would become not only stale on their legs, but

stale in themselves, and perhaps fall amiss constitutionally.

At the time of my early days in the stables, I have known all the above circumstances occasionally to have happened in the working and feeding of different horses. Nor have I any hesitation in acknowledging that such things have now and then occurred to myself at the time of my having horses to feed and work under my own directions; and this it is which has induced me to be so explicitly minute as to the precautionary measures I conceive are necessary to be strictly observed by those of my readers who may be engaged in the training of horses to run. I will here give a good old-fashioned maxim, and which should never be lost sight of in the feeding and working of race horses—that the horses should love both their food and their work; I mean by this, they should go cheerfully to both, for, as the one ever governs the other, if they are overmarked by either, they cannot come out in their best form to post.

Chaff being manger food, we will here make a remark or two on its being given to race horses. It should be cut from the very best and sweetest

of the hay, and may be advantageously given, as we have already advised, mixed with the corn, to all the horses in the winter that are out of training; but horses that are gluttonously inclined, and mostly idle in their wind, had better be well fed with corn alone, and afterwards have their hay in the usual way. To some of the light-carcassed hearty horses, it may be given occasionally; but for the light, flighty, delicate feeding horses, some sweet rich clover hay cut into chaff is preferable on account of its very nutritious qualities, and may be given to them mixed with their corn at any time, as they are always in good wind. Chaff being thus mixed with their corn, causes them to grind it more perfectly.

CHAPTER XIII.

WATERING HORSES WHILE THEY ARE IN TRAINING.

The precaution to be generally observed in the watering of horses in training is, principally, to regulate properly the quantity of water they are to take at different intervals, which must be arranged by the groom, according to what he may be going to do with the horses.

We will first notice the watering of the light flighty horses. As these drink so very sparingly, they may at all times, unless immediately before they are coming out to run, not only be allowed to take what quantity of water they like, but they should, by attention, patience, and kindness, be encouraged to drink when they come up to the troughs. If they are not inclined to drink

the whole of their water at one time, they should be allowed to sip it, until they are quite satisfied. Their heads are not to be pulled up so long as they are disposed to drink, with a view of making them take half their water at a time, as is necessary to do with some other horses that we shall presently have to water. Any of the light horses that may not drink at the troughs should be offered water in the stables, when they are round in their stalls having their heads dressed; if they will not take it at this time, try them again immediately before they are fed; when, as the stables are less disturbed by the noise of the other horses, they will sometimes drink, and they will feed better afterwards.

As the hearty horses (those in the medium as regards their constitutions) are mostly moderate drinkers, they may be allowed to take their water as they like, unless on the days before sweating, trying, or running. Now, with regard to the watering of the gluttonous craving horses, this is a subject that will require our most particular attention. The reader is to bear in mind that the feeding of all horses in training, and watering of them, is invariably governed by the working: if a horse is over-worked, he will refuse his corn;

if he is too much stinted of his water, he will also refuse his corn; and if he is over-fed, he will, of course, refuse his corn. In proportion to the quantity of food that craving horses consume in the course of the twenty-four hours, a greater or less quantity of the different fluids of their bodies will be exhausted in the process of digestion, and which of course produces a greater or less degree of thirst; besides this, these horses are much oftener sweating than any others. Such are the predisposing causes which occasion them to drink larger portions of water, at different intervals, than the lighter horses that feed more sparingly and sweat less frequently.

As some few of the craving horses may be disposed to drink larger quantities of water than is absolutely necessary, either for the digesting of their food, or quenching of their thirst, that the groom may not be led astray in the watering of such horses at the troughs, or perhaps sometimes at ponds, he should in the commencement of training them measure the quantity of water that each may be disposed to drink when they are very thirsty. This is to be done by keeping the above horses for a certain time short of water; as, for example, instead of allowing them to drink

almost as they like, let them take in the evening fifteen or twenty go-downs, (swallows of water). On the following morning, previous to the groom going out with his horses to exercise, he should speak to the head lad, and tell him that he wants to measure the quantity of water that two horses gluttonously inclined may be disposed to drink. The head lad, therefore, takes care to have a couple of buckets full of water, (with the chill well off), and puts them on the lid of one of the troughs in the yard at about the usual time he knows the horses will be coming to take their water, as when they have walked for a sufficient time to cool after their morning gallop. Now, when the two horses in question come into the yard to take their water out of the buckets, the groom, being by, says to each of the boys that are on the horses, "Mind that each of you be very particular in speaking distinctly in counting out the number of go-downs each of your horses makes in emptying his bucket." Now, with regard to the common size of stable buckets, they are generally made to hold, when full to the brim, three gallons and a half; but they are rarely filled to this extent, as, for the convenience of the boys carrying them, they seldom contain more than three gallons. When, therefore, the

number of go-downs a horse makes in emptying a bucket is ascertained by the groom, he may easily regulate the quantity to be taken at the troughs or a pond, by ordering the boys to allow the horses to take such a number of go-downs as is sufficient for them. The measuring of the water of gluttonous horses is highly necessary, for, as horses differ in size, so do most of them differ more or less as to the capacity of their swallows. Some horses, when thirsty, will drink three gallons of water in forty or forty-five go-downs, other horses in fifty, others in sixty. I have known some make eighty go-downs in emptying a bucket of three gallons; and, unless we know pretty nearly the quantity of water that those craving horses take in a certain number of swallows, we cannot bye-and-bye set them for their sweats, trials, and races, with that degree of nicety it will be requisite we should do.

As the gluttonous horses in training are mostly in strong work, they must occasionally be stinted of their water; yet this must be done judiciously; for, if they are allowed to drink large quantities of water, their bowels will become too much relaxed, and, instead of their being moderately straight

and handsome in their carcasses, they will become coarse and large in them. The best criterion for a training groom to go by is, in the early part of such horses' training, gradually to stint those that are inclined at one time to drink larger portions of water than may be proper for them, by letting them take a few go-downs less, morning and evening, until they begin to get a little off their feed, when the stinting of their water should be discontinued, and they should now be allowed to drink more liberally until they feed as they usually did. The groom is to bear in mind the number of go-downs of water that any horses may have taken less than they would have done at the time were they allowed to take what they chose out of the buckets, in order that, when there is again a necessity for stinting them, he may be better able to ascertain the quantity to be diminished. The groom, by the above arrangement in watering of gluttonous horses, cannot well be led astray in the stinting of them, at a time when he may be going to set them, as when he wishes to send them a good pace in their gallops, on the day before they may have to sweat, or for a certain period of time previous to their coming out to run.

The proper course to be adopted in watering the gluttonous horses, when they are not in strong work, as when they go out only once a day, as in spring, in the commencement of their training, is to water them frequently in the course of the day, in the same manner as the delicate flighty horses are watered; only with this difference, that, whatever quantity is to be given the former at one time, the latter are to be made to drink it at twice, by pulling up their heads, and letting them wash their mouths, and then allowing them to take the remainder. By watering those horses in this way, they will become more satisfied with the portion of water that may be allowed them each day, than they would be were they permitted greedily to swallow their different quantities of water at one time, either out of the troughs in the yard, or out of the buckets in the stable.

In summer time, when the horses go out twice a day, those among them that are great drinkers, if the weather is very hot, should be indulged a little, by allowing them to take a few go-downs of water more at each time, merely to prevent them from becoming so thirsty, as to take them off their usual way of feeding.

Now, a groom in ordering his horses to be watered in the evening should be regulated by their different constitutions, and the different sorts of work or exercise he intends them to do: on the following morning, therefore, he is to give his orders accordingly to each of his boys as they are riding their horses up to the troughs to be watered. Speaking to the first boy, who may be on a horse that is a moderate drinker, (one that takes from twenty-five to thirty go-downs of water, morning and evening), he says, "Let your horse take twenty go-downs." To a second boy, "Let your horse take twenty-five go-downs, and let him take it at twice." To a third boy, "Let your horse" (one that if allowed to do so would take from fifty to sixty go-downs of water) "take half his water, and let him take it at twice;" and so on with any other horses, allowing them to take more or less water on all such occasions, according to the sort of drinkers they are, or the time in the morning, as before or after breakfast, that they may be going to perform any particular exertion.

Before I conclude this chapter, I will give a few precautionary hints on the subject of bad

water. I have already spoken on the qualities of water, and on such as may be most proper for horses, as also the effects it has on their constitutions when hard, and the remedies to be adopted to soften it, so as to prevent as much as possible any injury arising to the health of race horses from a change of water, as when they are travelling from their home stables to others in a distant neighbourhood. (See Vol. I. Chap. 6).

Grooms cannot be too particular in their inquiries as to the quality of water at different inns on the road, or at any of the stables which their horses may have to stand in near to the course it is intended they are to run over. Travelling and change of air will occasionally alter horses for the worse, notwithstanding every attention may be paid to them. But what will still make a much greater change in them is, their having to drink bad water, such as hard pump-water, drawn perhaps from very deep wells. Horses, when in training, being accustomed to drink of the most soft pure water, the effects of bad water will be immediately evident; however well the chill may have been taken off such water, they soon begin to tremble and shake, and their

coats are to be seen staring or standing on end; which is to be attributed rather to the effects of bad water on the constitutions of race horses when travelling, than to the change of either air, stables, or food. Such water as may have been found to agree best with horses, and which they may have been accustomed to take in the neighbourhood in which they have been trained, is of course the water to be depended on. And under very particular circumstances, as a horse being deeply engaged, or that has been so well tried as to induce the owner to think he might, barring an accident, win the Derby or Leger, water might be sent on from the home stable to the place where the horse may be engaged to run. But this cannot well be done on a general scale, in consequence of the inconvenience and expense that would be incurred.

CHAPTER XIV.

TEACHING YEARLINGS.

In the last Chapter of my first Volume, I have described the manner in which colts or fillies are to be broken, either as yearlings or two-year olds, and I have there made my remarks on the early and temporary trials of yearlings made by breeders, for the purpose of ascertaining how to value their different colts and fillies, according to the good or bad qualities each may possess. For the same purpose some noblemen and gentlemen have also been induced to put their yearlings into regular training, that they may ascertain whether it will be worth the expense of keeping them on or not.

It will require eight or twelve months, from the time of the young ones leaving their pad-

docks, before they can be sufficiently well broken and trained, or what is usually termed "brought out ripe to post." But the reader is to bear in mind, that, of the two periods we have given for the getting of yearlings ready to run, the last is mostly to be preferred, as some colts require much longer time than others. It is further to be remarked, that the training of either yearlings or two year olds will not require twelve months, that is, it will not take so long a time for the regular feeding, working, and watering of them, to bring them into the proper condition to run; but it will require fully that time in teaching them, before they can be said to be thoroughly well capable of doing whatever may afterwards be required of them as race horses, and for the trainer to perfect them in all those little matters, of which we shall make mention as we proceed, and to bring them out, as we have said, fully ripe to post.

Young ones, that come out to run thus early, should be thoroughly well broken, and by the first of November they should be in the training stables, under the care of the training groom: the colts in one stable and the fillies in another; and, by way of example, we will suppose there is

a dozen of them to be trained. As yearlings can only run with yearlings, at least in my opinion they ought not, they are to be considered as being in their own class until they are two years old.

Now, by way of putting grooms on their guard, so that mistakes or accidents may not unexpectedly arise, it will be necessary to put those yearlings we are about to train into separate classes, and describe what are the probable habits or propensities, good or bad, of each class.

The first class to notice are those of strong constitutions; these colts are powerfully made: they are short in their backs, wide over their loins, are well arched in the anterior part of the ribs, and have large carcasses; they are termed in the stables "the craving ones, or gluttons." These colts, as they advance in age, become stout horses; they are long comers under high weights, and, not being very speedy, they are mostly used as country platers.

The second class are those which have their constitutions in the medium; if they are good

ones, they are well arched in their ribs, they are wide over their loins, and rather straight in their carcasses; if they are not too leggy, they can come almost any racing lengths under moderate weights; they have generally good speed, and are pleasant horses to train. They are termed in the stables "the hearty ones."

The third class are those of delicate constitutions: they are, generally speaking, much too lengthy in their constitutional points, as well as in their speedy ones; if they are deep in their girths, they are more or less straight in their ribs, that is, their ribs are not sufficiently well arched; they are often long in their backs, narrow over their loins, very straight or light in their carcasses, and are high upon their legs. For want of more space in the former of these essential parts, and less length in the latter of them, they are but very middling race horses. It is true they have good speed, but they are almost invariably great jades; the shorter their races are the better they like them, as they cannot run but short lengths. Newmarket is the most likely place to do any good with them. Their being easily alarmed, either in or out of the stables,

makes them unpleasant horses to train; nor, generally speaking, are they of much profit to the owners.

The fourth class I shall suppose to consist of three fillies, which makes up the number, twelve yearlings, I proposed to train. Now, with regard to their physical or constitutional powers, they do not vary from the colts, but, like them, are craving, hearty, and flighty; and upon their structure, the same as with the colts, will depend their different racing properties; and their tempers also are similar. But, as they advance on to mares, they become in training more troublesome and uncertain than horses; this proceeds from their natural propensity to sexual intercourse, which is greater in racing fillies and mares than with other fillies and mares in common use. The former require to be highly fed and warmly clothed; and from their standing in stables of a warm temperature with entire horses, (which was almost invariably the case when I was a boy), their natural propensity more often predominates, and which, as I have before noticed, is the cause of so strong and frequent a desire in them for sexual intercourse; and this, not only as the spring advances, but at various other

times in the course of the year; if the weather is hot (to use a common expression) they become very keen a-horsing. During the time they remain in this state, they are more or less debilitated and unhappy for the want of intercourse with the horse. They frequently turn their heads as far round in the stall as they can, looking disconsolate about them. They often refuse their food, or rather they eat but little for the time they continue in season. The groom cannot, therefore, send them along in their work as he could wish. When this happened to mares near the time of their running, they were usually considered to be seven or ten pounds below their proper form. Indeed, however capable they may have been of winning, it has sometimes been found difficult for a jockey to make them do so, in consequence of their being so much disposed to lean or hang to the horse or horses with whom they may be running; and thus occasionally have mares lost races in which they have been engaged. When it is known that mares are thus so repeatedly troublesome in training, the better way is to stint them in the spring; they then go on very well. These are my reasons for recommending fillies to be invariably kept in stables by themselves; nor should mares (as of course

their nature is not changed) ever be allowed to run in the company of horses, and certainly not in the company of entire horses; for the less frequent they get to wind entire horses, the less likely they are to become a-horsing. For a similar reason, horses in training should also be kept by themselves, as they will be more quiet and contented, and will be less frequently calling after mares.

I shall now proceed to give directions how these yearlings are to be got ready to go on to the downs, (say in the month of October), as by this time the others (the older horses and mares) will have done their running. The groom, having looked out what clothing and saddles and bridles are necessary, is next to select from among his steadiest and best riding boys those of the lightest weights, and, putting one to take charge of each of the yearlings in question, he orders the whole of them to be dressed; their body clothes and saddles are then put on, as with the other horses. The stables then being locked up, they are all left to stand with their heads up and muzzles on, until the boys have got their breakfasts; when they return with the groom to the stables, the bridles and hoods are then put on to both

horses and colts; each boy now mounts in the stable the horse or colt he looks after; and the whole of them are then rode out into the stable-yard: here they are to walk for a short time, till their saddles may get settled to their backs. They then walk on to the downs, followed by the groom on his hack. The old horses, for the present under the care of the head lad, may go to any convenient part of the ground to exercise by themselves, as directed by the groom; but the yearlings must now be under the tuition of the groom himself, so that he may be able to obtain a thorough knowledge of how they are likely to turn out. For, although we are to consider them as being well broken, yet it is likely there are some among them who may, from the necessary indulgence occasionally allowed them, have become hearty, and some others may shew some little hereditary vice. A colt or two, becoming unruly from either of those causes, may swerve or bolt out from the string; if he do not break way, he may rear up, spring forward, and then lash out behind; in doing of which he may get the better of a small light boy and throw him. If a colt does this, he will, the first opportunity that offers, (as the boy being off his guard), have recourse to the same sort of thing again, with a

view to be master; and if he should become headstrong in this way, no matter how good he may be as to stoutness or speed, he is most likely spoiled for ever as a race horse, or rather there is no dependence to be placed on him when running. A colt being unruly from being too hearty, and a colt being unruly from vice, are two very different things; the former, with proper management, is soon got the better of, and perhaps without changing the boy, as we shall presently shew; but the latter requires the immediate attention of the groom, who will soon find he must change the small light boy for one that is bigger, stronger, and more determined on horseback, and that knows well how to forward a young colt.

The groom should have his eye as much as possible on both boy and colt, so as to give directions to the former, in case he should at any time be inclined to be too severe in correcting the colt for a fault. I have in the first volume, in teaching boys to ride, directed, that they are, under various circumstances, to be kind to colts and horses, with a view to preserve their tempers. Yet those orders of kindness are not to be carried to the

extreme with any of them, and more particularly towards a colt that may from hereditary vice be resolutely inclined to become decidedly restive. A colt of this sort, as a yearling, may be got the better of by keeping upon him at all times a good riding boy, who, from being accustomed to ride tricky ones, is mostly on his guard, and soon finds out or feels when a colt of this sort is inclined to be what is called "a little botty." The moment the boy finds the colt is about to begin any of his tricks, he should immediately set-to with him as determinedly as possible—by getting resolutely at him, and rousing him, or rather frightening him, by taking suddenly a determined pull at him, and chucking up his head, then quickly shortening the rein on the reverse side to that which the colt is inclined to go, and, if possible, pulling his head round with a certain degree of violent force, chucking up his head again and handling his mouth roughly with the bit, and, if he can with safety to himself, he should send both his heels back with great force against the colt's sides. If the boy finds he is getting the better of the colt, he should take a straight, strong pull at him to pull him up, and make him stand for a moment, just now

using rather loud and rough sort of language to him, then make him go quietly up into his place in the string with the other colts; and here the boy should have a constant eye upon him. I have often found this sort of rough treatment answer far better than striking a colt with an ashen plant. I do not, as I have already observed, approve of fighting with colts or horses, if it can be avoided; yet, it may sometimes be necessary to have recourse to blows as a last resource, to endeavour to get the better of a thick, sulky, ill-disposed colt.

I have given these precautions to the groom and boy, with a view to put them on their guard with a tricky colt, on his first appearance in the string on the downs. I will now put the groom and boy again on their guard, with respect to colts commencing and going on with their work, as some of them get cunning after having gone up a few gallops. Craving colts, and hearty colts, may occasionally require such correction as I have just noticed; but the flighty irritable colts must never be corrected; for what, by many, are considered as faults in them, principally arise from their natural timidity; so that to fight with them would alarm them, and in short spoil them as

racers. In what manner they ought to be treated, I shall of course state when I come to the training of them.

A craving or hearty colt, become cunning from having gone up a few gallops, may some morning, as he is approaching to, or commencing, one of his gallops, look at what he is going about, that is, if I may so say, he looks at the work he is going to begin; and, unless the boy is on his guard, he is very likely to rear up and bolt round, and perhaps try to break way; or, if he do not do this, he may, if a tricky one, in going up the gallop, shut up and go out; in other words, he will sulk and slacken his pace, and then bolt suddenly out from the string, break away, and get some distance before he can be pulled up. An ill-disposed colt will sometimes rather unexpectedly take these advantages of a small light boy; when he does this, to prevent a repetition of it, the slight boy must be taken off the colt, and another put up, of more power and experience; and, as he is apprized of the sort of colt he is going to ride, he strictly watches him, not only as he is walking to the gallop, but after he has commenced it. Now, a few lengths previous to the colt coming to that part of the gallop

which he may before have gone out at, the boy should there persevere with him, to make him keep his place in the string; and, if he finds it necessary, he should have recourse quickly to such methods of correction as have already been spoken of, with the additional aid (in his right or left hand, whichever is found to be most convenient) of his ashen plant, raised over his own head or near to the colt's, and using occasionally rough sort of language, in going along to the end of the gallop. If the boy has been able to keep the colt straight throughout the gallop to the end of it, he should, after having pulled him up, notice him a little, but not too much. If a thick craving rogue of a colt, or a hearty one, similarly disposed, cannot be got the better of by the treatment I have advised, further severities, as having repeated recourse to blows, will seldom be found to answer. Many a hearty colt may become a little tricky merely from being too fresh; such a colt only requires the quiet treatment of a good riding boy, with an occasional increase of work to steady him.

It is to be understood, that all these young ones are to be taught in turn, not only to lead the class to which they belong, as well in walk-

ing out from as in returning to the stables, but also occasionally to lead the gallop.

After these yearlings have gone through what I have laid down relative to them, it may fairly be concluded that they have been long enough under the care of the groom for him to have become thoroughly acquainted with what they all are, as regards their constitutions and tempers.

In getting ready the first class of these young ones, (the craving ones), either to try or to run, something like regular work should be given them. The second class, the hearty ones, will require less work, with more teaching. The third class, the flighty ones, require very little more than teaching alone; that is to say, if they are properly taught, they are generally sufficiently trained.

Now, according as the disposition of a colt of the third class is steady or flighty, so must his treatment be varied; those that are steady enough to follow each other in their exercise may do so; but those that are easily alarmed had much better go by themselves. All the colts of this class should have good and patient riding

boys, not only for their exercise, but to look after them in the stable. No matter where they are alarmed, or at what they are alarmed, if once they are so, it will be some time before they get the better of a fright. The groom must therefore carefully watch them and the boys; and he must caution the latter never, scarcely under any circumstances, to strike them, or even to pull more rashly at them than is absolutely necessary to pull them up, or to prevent them, when hearty, from getting the better of them. If any of these colts become alarmed by going constantly to one particular part of the downs, where they may occasionally have had a few gallops, the groom should immediately take them to another part, and let them be there at walking exercise for a few days; then take them back to the old ground, but, instead of galloping them, let them walk these gallops, and walk about other parts of this ground for two or three days; then he should take them back to the ground at which they were not frightened, and, if they appear here pretty hearty, he should endeavour to steal a gallop into them, just letting them go off as they like.

If any colt among these flighty ones will not

bear even the sort of treatment I have just described, he should be taken on to the turnpike road early in the morning, where he should do the most of his exercise, and the more like a hack he does it the more reconciled he will become; and if he has good action, he may walk long lengths, which will give him an appetite. If there is in the neighbourhood a gradual good sort of lengthy hill, that may perchance have a narrow strip of turf running by the side of it, the colt in question should walk occasionally up such hill, and at other times, by way of change, and with a view to forward him, he should (putting him into a trot some way before he comes to the hill, and giving him his head,) be allowed to trot on up any portion of the hill as may be thought sufficient to bring his lungs into pretty good action. If the hill is short, he should trot up the whole length, and, instead of pulling him up at the top, he should be made to continue on, on the level, for half a mile, then pull him up and make much of him; then walk him quietly home, if possible, by a different road from that by which he came. At other times of his going out, there should be a steady hack rode out with him, by the side of him, following, or before him, whichever the colt appears to be the most recon-

ciled to. At other times, with the hack along with him, he should proceed to any of the neighbouring markets or fairs; here let them walk quietly about in the noise and bustle of the crowd, making very much of the colt, who cannot here be treated too kindly, (see Colt Breaking, Vol. I. Chap. 24, pp. 483, 489), with a view to make him rather fond of the crowd, so that he may not be alarmed on being walked out from the rubbing-house into the crowd on the course the first time of his being brought out to run. Indeed, unless a colt or horse will walk out of the rubbing-house into the crowd, and remain there unconcerned, and, in his running and concluding a race, go freely up between the rails of the course, and boldly pass through the crowd, and is not more pleased than annoyed by their cheering as he passes the winning-post, I say of him, as Shakspeare has said of man, "Let no such horse be trusted."

The next thing the groom has to do is to teach his colts, as they are approaching towards two years old, to go by the side of each other in their exercise, and also to stop by the side of each other when pulled up on finishing their gallops. But, previous to the groom practising

his colts at this, he should take an opportunity of steadying them, by giving them, for two or three days, such long walking exercise, with occasional lengthy gallops, as their ages and constitutions will safely bear; then, on the morning he commences teaching his colts to go in the way just mentioned, he should put upon the colt he intends to lead the gallop an experienced good riding boy, who from practice knows well how to forward a colt on this or any other occasion, or perhaps as more preferable, if light enough, the head lad, as the groom would only have to say to the latter—"We must see how these young ones will go by the side of each other as they approach the close of the gallop, and whether we can get them to stop pretty nearly opposite each other when pulled up at the end of it." Two or three of them may now and then be practised together.

If it is a good riding boy that is to lead this sort of gallop, he had better be put on a good sort of hack, or a steady horse that has been some time in training; but we will suppose the head lad to lead the above-mentioned gallop, as he may do it on one of the most steady of the colts. In the morning, either in the stables, or

as he is going along on his hack to the ground with the colts, the groom cautions the boys, first, by telling them what he wants done with the colts, and then bids them be steady, and mind and attend to what will presently be said to them by the head lad. The head lad, on arriving at the ground, should say to the boys, as they are approaching the gallop—"Keep fast your colts' heads, and follow me." When he sees that the colts are off and settled in their stride, he again says to them—"Come gradually on with your colts until you are nearly head and girth with my colt, parallel with my colt; but mind that you keep your colts sufficiently wide apart, so that they may have no inclination to fly at each other." By the time the colts have got in their places on the gallop, as we have here described, they will have arrived within a quarter of a mile of the end of it. The lad, seeing them go on as they ought, should again speak to the boys, and tell them to take a steady pull at their colts, and direct them at the same time to finish the gallop at a little faster pace; but to be careful not to pass him if they can avoid it. On their having made this little run together, they are to be pulled up as nearly as possible in a line with each other. They should now be let stand to blow their

noses, if they like, during which time they should be made much of; and, previous to their going to the troughs to water, they should be walked quietly about in line with each other, but, as has been just observed, not so close as to allow of any colt becoming unpleasantly familiar with the one that may be next to him.

Thus should colts be practised, not only until they go quietly by the side of each other, but until they will let other colts or horses come rather suddenly up by the side of them, in a gallop, a trial, or a race, without being alarmed or swerving away from them; and until they will, when pulled at, easily stop nearly in a line with each other, under either of the above-mentioned circumstances.

Any colt that may swerve or break away with a boy while at this sort of exercise should on the next, and every succeeding day, be ridden by the head lad, until he has got the colt to do what is necessarily required of him; and when the head lad gives up riding such colt, one of the best riding boys must at all times ride him in his exercise. All the colts we have here been mentioning should in succession be ridden by the

head lad, who should practise them occasionally to go to what is called "the head," that is, a little in front of the other colts, he (the lad) having previously cautioned the boy that may be riding a colt against him, to sit steady and not urge his colt on beyond the pace he has been accustomed to go, while he steadily goes, for a short way up the gallop, head and neck with the colt against him. The lad, then taking a pull, should go head and head for a few strides; then for a short distance, before finishing the gallop, he should go out to the front, and take the lead for a few lengths, just previous to the pulling up of the two or three colts, whichever it may be.

Thus should the colts occasionally be practised on the downs; or, which is to be preferred, up between the rails of a course, passing the winning post, and pulling them up at the usual or convenient distance beyond it; and after they have recovered their wind, they should be turned about, and walked back to the weighing-house; here the boys, if not too small, may dismount and make much of them, then get on them again, and walk them quietly away.

Such are the precautionary measures to be ob-

served in the teaching of yearlings and two-year olds on their first coming on to the downs to be trained, with a view to preserve their tempers, and prevent their becoming tricky; no matter how good the racing properties of a colt may be, if, from improper management, he should, at the above early age, get into any of the habits already mentioned, he is, as I have before noticed, most likely spoiled for ever as a race horse, or, rather, there is no dependence to be placed on him when he is called upon in severe running, nor can his owner ever think of backing him for a single guinea.

Yearlings that are thus far forwarded by teaching are many of them sufficiently well trained for the length they have to come; and with those that are not so, as the thick ones and the hearty ones, the groom may do a bit of work, and get them into something like condition, that is, he may get them about three parts ready, if the weather keeps open, and they have not been tired; they also may, if the owner wishes it, at the usual weights and lengths, have a spin together just before Christmas, merely to see what may be good or bad among them.

This sort of trial gallop being over by the end of December, the yearlings may now be laid by, that is, they should be indulged for a month or six weeks, coming out only on occasional days to be lunged, with a view merely to keep them in health. Two or three of the first class, more particularly if a little queer in their tempers, would perhaps be the better of being ridden quietly about, either daily or every other day, until about the middle or end of February. Which of these two periods must depend of course on the time they are to come out to run as yearlings, that is, whether it be in the middle or end of April.

All that we have stated in this chapter, with regard to the teaching of yearlings, also stands good in the teaching of two-year olds, that is, if the latter do not leave their paddocks until they are two years old.

CHAPTER XV.

PHYSICKING YEARLINGS.

Towards the conclusion of the last chapter, I stated the necessity of the yearlings being laid by (about the end of the month of December) for the space of six weeks, to be somewhat indulged; and, considering that period elapsed, it brings us to the middle of February. By this time the yearlings in question are, as far as regards their constitutions, in a fit state to have their physic given them, that is, if they are sound and healthy, and have plenty of flesh on them, and are to be got ready to come to post to run at about the end of April.

The groom will of course have the cavessons put on those of the third class that have been

properly enough laid by to indulge, and from which they will have become very hearty, and have them walked out and lunged for a few days, so as to steady them a little before they are again mounted; or, as some of the horses in the stables, of different ages, will have to come out to run early in the spring, these will by this time have begun their sweats, and on any mornings they are going to sweat, the colts I am just alluding to may go out at the same time with them, and may be walked about and lunged a little; and when the horses that have been sweating are scraped and done, their sweaters may be rolled up, and put securely on the colts' saddles, to be carried home to the stables; when, if the groom thinks it necessary, he may order the cavessons to be taken off the colts, their mouthing-bits to be put on, and let them stand beared up on the pillar reins for half an hour; their things may then be taken off, and they may be dressed and shut up with the other horses. This is not a bad way of steadying some colts, that may be more hearty or fractious than others. From the above precautions having been taken, our colts and fillies are become quiet, and ride now much as they did when we left them in December.

The next thing to be done is to get them through their physic, or, more properly speaking, to get their physic through them. For the manner of preparing them for their physic, as also how they are in every respect to be treated while under its operation, either in or out of training, see Vol. I. Chaps. 7 & 8, on the Various Causes for Physicking Race Horses.

The reader is not to forget that the twelve yearlings to be trained are in four different classes. The colts are in three classes: the first are the thick, strong-constitutioned colts—these will require physic; the second class are the hearty ones, there may be one or two of these that may also require physic; the third class, the flighty ones, scarcely ever require medicine of any kind. The fourth class, the fillies—there may, perhaps, be one of this class that may be benefited by the administration of physic.

Now, there are some few precautions to be taken in the physicking of these young ones: first, it will be advisable, by way of experiment, to begin with small doses of the best Barbadoes aloes, as three drachms, or three drachms and a half, in the first dose. To a colt of the first class,

the latter portion may be given; to a colt of the second class, it will be best to give the former portion; and, according to the effects the medicine may produce on each colt, so should the interval of time be increased between each dose, from eight to ten days; and, by the same rule, so in proportion should the quantity of aloes be diminished or increased in giving the second dose. A third dose of physic may, no doubt, be requisite for each of the colts in the first class; yet it will be advisable to keep this third dose in reserve, until the groom sees in what manner the work these colts will be put to do will affect their constitutions. We may give a third dose to each of them after their first sweat, or we may give it after their second sweat, or we may not have to give it at all, if the weather keeps open, and the groom is of opinion that the work the colts have begun will, by being gradually continued, bring them in due time sufficiently clear in their wind, and straight and handsome in their carcasses, without either abusing their legs, or reducing too much their muscular system. Now, on the other hand, should a frost set in early in March, and continue until this month may be nearly or perhaps quite concluded, these colts would then have to go to exercise on the

straw beds for three weeks or a month. Under these circumstances it would be necessary, to assist in keeping their legs cool and in shape, and also to prevent them from getting too fat in their insides, to have recourse to the reserve doses, by giving, in addition to the two first, not only a third dose of physic, but perhaps even a fourth. For the second class colts, as they do not require to be in as strong work as those of the first class, two doses of physic each will be sufficient, unless, as I have already noticed, a frost should set in, when a third dose may be necessary; but I should say not otherwise. The third class colts are too delicate to do any thing like work, they therefore seldom or ever want medicine, unless labouring under disease.

The reader may now form some idea of the purposes for which physic is given to colts or horses in health, either in or out of training.

CHAPTER XVI.

TRAINING YEARLINGS.

The time it has taken to get our yearlings through their physic brings us now to the first of March; as they will not have to come out to run until near the end of April, we shall have about eight weeks to train them. This allowance of time will be amply sufficient; not that it is necessary for yearlings to be at constant and regular exercise for the whole of this period, but for the three first weeks of the eight it will be advisable to be doing little and little every day, or every other day, as in giving to those strong colts of the first class such walking and galloping exercise as may be found necessary to steady them, and keep their memories refreshed. We shall then have five clear weeks for the doing

of what may be called a bit of work with them. The first week of the five, they may go such steady, brushing gallops as will bring them sufficiently clear in their wind to enable them to go with tolerable ease to themselves through the first gentle sweat.

The first week of the five being disposed of as above advised leaves us four weeks clear, which is about the time, if the weather keeps open, that these strong colts will take to be in regular training. There may be a thick glutton of a yearling, in this first class, that puts up flesh very fast, and that is idle in his wind; this sort of colt would require to be as regularly worked, in the lengths of his gallops and sweats, as an aged horse, before he can be got sufficiently light in himself, and clear in his wind, to be able to come his best pace equally with those colts that are much more delicate, and consequently sooner ready. Unless the above precautions are taken in the training of a thick colt, he may deceive the trainer in his trial or race. The trainer must therefore make allowances, and begin with such colt accordingly; yet, the reader must observe, that, upon a more general scale, yearlings do not require to be drawn very fine, that is, not

stripped of what is commonly called "their waste and spare." These young ones run but short lengths, and, although they may be a little lusty, their flesh is not likely to fatigue them before their race is over, (provided they are in good wind), at least not those colts of the second and third class.

The second class colts will not take more than four weeks to get them ready to run; the first week of the four they should be getting ready for their first sweat, much in the same way as I have described should be done with the colts of the first class, only allowing for the delicacy of the former, by merely letting them have such walking exercise as will give them an appetite for their food, and such galloping exercise as will steady them, and also bring them pretty clear in their wind.

The third class of colts will for the present require little more than walking exercise.

Let us suppose the twelve yearlings I have been writing about to have actually been thus far forwarded in their training; those of the first class, from the exercise and physic they have

had, will alter very much from the state of condition in which they were when they first left their paddocks. There will also be some favourable changes in the condition of the second and third classes: the muscular system of the bodies of the horses of the three classes will have diminished in weight, more or less, while their legs will have increased in strength; that is, the tendons them will have enlarged, and become strong and well braced, from the action they have had; so that when they arrive in the morning on the downs to exercise, (after allowing them to walk long enough to have become steady, and have emptied themselves), we may venture to send them up their gallops, without much fear of breaking them down. The length of gallops that yearlings may go may be half a mile, a little more or a little less, just according as the groom may observe the length his colts are going in their gallops may affect the constitutional strength and temper of either the one or the other of them.

Yearlings having been gradually forwarded as I have advised, there will be no danger to be apprehended from their going in their gallops the above lengths, provided the boys are light,

the ground not deep, and that the colts are not allowed to go beyond that of a steady even pace; I mean by this, that they are not to be allowed in their gallops immediately to extend themselves. Those colts that are observed not to do well by going gallops of long lengths, let them go shorter ones; and, with a view to bring those colts stout, the deficiency of length in their gallops can, if necessary, be made up by increasing the length of their sweats. Why I wish yearlings to go steadily a moderate good length in their gallops is, that I wish as early as possible to bring them somewhat acquainted with the advantage of going steady and collected in their stride. To accomplish this, they must all have good riding boys upon them, particularly the boy who leads the gallop; he should be a good judge of pace, and know well how to forward a colt. The groom, in giving his orders to the boys as to how they are to ride their colts, which we suppose to be on the downs, should speak to them thus:—"Mind boys, keep your places, and get quietly away with them, and as soon as they are settled in their stride, drop your hands and keep a light steady hold of their heads." Although the groom gives his orders generally to the whole of the boys, it

is to the boy who leads the gallop, whose name, for example, we will say is Tom, that he gives his more important directions; perhaps, just as the colts are approaching the gallop, the groom calls out—"Tom, mind you do not take them too fast; and when you come to such a part of the gallop, (naming an object well known to the boy), take a quiet pull and finish steadily with them in the little run you will have to make to the end of the gallop." When they are all pulled up as near in line together as may be, they should be allowed to stand for two or three minutes to recover their wind.

Going thus regularly on in their gallops, teaches them how to make use of their legs, by getting the fore ones well out; and the closer they are together the better, provided their feet do not interfere or come in contact with their fetlock joints or legs, and, by so doing, cut the former or bruise the latter. Their hind legs should be well in, or under them, and the wider apart they are in reason the better. Colts that are kind in their tempers, and not hurried too early in their work, soon become acquainted with the advantage of their stride, and will, (if properly ridden), when called upon to exert

themselves, get gradually to the extent of their stride, and will ably maintain their best pace in a good rally, without being over-marked, and made what is called "a spread-eagle of."

The increasing of the pace of yearlings in their gallops, and the length they are to go in them, especially with respect to colts of the first and second classes, must be regulated by the training groom, according to circumstances, as that of his noticing how their different constitutions may vary, or each colt may become affected by the different gallops he may be taking. And it is also to be observed that the whole of these colts, although yearlings, must go such a pace and length in their gallops, as, from one sweating day to the other, may be found necessary to keep them all sufficiently clear in their wind, so as to enable them to take the few sweats they may have to do with tolerable ease to themselves. But the reader must bear in mind, that the method I have here advised for the teaching of the first and second class colts to stride steadily in their gallops, can seldom or ever be practised in a similar way with any of the third class, the latter being much too irritable in their tempers to be taught in this manner.

To give the colts of this third class confidence in doing their exercise, (as I have already noticed), various are the means that must be had recourse to, as that of changing from one system of treatment to another, as often as may be found necessary, so as to bring them reconciled to do what you require of them, by walking or galloping them in different situations, by going from one part of the downs to another, allowing them to walk quietly about in retired places, and now and then walking them on the different gallops. Long walking exercise not only steadies them, but it gives to most of them, what they are often in want of, an appetite for their food. At walking exercise they may follow each other in a string; but, in their gallops, it will be advisable, with those that are easily alarmed, to send them singly. When opportunities offer, they may be walked out on to the last mile of a course; but let them first walk up between the rails here, and pass the winning-post, stop them and then turn them about, and walk them off at that part of the course they would have to walk off at had they been running. At other opportunities, they may walk out to such a suitable part of the finishing of the course, as to allow them to go up between the rails a long steady gallop singly—such a length of gallop as

yearlings ought to take; or, there may be two of them that may quietly follow each other, putting a steady two or three year old colt in front of them, or a good sort of hack, I care not which, so that the colts in question go content up their gallops, and that, when they have passed the post, they pull up and walk quietly off afterwards. If they should walk contentedly away, after having their occasional or daily gallops, for a few times on one piece of ground, it will be advisable to take them from such ground before they shew symptoms of being alarmed, and then to let them go on with a daily repetition of their exercise on the new ground, being careful to remove them from this also before they become frightened.

Considering our yearlings to have been long enough at walking exercise to have recovered from the effects of their physic, and to have been sufficiently long, also, at galloping exercise to have got pretty clear in their wind, we will, in the next chapter, get them through their sweats.

CHAPTER XVII.

SWEATING THE FIRST CLASS OF YEARLINGS.

We now come to speak of the sweating of those young colts of the first class, which are now something more than two years old. The length of their sweats should be from two miles to two miles and a quarter. These colts being hearty feeders, put up flesh very fast; and although I do not by any means hold with that of drawing young ones fine, yet there are now and then some among them so very thick and close made as to require, even at this early age, their being brought, by a repetition of gentle sweats, into something like the shape and form of a race horse. How often a yearling will have to sweat must depend on what effect the first sweat may have produced on him, in reducing the surface

of his muscular system, and on the time the training groom may observe the colt again putting up flesh, according to which the interval should be regulated from one sweating day to the other. A groom cannot be too careful in observing how a colt puts up flesh; nor, on the other hand, can he be too careful how he takes it off him. I mean by this, that I prefer a young one, and more particularly the sort of yearling to which I am now alluding, to appear, on his coming to post, (particularly if a big one), as to his muscular surface, rather full or high, provided he is clear in his wind, and that he has got a little longer length into him than that he is going to run. The groom is to ascertain these two last-mentioned circumstances, by observing sufficiently early how his colt is going on with his work; and what more principally will guide him is, how this same colt comes home in the finishing his last two or three sweats. But he must take care that the colt has on him, in doing his two last sweats, a smart, light, good riding boy, who knows how to put his orders into practice.

It is to be understood that this colt in his turn has kindly enough led the gallop or sweat

for others of his class; we will now, therefore, put him to lead the last two sweats he has to do as a yearling; and this is merely that the groom may know to a certainty how he can finish or come home in them.

The groom now cautiously gives his orders to the boy that rides the colt; he says—"You must mind, Bill, what you are about; come you off with them presently" (meaning the two or three colts of the first class that may be going to sweat together) "at a steady even pace, until you come to such a part of the ground," naming some known object as a guide to the boy, and which object should be about three quarters of a mile from where the colts pull up on finishing their sweats. The groom, in going on with his directions, says, "when you get there, take a quiet pull to set your colt agoing, and come with him at a quiet sweating pace; but as you know he is rather an idle one, if you find it necessary to get at him, by now and then taking a pull and hustling him along, do so; for you must mind to come home the whole of the way from where I tell you at a good, fair, sweating pace." The groom, knowing his hack (which he is upon at the time) to be a pretty quick one for a short

length, says to the boy as he is about to leave him, "I shall be waiting for you within about half a distance from where I told you to pull up, and for about two or three lengths before you come to me, take a pull at your colt, and twist him along. I shall go head and girth home with you, for I want to see how your colt will finish his sweat in this length of rally; but mind, you are not to be too severe upon him, or you will overset him in his stride." The groom, in speaking to the boys on the colts that may have to follow in this same sweat, says—"Keep a steady pull on your colts, and endeavour, without severity, to keep your places, that is, mind you do not persevere too much with them."

The above colts having gone well through their sweats, and the colt that leads having finished very satisfactorily, the groom now thinks, or perhaps he talks the thing over to himself, and says, speaking of the colt that led, "Well, he has come in his sweat at a good, fair, sweating pace, for a little longer length than he will have to run, either in his trial or race, and I know by my hack that he finished in a rally of nearly half a distance at something like a racing pace; he pulled up sound, and blowed his nose in good

time; and he walked away strong and well to the rubbing-house." The groom, still talking on to himself, speaking again of the colt that led the sweat, says, "As he is in such good wind, he cannot be very fat in his inside; as to his being high is of no consequence, for his flesh cannot fatigue him in the short length he has to come; and by the time he has done what is necessary to finish him, he will come out ripe and in good form, at least I do not think, thick and close made as he is, if well ridden, that he can deceive me in running either in his trial or race."

The above calculations are such as should be made by the groom in his getting ready to run a strong constitutioned colt. Unless such precautions as I have noticed are attended to, a groom may be deceived in the trying or running of the above-described colt; and such colt, from not being in a fit state to be tried, may very undeservedly be considered much too slow to race, in consequence of which he probably may be sold greatly under his value.

CHAPTER XVIII.

SWEATING THE SECOND AND THIRD CLASS OF YEARLINGS.

The constitutions of colts of the second class have already been noticed as being in the medium, and that they are also moderate feeders. The reader must therefore bear in mind, that however lusty they may be, on their first coming into training, they will, by less work, not only come more readily into shape, but will be much longer putting up their flesh, from one sweating day to the other, than those colts of the first class: they consequently will not have to sweat as frequent as those mentioned in the last chapter. Although these second class colts are rather more delicate than the first class, yet there may be one or two among them that will not do so well in being trained

by the usual or necessary repetition of gallops. A colt of this sort generally does better with rather longer walking exercise, (to increase his appetite), but with shorter and more gentle gallops before and after water. A groom, in training him, will in all probability find, that he will do better by being sweated rather oftener than those colts that will bear longer and more frequent gallops; but he must observe, that this colt, as also the others of this class, are lightly clothed in their sweats, more particularly if the morning should be warm.

On the first time of sweating these colts, the groom's orders to the boy that leads the sweat should be, "Come you off with them, Tom, at a gentle and even striding pace." As there will be no occasion for them to do more in the concluding of their sweats on each sweating day than very gradually to increase the pace a little, until they have to do their last sweat, at the latter part of which they should come home at a downright good sweating pace for a little longer length than they have to be tried, it will not be necessary for the groom to come home on his hack, in a short rally with them, as I have directed he should do with the first class colts; but it may be as well for him to be

in waiting, within about a distance of where they pull up, so that he may see how they all finish their sweats, in passing him. If they pull up sound, blow their noses in good time, andwalk well away to the rubbing-house, they will do; provided the little there is to be done with them afterwards is properly attended to, until they come out to run; and, as their race, like all of their year, is but a short one, (see the Racing Calendar), they cannot well come out too high in flesh, provided they are clear in their wind.

Now, with regard to the sweating of the third class yearlings, a very little of this sort of thing goes a great way, even with the best of them; one or two of them may occasionally have to go over the sweating ground with a view to bring them somewhat stout for the little length they have to come. But, as there is nothing to be taken off the muscular surface of these colts, and as they are light in their carcasses, they are almost invariably in good wind. They should therefore go over the sweating ground lightly clothed, or, if the morning is warm, they may go over it stripped. They may go in company with each other, or singly, whichever may best suit their tempers. Some colts of this class are so

very delicate and irritable that they never require to be taken over the above-mentioned ground during the whole time of their being in training.

I shall not here make mention of the further treatment necessary to finish the training of each of these classes of colts, as the different brushing gallops they are to have given them from their last sweating day up to the third or second day before they run. Nor shall I notice the setting them the night before their race, nor the putting on their plates, or plaiting of their manes, on the morning before they have to come to post. Those matters will be fully explained in different chapters, when we are describing the training of the horses of different ages; for the same rule stands good in the finishing of yearlings, (only allowing that they are yearlings), from their last sweat to the day of their race, as in finishing the horses of all ages from their last sweat to the day of their race. We will consequently consider the whole of the former as being ready to come out to be tried, and which will be the subject of the two next chapters.

CHAPTER XIX.

TRYING OF YEARLINGS.

In the last three Chapters on the Training of Twelve Yearlings, I arranged them in four classes. The three first consisted of colts, three in each, and the fourth was the fillies. This was merely intended to shew how the constitutions and dispositions of each class varied. But now, to give the reader a clear idea of how yearlings are to be tried, under all circumstances, I will, in this chapter, by way of example, alter the arrangement of the above twelve yearlings, by forming them into two classes only, which we will consider as consisting of six colts and six fillies in each class. Let us suppose that the above yearlings belong to one individual, and that there is in the park or on the premises of the owner, a

convenient and private piece of ground, with posts erected at a suitable distance apart, to try these young ones for a little longer length (as a few strides) than they have to run in their races. (See the Racing Calendar). Now, the best way is to try each class separately, under the usual weights, as eight stone on the colts and seven or eleven on the fillies, care having been taken by the groom that the colts are in all respects ready to be tried at the appointed time.

On the morning of the trial, the groom says to the head lad—"You must ride one of the three-year olds to the beginning of the trial ground, to set them on their legs; let the boys give them a short gallop a little way along the bottom from the start, and then pull them up, and walk them quietly back again towards the start; and as they are doing so, tell them to walk their colts up in line with each other; then tell them to keep a steady hold of their colts' heads, and, on seeing as they approach the winning-post, that they are all ready, and that you are yourself ready with your horse to take them off, give them the word 'away.' But, from the pains we have taken in teaching them, they, for young ones, know pretty well what they are

about; and, as they are kind in their tempers, I have no doubt they will all go straight enough to the end, therefore you need not go farther with them than to see them all settled in their stride; you may then take a pull, and gradually or imperceptibly, as it were, decline running on with them, but just take care to wait as far in the rear of them as to see how each of the boys gets on with his colt. I shall be waiting for them about the winning-post." The groom is next to give his orders to the boys who are to ride the colts, either in the stable, or as he is going along with them to the ground. He says—"You must mind, boys, what you are about this morning, in riding your colts in their trial; mind what Charles will presently tell you; and, as you are walking up to the starting-post, be sure you are all ready with your reins knotted, and keep a steady hold of your colts' heads, so that when he gives you the word to come off with him, take all the care you possibly can to come away together; do not, on any account, let any thing like a false start happen to any of you. But now, boys, you must mind, after you are all well off, not to get pulling or holding of your colts as if you were riding horses in a race; you must be sure not to do that sort of thing." The groom, now addressing him-

self to a boy who looks after a colt that he has some opinion of, says to him—" Sam, you must mind what you are about, for that colt of your's seems to me to be rather a resolute ready sort of comer; you must mind to be very quiet with him. When you are all well away from the start, if he likes to go to the head and make his own run, you have nothing more to do than to preserve your temper, and keep a good steady hold of his head, and let him go on with the pace as early and for as long a length as he likes, entirely of his own accord. Sit well down, and be as still on him as possible; and do not attempt in any way to urge him on beyond what he chooses to do himself; you must not do that sort of thing." The groom, now addressing himself to a boy that may be on a thick glutton of a colt, says—" Bill, mind to get well away with them, and begin early to rouse that colt of your's, for he is rather an idle one; get at his head, and twist him along, and, if you think it is necessary, make use of your spurs occasionally, to urge him to run fairly on in the whole length of the trial, or he may deceive us." The groom, in speaking to four of the other boys, as Tom, Harry, Jem, and Fred, that are on colts in the medium, (that is, such colts as are kind in their tempers, and easily rode),

says—" You must be gentle with those colts of yours; as soon as you are all well away, and your colts are settled in their stride, you have only to take a quiet pull to set them a-going, and persevere with each of them by repeating the pull just as often as you find it is necessary, so as to keep them at their best pace for the whole of the run home; that is, if you find they can run well on to the finish, but certainly not otherwise; therefore, be careful to bear in mind at what part of the ground, should it so happen, your colts begin to tire or be beat for pace; and be sure you do not for a moment attempt to persevere afterwards with them, by either getting up your ashen plants, or even to kick them with your heels; you must never do this with young ones that are kind in their tempers, and that will run freely on as far as they can of themselves." The groom, in speaking again to a boy that may be on a free flighty colt, says—" Frank, you have good patience, and you must be very quiet with your colt; as soon as he is off, let him make his own run, as early and for as long a length as he likes; you have only to endeavour, by lightly holding him, to keep him together, that is, as much within his stride as you can. If, on ap-

proaching near home, you find him beginning to tire, do not on any account attempt to strike him, or persevere with him in any way. Your better plan will be, to take a strong steady pull at him, as if you were going to pull him up, but not so determinedly as to pull him entirely out of his stride. The truth is, in case of your colt tiring, I want you to try, in the way I tell you, to get him as collected in himself as you can, so that he may finish the little he may have to do in concluding the trial, without, if possible, being alarmed."

The groom, having given the above orders, proceeds on his hack to the winning-post, placing himself sufficiently wide of it to have a clear view of how each colt comes in. The length the colts have to run being but a short one, he can see pretty clearly the sort of start they make; and he must narrowly observe how they are all coming, and immediately he sees the first colt pass the winning-post, he must place the others. Having done so, and questioned the boys as to the running, he then forms his opinion of the good or bad properties of each colt, agreeably to how they were placed in the trial.

On the following morning the six fillies should be tried in the same way as the colts were; and the groom will judge of them as he did of the colts, just according as they may be placed.

We will observe, with regard to riding a yearling in a private trial, when he is well on his legs, and settled in his stride, that, if he should feel inclined to go to the head, and, by increasing his pace, he can get well away from the company, he should be permitted to do so, by being allowed to make his own run. The rider should never pull or wait with a yearling as he would do with a three or four year old in a race. Although this might be very well with one of the latter class, as he would have some idea of what his rider was about; yet it is a bad way to ride a yearling when he has not been long enough at it to know how to collect himself, and wait patiently. Pulling determinedly at him would baulk him of his stride, by which he would become flurried; indeed, if he was thus to be ridden in a trial, it would be no trial whatever. If a yearling in a trial will readily take the lead, the rider has nothing more to do than to sit quiet, and with a gentle steady pull keep his head straight, and let him go on with the pace

he appears able to maintain to the end of the trial ground.

Whenever colts and fillies are tried, they should, on being pulled up after their trials, be let stand for a minute or two to recover their wind. As they are in good condition, if the morning is moderately cool, being stripped, they will not be heated in coming the length of the trial ground, they may, therefore, walk in line for a short time; or, if the water troughs are at a moderate distance, they may be walked up to them, and allowed to take a few go-downs of water; they may then walk away to the stables, or, if none of them have been alarmed in their trials, they may go gently up a short gallop, and afterwards walk back into the stables. I recommend this sort of treatment, after their being tried, in order to make their trials appear to them as much like their exercise as possible, with a view to prevent their becoming alarmed. If any of them are frightened, from the exertion they have undergone in being tried, they will frequently refuse their corn for a stable hour or two; but, by gentle usage, and by watering them rather liberally, and not laying their corn before them in too large a quantity, they soon come to feed

as usual, and forget the little bustle they have been engaged in.

It will now be advisable after a week or ten days to put into one and the same class the winner of the trial of the colts and the winner of the trial of the fillies, and such other colts or fillies of each class as were struggling near the head, or were tolerably well placed, for another trial. This trial will not only decide the difference between the colts and the fillies, but which is the best of the year out of the whole produce.

Supposing the trial to take place on a small scale, as where a breeder is breeding from four or five mares, the produce of which will, of course, consist of both colts and fillies; these, as far as regards the trying of them, may be tried together in one class; and, according as they are placed in the concluding of the trial, the groom will judge of the speed each may possess.

We now come to speak of what may be considered a good trial, which is that of any colt or filly singling itself out from a strong field of young ones, by taking the lead immediately from the

starting-post, and, from superiority of speed, getting an unreasonable length in front of all the others, and maintaining this sort of speed the whole of the way to the winning-post, so that the other yearlings in the trial are not only unable to catch such colt or filly, but to stop at the pace in any part of the running. We shall suppose that two of the yearlings out of the twelve we tried were thus advantageously placed in the trial on passing the winning-post, and that one of the two was three or four lengths in front of the other, which, of course, we shall hereafter consider as our best colt. This is what may be considered a good trial, and one indeed of some importance to the owner; no matter what engagement such colt or filly may be entered into, as this is but a secondary consideration with the owner. His first object is to keep this matter a profound secret, and how this may be done shall be spoken of hereafter.

We will now suppose another case, as a man breeding from a single mare, and that he is desirous of trying her produce as a yearling, being aware that a colt or filly bred as above does occasionally turn out to be of so superior a cast, as at two or three years old to win some of the most

valuable stakes we have at our principal meetings. The owner having no opportunity of trying his single produce privately at home, sends it to a training establishment to be got ready to be tried publicly, by entering it into a stakes with other yearlings, which we shall explain in the next chapter.

We will now notice some few arrangements relative to the disposal of the twelve yearlings we above supposed to have been tried. In the trying of so large a number, it will of course be found that there is a considerable variation among them, as regards the good or bad properties they may each possess, as we have already shewn. Those of size that are thought to have sufficient speed to come short lengths, as across the flat at Newmarket, or others that are thought to be sufficiently stout to come the Derby length at Epsom, or the St. Leger at Doncaster, will in due time be suitably entered by the training groom into a few of such of the good things as are to be run for at the above-mentioned places, either by two or three year old colts or fillies. Such others of the twelve yearlings as were proved not to be quite so fast as those first mentioned, we will consider as forming

an inferior class; some of which may be likely to make good country-plate horses. We will turn these out into separate paddocks, in each of which there is of course a loose house and water trough. These colts are to remain here to be well fed with corn and hay until the month of September, by which time they will be two years and a half old, when it will be proper to take them up. The few remaining colts of the twelve, which were proved, on being tried, to be so inferior to the others as to be totally useless for racing, are generally ill formed as to their structure; some of them are so big, leggy and unwieldy, as to be incapable of supporting their own bodily frame in coming a racing pace for anything like a racing length. While some others may be equally inferior from being small, under-sized weedy colts, that have neither sufficient length, breadth, or substance, in any of those essential points, which would enable them to maintain their speed in a long race. These inferior colts should be disposed of as soon as possible to make room in the establishment for other stock, as also to save the expense of keep. Colts of the above description, bred in the neighbourhood of Newmarket, are there sold at the spring or autumnal meetings. Others, bred in different parts of the country, if

they cannot be sold, either by private contract or public sale, in the neighbourhood wherein they are bred, are, if the distance is not too far, sent to London to Messrs. Tattersal's; here they are mostly sold for what they will fetch.

Previously to the concluding of this chapter, it may be necessary to observe, that the same arrangements, allowing for the difference of the year, stand good in the teaching, training, trying, running, and disposing of colts that may not be taken up from their paddocks until two years old.

CHAPTER XX.

RUNNING YEARLINGS.

At Newmarket, Catterick Bridge, Malton, or any other place at which racing meetings are held sufficiently early, there are mostly stakes opened for yearlings to be entered into. To have a tolerable true run race, it will be advisable to make the stakes worth winning; to obtain this point, the subscription should be thirty sovereigns each, ten forfeit; we will, to shew the reader how the thing is to be done, say, that the annual meeting at which the yearlings' stakes are to be run for is but a few miles distant from our home stable. We shall have to take a couple of horses to run for something at the above meeting. With the horses, we will take the two best yearlings we are supposed to have tried, both of which we found to be very superior to any yearlings we had ever tried before.

Now, it is proper that our horses should arrive at the stables in the neighbourhood of the meeting on the fourth day previous to its taking place, so that by exercising them every morning on the course, (which they may possibly have never run over before), they may become acquainted with it; and, to be certain that both our yearlings will at the same time kindly go up between the rails of the course, they must accompany the horses for their own length. It is also advisable to make the two yearlings follow the race horses through the crowd on each day of their running up between the rails of the course in concluding their races.

Let us now proceed to shew how these little matters are to be carried into effect. Suppose the horses and colts to have arrived in the stable prepared for their reception in the vicinity of the meeting mentioned. On the following morning our horses and colts are to be taken out to the race course. The colts being ordered by the groom to go as far in front of the horses as will give them time to walk on by the side of the course up to where their gallop is to begin, are to be kept there moving about until the horses come up to them. The horses are to

begin their walking exercise from the starting-post of the course, walking on as much of that part of the course as may be necessary to give them, in the latter part of it, a sufficient length of ground to take their gallops on; and as they are coming along in them, and are getting up nearly opposite to where the colts are, these latter should be ready to go off in their gallops, and follow the former, the whole of the way up between the rails, and pass the winning-post before they pull up. Thus are horses shewn a course, and colts taught to go up between the rails of one.

We now come to speak of how yearlings are to be brought to face the crowd on a race course, at the time of the horses running. The way to do this is, on the first day of the meeting, and on each succeeding one, about an hour before the races begin, to take the yearlings in question on to the race course, under the charge of the head lad, who should be on a hack in the front of them. The lad, on his hack, followed by the colts, should go up between the rails of the course, and pass the winning-post; then being turned about, they should be walked back, down the outside of the rails among the foot people, (who are by this

time pretty thickly assembled), and near to the most crowded parts; here they may occasionally be stopped, and allowed to look about them; after which they may be walked down to where the rails of the course conclude, or, if a longer length be necessary for the thick colt we shall bye-and-bye have to run here, as far down as where they, the colts, were before started off in their gallops. On turning them about here, if the head lad observes the course to be pretty clear, that is, not much crowded in its centre by the people, (which it ought never to be), he may start his hack off at a good, steady, quiet gallop, and, being followed by the colts, go up between the rails; after passing the winning-post, they should be pulled up and made much of, to give them confidence; and they should be kept walking about near to the crowd, as there is mostly great cheering among the people as the horses are running past them up to the winning-post. Should the colts, at this time, appear to be the least timid, they are to be spoken kindly to and much noticed by the boys who ride them, so that they may not become alarmed; after which they should be taken home. At the same time on the morrow they are to be brought again on to the course; here they are to be walked about between the

rails and in the crowd, as they were on the day previous. When the bell rings for the saddling of the horses that are going to run, the colts should be walked down between and as far below the rails as is necessary to admit of their getting tolerably clear out of the crowd. Their having arrived at this part of the course, the head lad, under whose care the two colts are, speaks to the boys who are riding them: he says—"Now mind you are both ready to follow me with your colts, immediately on the horses passing," (meaning the horses that are running). As soon as the whole of the horses are passed by, the head lad on his hack, and the boys on their colts, immediately follow the horses up the distance, passing the winning-post. The colts, on being pulled up here, should, as I have already observed, be kindly spoken to and much noticed by the boys on them; after which they may be kept walking about near the crowd for an hour, or until they have become cool and collected from the little surprise the bustle they have been engaged in may have occasioned, when they may be taken home.

Now, when a number of horses (say six or eight) are running at a country meeting, they mostly run heats. Some of these horses will

be ordered by their trainers to run for the first heat, while others of them may not be required to run this heat. The orders given to the jockeys who ride the last-mentioned horses is—to wait, and not to run for the first heat. These jockeys, therefore, follow as close to the horses that are in front of them as may be necessary to give to their own the opportunity to save their distance. The jockeys, having done this, take a pull at their horses, and allow them to go slowly up the distance; having passed the winning-post, they pull them up, turn them about, and walk them back to the scales, dismount and weigh.

In describing the running of horses here, I confess I have digressed a little from my subject. I have done so merely to shew my readers, that there is no danger to be apprehended from colts following race horses in concluding their races, as the course is invariably kept clear from the crowd, until the whole of the horses that may be running have passed on to the winning-post.

As we are now satisfied that our yearlings will boldly face the crowd when running, let us return to the subject of the yearling stakes, of which

we made mention in the early part of this chapter. In these stakes we suppose to have been entered in due time one of the two yearlings we brought with us to the meeting, (the second best colt), the one that ran within three lengths of the colt that won at the two trials of the three classes of colts and fillies, and which we selected as being the best out of the twelve yearlings we tried in the last chapter.

Now, to ride our yearling we will put up our own jockey, whom we know to be an experienced good rider; he is an honest man, and has long been in the practice of riding both young ones and old ones, in trials and races, under all the various circumstances in which such things are done. This man is consequently a good judge of what is called a racing pace; he is therefore fully capable of describing all the particulars of the running, in any race in which he himself may be engaged to ride. The instructions given by a trainer to a jockey, as to how he is to ride any colt or horse in a race, are termed "a jockey's orders." But as we are going to put upon our colt our own jockey, it will be more a matter of discourse between the trainer and

the jockey, as to how the colt in question is to be ridden, than any very accurate or strict order to him on the subject.

Our jockey having brought himself down to the weight he is to ride, the trainer in the morning of the day the yearling stakes are to be run for, begins to converse with him as to how he wishes him to ride our colt in the race. He says to the jockey—"You must mind to get this idle yearling of ours well away with the rest of them from the start; as it is a short length you have to run, you must of course keep your place. But as our colt is not very likely to set-to of his own accord to run early in the race, you will be able to see what the rest of them are about, and which among them are likely to run honestly home. What I want you to do with our yearling is, to take as good a measurement as you possibly can of all the others. I would much rather you did this than that you should call severely on our colt to come with a view to win the stakes, and perhaps, after all, you could only be second, which you know is the worst place you can be in, unless under certain circumstances, which we in the present instance have no occasion to trouble ourselves about. However,

should there not be running enough made for our colt, you must begin making use of him sufficiently early in the race, so as to draw them out that we may know something about them."

Now let us, by way of example, suppose that six yearlings were entered in the stakes already named, and that they all came to post and ran; that it was a close race with the two first, and that our colt was a tolerably good third, but that the three others were beat a long way, or rather that they were not placed. The race being over, the colts are taken home. Now, after a race is over, it is an invariable rule for each training groom to question his jockey as to how or what running may be made by different colts or horses that may be engaged in any race. I shall therefore relate the sort of conversation that may be supposed to take place between our trainer and his jockey on the race in question, not only as to how our yearling ran, but as to how the rest of them ran in this same race. The trainer, in talking the thing over privately with his jockey, says—"You all of you got a good start; you appeared to me to be running at a good pace; and, as far as I could discern, I thought the whole of you kept pretty well to-

gether, until you were within about a distance and a half of home, so that you must have had a tolerably good opportunity of seeing what the rest of them were about. Were you third by choice or by sufferance? How was the running between the first and second colts? Was the colt that won called upon severely to come, or did he win easy? As to the other three colts, they appeared to me to be fairly beat some way from home, and I suppose pulled off." The jockey, in answer to the trainer's questions, says —"The first part of the running was much as you saw it. The three colts that were last were beat for pace long before we made our run. The colt that won is a free, resolute sort of goer, the consequence of this was, his jockey had to keep fast hold of his head, and make the running for the whole of us. The colt that was second is also a ready comer; when we were a little more than half a distance from home, the winner was here quietly called upon by his rider to come, when he immediately began running at a severe pace, and the colt that was second got well away with him. Our colt, being so very idle, I could not get him out near his best pace quickly enough to lay close up by the side of them, so that, in the commencement of the run home, they slipped me rather

more than a length; but I clearly saw how the running was; it was a true run race between them, but I do not think it was accurately so with our colt; for, after I had got him pretty well out, he kept his place in the run to the winning-post, and as they (the two jockeys that were in front) saw me persevering with our colt, when they commenced their run, they would naturally conclude, as I was third, that their colts were faster than ours, and more particularly so, as they also saw I was obliged, in the early part of the running, to take an occasional pull at our colt to urge him on, merely to make him keep his place; but as I did not in any part of the race call severely on our colt to come, he pulled up fresh and well. The colt that won, and the one that was second, appeared to me, as they walked back to the scales, to have been at all they could do; and I am pretty certain, that, if they had much farther to have gone, at the pace they were at in the run home, they must in some degree have come back to me; so that if our colt is not quite as fast as either of the other two, I am confident he is much stouter. Indeed, if you had not been so very anxious about the measurement of the five colts, I feel quite certain, that if I had made more use

of our colt in the early part of the running, I could have won the race." The trainer, in reply to the jockey, says—" I have no doubt you could have won the race, but according to the running that was made by the other colts, you could not have ridden ours in a more satisfactory manner, to please me, than you have done. For it certainly is of more consequence to us, to have taken the measurement we have of the other colts, than that our colt should have won the stakes, and that we afterwards should have been left in ignorance as to the company he had been running in, which in all probability would have been the case. For had you, in the early part of the race, gone out in front of them, and made the running with our colt, which you must have done to have won with him, you could not then have had so good an opportunity of seeing whether it was a true run race or not with the whole of the other colts, and as our colt was placed but a middling third, the public, if they think anything at all about him, will form rather a bad opinion of him." Thus concludes the conversation between the trainer and his jockey.

The yearling race being run, and the meeting concluded, our two horses and our two yearlings

are on the following day travelled off to the home stable. This brings us to about the middle of April, at which time it will be advisable for us to lay by for a short time our two yearlings. The one we have so high an opinion of, and that has not run in public, we will get ready to turn out by putting him into a cool loose box, and gradually stripping him of his clothes. On the first of May, his shoes being taken off, his feet being properly cleaned out, and the lower edges of the crust rasped round, we will, as we do not intend bringing him to post for some time, put him for a couple of months into a well-fenced paddock, in which there is a good supply of fine spring grass. In this paddock there is of course a water trough, and a well-ventilated loose house in which the colt may shelter himself from any severity of the weather. The house is to be kept clean, and properly littered as occasion may require, under the superintendance of the groom or head lad; the colt we put here is to be regularly and plentifully fed with corn every day, by the boy who looks after him. He may also have daily, if he is inclined to eat it, some hay.

The yearling we have been running in public,

we have described as being an idle, gluttonous colt, and, from the work he has been doing, he may be considered as being a little stale. But, as this colt is tolerably well engaged, and will have to come to post as a two-years old in the autumn, we cannot afford to lose more time in refreshing him than is absolutely necessary. Therefore, instead of turning him out into a paddock for a couple of months, we will take off his shoes, put his feet to rights, put some standing clothes on him, and turn him into a clean, ventilated, and constantly well-littered loose box; here, at the accustomed stable hours, he is to have his usual allowance of corn, to be wisped over, his mane and tail combed out, his legs rubbed, and due attention paid to his feet. For the first three weeks or a month of his remaining in this box, he is to be plentifully fed on green food, as vetches, lucern, or clover grass. Those grasses, whichever may be used, should be cut daily, and a rubber full or two given every stable hour by the boy who looks after the colt. For what purposes green food is to be given to colts and horses, see Vol. I. Chap. V. p. 105.

In the last seven chapters, I have described how yearlings are to be taught, trained, tried,

and run. If the whole of the practical observations here laid down are carefully attended to by the reader, in the management of his yearlings, according as their constitutions may vary, I have no hesitation in saying, that he will find his colts will, in every respect, progressively come into that state of condition in which they ought to be when brought out to run, in either their trials or races. If such yearlings be kind in their tempers, they will, if properly ridden, be capable of running honestly for the length they have to come, that is, as they are not very cunning at this early age, they will fairly shew what speed or stoutness they may each possess; unless, indeed, there are any very big ones among them, which may probably require more time to bring them into that fit state of condition, which will enable them to shew what racing powers they may have.

The two colts we just now placed in situations to get fresh, we shall return to bye-and-bye, when they are two years old. The whole of the subject, on the treatment of them as yearlings, is, therefore, concluded.

CHAPTER XXI.

HALF A DOZEN CRAVING HORSES DOING THEIR FIRST SWEAT EARLY IN MARCH.

Race horses that are hearty feeders, as I have already said, put up flesh very quickly, and, as they cannot run their best pace, when fat, but for a short length, it becomes necessary to reduce them, which is done by sweating them as often as occasion may require during the time of their being in training. A repetition of this sort of exercise may take place, with some horses, as often as three times a fortnight; with others, once a week; with others, once in ten days, a fortnight, or three weeks. There are some horses so very delicate, and have to run such short lengths, that they may not require a sweat during the whole time of their being in training.

How horses may have to sweat while in training, and the different methods to be adopted in getting them carefully and properly through their sweats, will, as I have elsewhere frequently mentioned, depend (as must all other things which are done unto them) on a variety of circumstances; as, for example, the ages of the horses, the strength of their constitutions, their manner of feeding, the state of their condition, the season of the year, the state the ground may be in at the time, as that of its being very wet, having too much foot-hold, or otherwise, as being very dry and hard. The whole, or rather most of the above causes, will in the end have reference to the three following:—first, whether the horses are to sweat, principally, to get the flesh off them, and which takes place in the early stages of their training; secondly, the length of ground sufficient to get a good sweat out of them, which takes place when they are getting pretty forward in their training; thirdly, to go fast enough to bring them stout as to pace, and which must be near the time of their perfecting their condition. The very great extent to which it is frequently necessary to sweat some race horses, renders this sort of exercise the most severe of any they have to undergo.

On the ground which race horses are to sweat over, there is, of course, a rubbing-house, where the stables are not conveniently near, (but in the present instance we will consider them as being sufficiently near), at a suitable distance from where the horses may have to pull up. That there may be no very difficult turns on the ground, it should be of spacious dimensions, as of four, or at least two miles in circumference; and if it has a little degree of ascent and descent, I should prefer it to its being a dead flat; and further, if we had the power of selection, and such a ground could be found, I should choose one where the commencement was a level surface for the first mile and a half, or two miles, where the ground is four miles in circumference, and then a gradual rise for half a mile, then descending for about the same distance, and then proceeding on along a level surface until within about half a mile of its conclusion; in which latter part should be another very gradual ascent (similar to that of the finishing of some of our race grounds) to where the horses pull up. Why I wish the ground to vary a little is, that when the trainer is giving orders how his horses are to go in their sweats, he may direct the pace to be increased at those

little ascents and descents, if he conceives it necessary; thus practising the horses on the different parts of this ground where it resembles the course they may have to run over with other horses in their engagements.

The different lengths horses will have to sweat will of course depend on their ages. A yearling may go in his sweat two miles; a two year old, two miles and a half; a three year old, three miles, or three miles and a half; and a four year old, four miles; but if this latter colt should have to run four miles, and the season is somewhat advanced, he may occasionally come four miles and a half; a five or six year old may at times sweat five miles. Each of the above lengths will occasionally be varied, depending on the constitutions of the horses, and their condition, the state of the ground, the temperature of the air, and their ages as connected with the season of the year.

Having now made mention of some of the principal causes for the sweating of horses in training, and the effects it produces on them, as well also as having noticed the sort of ground,

and the different lengths horses have to go in their sweats, I shall now proceed to state how the whole of the practical detail is to be carried into effect.

Horses, in commencing their training, sweat very readily; they should, therefore, go at a slow pace, and as they proceed on gradually in their different sweats, their bodies will be diminishing in weight; and while their legs will be increasing in strength, their muscular powers and wind will also at the same time be progressively improving. As woollen cloths are bad conductors of heat, they are consequently the most proper and convenient for the purpose of horses sweating in; and the quantity or number of them are to be increased by the directions of the training groom, according to the different effects he intends they are to produce. (For a description of different sorts of cloths, and their various uses, see Vol. I. Chap. 9.) The groom therefore orders the head lad, on the sweating morning, to lay out the proper quantity of sweaters behind each of the horses that are to sweat. Most horses that have been accustomed to be trained, and that have been habituated to sweat often, are more or less

alarmed, or nervous, on their sweating days; they feel apparently conscious, from their having been set over-night or in the morning, that they will shortly have to undergo more than their usual daily exertions, and which they immediately shew in various ways. On seeing their sweaters being brought into the stables, just before they are stripped to have them put on, some of the strong craving horses will stretch out either their legs or their carcasses, others empty their intestines or bladders, while some others, as the more delicate ones, may be seen trembling, and some may have a little palpitation of the heart. The first mentioned of these habits, the strong horses should be allowed quietly to perform, after which they soon become reconciled. The light, delicate horses do not get rid of their fears so readily as the stronger, they therefore require to be treated in the most kind and gentle manner possible at the time of their sweaters being put on; when they are clothed up, mounted, and ridden out on to the downs, their apprehensions generally go off.

The training groom will now, on opening the stables in the morning, proceed with the same

arrangements as he did in the winter season before the horses began their training, with the addition of the preparatory matter of finishing the setting of those that may be going to sweat. Strong constitutioned horses, that may have to come to post at the end of March or beginning of April, will have to begin their sweats (if the weather is open) early in February. At this time, and, perhaps, even to the end of March, the mornings are seldom either fine or warm enough for the horses to sweat, until after the boys have got their breakfasts. On the approach of summer, the horses sweat earlier; and, should it be excessively hot in the months of July and August, it will be necessary, to prevent the horses becoming jaded or languid by the heat, to sweat them in the cool of the morning, perhaps before the dew is off the grass.

Many of the horses that put up flesh quickly, will, as I have observed, have to sweat as often as three times a fortnight. Should the morning, on the days they have to sweat, be cool, it will be advisable to defer their sweating until the day is farther advanced, as nine or ten o'clock; it will be better to do this in the early stages of their condition, than afterwards, to produce

the desired effect, to overload them with clothes, or hurry them in their pace. Horses that may only have to sweat once in a week or ten days require but little in the way of flesh (even in the early part of their training) to be taken off them; and, on approaching near to their best form, they are then only sent over the ground with a view merely to keep the length in them, and to clean their skins. Their clothing and pace should therefore be arranged by the groom accordingly.

We will now mention a few arrangements to be made on the morning horses have to sweat, no matter whether before or after breakfast. In the first place, the number of horses that are to sweat at one time must be regulated by the number of boys there may be on the premises of any racing establishment; that is to say, when horses pull up from their sweats, there must be not less on such occasions than three boys to attend each horse; five to each would be a more proper number for the finishing of the horses quickly.

When there is not much to be done, and the mornings are not very hot, for the conveniency

of shutting up all the stables at one time, the horses that do not sweat are occasionally left in, until those that have sweated are roughly dressed over and re-clothed. The first-mentioned horses are then got ready to exercise at the time those that sweated come out to take their sweating gallop.

When the sweating days of the different horses come round, the number that have to sweat may be gradually diminished. If eight or ten, or perhaps more, have to sweat on the same morning, they should be put into classes, or, if they have to sweat together in one class, care should be taken that all, as nearly as possible, require the same treatment. Should there be any material variation among them as to age or constitution, some artificial modes must be adopted to bring them as nearly as possible upon a par: as by increasing the quantity of clothing on those horses that may be rather high in flesh, and by clothing lightly or putting up lighter boys to ride on those that may want but little flesh coming off them, and by regulating the pace they are to go in favour of the young ones. If these precautions are adopted, it is not likely that any thing wrong will take place.

In the clothing of horses that are going to sweat, there are two other things invariably to be observed: the one is, not to let the clothes be to such an extent in quantity as in any way to incumber the horse, so as to interfere with the pace he ought to go; the other, not to let the pace in the early stages of his condition be faster than is absolutely necessary to produce a good sweat from him.

Horses, in commencing their first sweats in spring, are all more or less unclean in their skins, and more particularly those of strong constitutions that may have been stripped and allowed to lie by in a loose box during the winter. There is an accumulation on the surface of those horses' bodies of an unctuous, scurfy, or dusty sort of substance, which, in the first two or three sweats, mixes with the perspiration, and causes the fluid scraped from the horses' bodies to be of a frothy, glutinous, greasy and unclean nature; and therefore, until these horses have sweated two or three times, I should recommend the oldest of the sweating clothes being used next their skins.

Horses, as they are improving in their condi-

tion, are more difficult to be got to sweat than at any other time. Whenever this is known to be the case, it becomes requisite, not only to make some little addition to the clothing of such horses, but also to increase the length of the sweating ground for half a mile, or perhaps more; and if they are, which is mostly the case, strong-constitutioned horses, and are drawing near the time of finishing their training, the groom should order the boy who rides the horse that leads the sweat to increase the pace somewhat earlier in concluding the length of the ground, than is usual with other horses on more common occasions. It is of course to be understood, that whatever horses are to sweat, they have been previously prepared, that is to say, they have been set according to what they are. The muzzles have been put on some of them over-night, perhaps on some others very early in the morning.

We will now proceed to state the way in which horses are to be got ready that are going to sweat: and first as to the manner of putting on their sweating clothes. These we have already observed are ordered by the training groom to be laid out in sufficient portions behind each horse. The morning the horses are to sweat, as the hour

approaches for them to undergo this exertion, the groom, with a sufficient number of his boys, enters the stables, and each boy goes into the stall of the horse he looks after, and takes off his muzzle and collar; the horses then come round and have their bridles put on. When any thing is being done to a race horse, unless he is very vicious, the boy who looks after him is mostly the one appointed by the groom to take charge of his head. We will now suppose this boy to have hold of the reins of the bridle in each hand, strained pretty tight, and to be standing at a convenient distance in front of his horse's head; while two boys, (one on each side), of more experience, are clothing the horse up for his sweat.

We will now state minutely the directions for putting on the sweating clothes of one horse, and which of course will answer for the clothing of any other; only observing this difference, that the quantity of clothing is either to be increased or diminished, according as the age, constitution, or condition of the horse may require. Being stripped of his standing clothes, the first part of the clothing to be put on him is his hood, which should be lined throughout with white serge; if it should be necessary to apply two,

the first should be without ears. The hoods being put on, and tied under the horse's jaws and throat, the neck part of the hood is, for the moment, turned far enough back towards or over the horse's head, to admit the body sweater, (a white swan-skin sheet), which, being put on next his skin, should reach from the top of the horse's tail to half way up his neck. Towards the end, and on each side of the centre part of this cloth, there should be a small buckle on the one side, and a strap to meet it on the other, so that, when buckled, it may perfectly cover the neck, shoulders, and chest of the horse. To these clothes may be added one of the blanket-like sort of rugs; over this may be an old quarter piece; if the horse is very lusty, and is in the habit of putting up flesh quickly, that is, if he is a difficult horse to keep in any thing like racing form, a second quarter piece may be added. These body clothes being put on, and the neck part of the hood turned back to its proper place, the cloth next to be applied is the breast sweater, the centre of it being placed on the centre of the chest of the horse. Each boy must lay the front part of the ends of the rug, the quarter pieces, and shoulders of the hoods, as smoothly over the shoulders of the horse as

he can, previously to bringing the sides of the long sweating cloth up each side of the horse's shoulders to the top of his withers, where the ends of this cloth are to be crossed over, and continued as far back as they will go towards the horse's loins. The saddle, and, if requisite, a martingale, being put on, it may now be girthed up.

Previously to the horse going out of the stable the groom must see that the bottom part of the breast sweater is not too tight, this he is to ascertain by putting his hand up between it and the horse's chest; if it should be too tight, he has only to draw it sufficiently out at the bottom part, so as to give room for the free working of the points of the horse's shoulders. Unless this little precaution is taken, the horse's shoulders will become galled, from the friction occasioned by too much pressure of the breast sweater during the time the horse is galloping over the sweating ground, and more particularly so, should he be a delicate thin-skinned horse.

The old-fashioned long breast sweater might, I think, be advantageously done away with, and a less inconvenient one substituted; for example,

I would recommend this sort of cloth to be made like a common breast cloth, with only this difference, that it should be much fuller, and lined with white serge or swan's skin; and instead of having two buckles at the top ends of this cloth, it would be better to have a buckle on the near end, and a strap on the off one, which can be passed through a loop that may be placed long ways on the top of the outside of the wither part of the old quarter piece, that is used outside of the other clothing the horse sweats in; and on each side, at about the middle part of the fore ends of this quarter piece, there should be fixed two straps to meet two buckles that are to be similarly placed on the centre or side ends of the breast cloth. These straps and buckles, thus fixed, will answer tolerably the purpose of keeping the other clothes in place, as well also as preventing the admission of air to the surface of the body of the horse as he is going along in his sweat. The advantage of a breast sweater being thus made is, that when the fore parts of the horse are to be scraped, this cloth can be more readily removed than the long breast sweater; for, in removing or pulling this cloth from under the saddle, the horse's body clothes are loosened, or indeed in some measure removed—a sort of

thing which should not be allowed to take place, until the saddle and clothes are all taken off at one time, for the horse's body to be instantly scraped. The old-fashioned long, narrow body-sweater being an inconvenient one to put on, has long since been dispensed with; and as the long narrow-breast one is quite as inconvenient to take off, I see no reason why this cloth might not give place to one similar to that I have been describing.

Having now described the manner of clothing horses in their sweats, we shall proceed to the sweating of them. It is to be understood, that the six horses we have taken for an example have all been in previous training, some for two, and others for three years; and that they have also been doing some little portion of work in their gallops, merely to clear their wind in a slight degree. We have noticed in the Chapter on Galloping Exercise, that, whenever the training groom wishes to do any thing particular with regard to the working of his horses, he puts up a boy to lead them in their work, who is a good judge of the pace of any horse he is riding; this boy, by the time he has become proficient in this part of his duty, will also have become acquainted

with another very essential qualification, viz. to understand the brief manner, on various occasions, in which the groom, in a language rather peculiar to himself, gives his orders as to what pace he is to rate any class of horses in their work. Now, as this boy is very steady, and can ride well, he is, of course, of the greatest utility to the groom; and, as we shall frequently have to make mention of him, that we may do so in as few words as possible, we will call him Thomas, or, more familiarly, Tom. To this boy, or some other such one, or to the head lad, if the latter is sufficiently light, the groom will have, under a variety of circumstances, as he proceeds in the training of the horses, to give his orders. To give the reader a small specimen of our boy Tom coming into use, we will introduce a training groom giving to him the necessary orders as to how the six horses already clothed up are to go over the sweating ground. "Tom, you must mind what you are about this morning with these horses; it is their first sweat this season, and they are very lusty, and there is a good deal of foothold in the ground; be sure to take them steadily along, do not attempt to go any thing like half speed; just go as fast the whole of the way with your own horse as will bring the other horses into

a slow even striding pace; if you rate them as I wish you, there will be no danger, lusty as they are, of any one horse going too fast for another." The groom, in speaking to the boys on the other horses, says—"Mind you keep fast hold of your horses' heads, and keep in your places as when you started, until you pull up."

The groom, on his back, is to observe how his horses are going on in their sweats; he should also take care to be early enough at that part of the ground where the horses are to be pulled up. Having been pulled up, they may be let stand for a moment to recover their wind a little; they should then be moved quickly on into the rubbing-house or stable. The boys having ridden the horses into the stalls here, and turned them about, dismount, and immediately slack their horses' girths, and take off their horses' boots. Each boy having moved as much of the bedding round the front of his horse as will prevent him from slipping about at the time of his being scraped, takes charge of his horse's head, in the same manner as he did at the time when the horses were being clothed up for their sweats; while the other boys, who were left behind to assist in getting the horses done, immediately put on to

each horse (as directed by the groom) an additional portion of clothing, as hoods on their heads, and quarter pieces on their bodies, reaching back to the tops of their tails. By this additional clothing, the respiration of the horses is immediately increased to a very considerable extent. The stables being shut up, the heat of them soon becomes augmented, from the hot vapours arising from the surface of the horses, as well, also, as from their lungs. These circumstances, combined with the exertion the horses have just undergone, cause them to break out into a violent perspiration, which proceeds through the pores of their skins, in that well-known watery fluid called sweat. By this discharge of the superfluous fluids of their bodies, they are, what is called in the language of the stable, drawn fine, or stripped of their waste and spare flesh; or, more properly speaking, are sufficiently lightened, both internally and externally, of their superabundant adipose membrane or fat.

By properly accomplishing of this object, we obtain a variety of others. First, we give free action to the muscular surface of our horse's body; secondly, we give the same to the internal organs, as those of his abdomen and thorax; thirdly, we

give room for the circulation and respiration of the animal; which, with other proper treatment, in due time enables him to undergo great exertion, not only without endangering his constitution, but with comparative ease to himself; and even if the horse be in a plethoric state, and, after having gone over the sweating ground, the perspiration is encouraged to pass off from the surface of his body to the extent I shall presently speak of, he will be preserved from any inflammatory attacks, as that of fever or inflammation of his lungs.

How long the horses in question that have been over the sweating ground will have to stand breaking out under their additional clothing, must depend on circumstances. The time they will have to stand may be from five to ten or fifteen minutes, just according to how quickly the perspiration may begin to flow down their fore and hind quarters. While waiting for the horses to break out in their sweats, the various spare boys should be employed about each; one boy may untie the first and second string of the hood under the horse's jaw; and pushing the hood a little up, he may with a rubber, without annoying or interfering at all with the respira-

tion of the horse, wipe quietly his face, eyes, and mouth, and between his jaws; while two others, after having taken off the horse's boots, may be engaged in quietly rubbing the legs with a little soft straw, by which the horses will be considerably refreshed.

The groom in the mean time is to be looking on, and as soon as he observes the sweat beginning to run down the extremities of his horses, he should pass his hand under each horse's clothes, and feel on the lower surface of their shoulders; and if, on drawing the back of his fore-finger with some degree of pressure down these parts, he finds the perspiration passing freely on before it, he may consider the horses as being in a fit state to be scraped. Having ascertained this point, he cautions the boys who are in charge of the horses' heads, to keep their reins strained, and to be sure to keep their eyes constantly fixed on those of the horses they are holding. He then directs the other boys (of whom there should be four to each horse—two to the fore quarters, and two to the hind) to untie the horses' hoods, and immediately to remove them and the breast sweaters; they are then quickly

to turn the front and back parts of the clothing over the horses' saddles. The boys now, with as little delay as possible, commence very quietly and steadily to scrape the necks and fore and hind quarters of the horses. (For a description of the wooden instruments used on these occasions, see Vol. I. p. 194). As soon as the horses are sufficiently scraped in those parts, which may be known from the sweat no longer passing on before the scrapers, they are to be wisped with soft dry straw; as the wisps get damp, they are, of course, to be changed. While the bigger boys, at the hind quarters of the horses, should take an opportunity, as directed by the groom, to wipe with their rubbers, as gently as possible, up between the inside and back part of the horses' thighs; and they should endeavour, also, by degrees, to do the same to their sheaths and testicles before the perspiration has dried on the surface of those parts. This I am aware, with some horses, is, at times, rather difficult, but much may be done, even with those that are refractory, by gentle usage and patient perseverance; by such means I have often succeeded. The fore and hind quarters of the horses being thus far forwarded,

their saddles and body sweaters are taken off. Their bodies are then to be scraped and wisped as their quarters were.

It will now be advisable, (if there is ready in the stable a bucket of luke-warm water), just previously to the whole surface of their bodies being well wiped over with rubbers, to give each horse, out of a wooden bowl, two or three go-downs of water; this small portion of fluid is not only pleasingly grateful to their tastes, but moistens, lubricates, and cleanses their mouths and throats, and thereby relieves those parts from that parched unpleasant feeling which has been occasioned by the great exertions they have undergone; and if their lips and nostrils are sponged and wiped dry with a linen rubber, they will afterwards feel much refreshed. Their bodies being now done, they are, to prevent them from becoming chilly or taking cold, to be clothed up in warm, dry, comfortable clothing, as soft blanket-like sort of rugs, next to their skins, with as much more of their other body clothes as may be necessary, according to the state of the weather and the delicacy of their constitutions. Their saddles and boots being again put on, and their manes and tails combed

out, their hoods are to be put on; the boys that look after them now mount them, and ride them out of the stables on to the downs. If the morning is not cold, they may walk for a short time to stretch their legs; but should it be cold, the sooner they take their sweating gallop the better.

While the horses are out, the boys that are left in are immediately to throw open the doors and windows of the stables. The horses' beds are to be set fair, and their sweaters, which have just been used, are to be removed; if the weather is sufficiently fine, they are to be laid out on the rails round the back yard; but should the weather be unfavourable, they are to be taken to the boys' hall, and there placed on wooden horses before the fire; when thoroughly dried, they are to be rolled up, with the scrapers in them, and put away in the saddle-room. For the convenient arrangement of these little affairs see Vol. I. pp. 16, 20.

As this is their first sweat, and it having taken place early in the season, the weather is not likely to be warm; and as we do not wish to risk our horses catching cold, there will be no occasion for them to walk longer after they have

taken their sweating gallop than will allow of their becoming sufficiently cool, or in such good state as to admit of their being thoroughly well dressed, without being disposed to break partially out into sweats. It is most likely, that their walking quietly down to the stables from where they pulled up at the end of their gallop will, as they have gone slowly in their sweats, answer the purpose of preventing them from breaking out into second sweats as above described.

Our horses having arrived in the stables, and turned round in their stalls, the boys as usual dismount, slack their horses' girths, take off their hoods and bridles, unbuckle the near side of their breast clothes, and turn them and the fore-part of their quarter pieces back over the horses' saddles. If the horses are kind in their tempers, they should now have laid before them a bit of hay to be picking at while their heads, necks, and fore quarters are being dressed. Those parts being done, and their manes and fore-tops combed out, the horses are turned round in their stalls; their muzzles being put on, their heads are chained up; their feet being picked out, their legs are now to be fo-

mented in warm water up to just above their knees and hocks. This is a very necessary application to the legs of horses that may have been going very long lengths in either their sweats, trials, or races, and more particularly so, should the latter be heats severely contested for; warm water thus applied to those parts relaxes the vessels, and gives a free passage to the circulation of the blood, thereby allowing or aiding those parts to perform their proper functions. Their legs after being sponged dry should be bandaged up, from the coronets to the bending of the joints of their knees and hocks. Immediately previous to the horses being stripped of their saddles and body clothes, I would advise their water, rather warm, to be given to them. I am fully aware that this is rather against the old practice, but I will state why I recommend it, bye-and-bye.

The horses' bodies and hind quarters are now to be perfectly dressed; that they may not be kept too long stripped, there should be two boys employed about each horse, that is, if the tempers of the horses will allow of it; if not, the boy who looks after a bad-tempered horse had better quietly dress his own horse himself. The horses'

bodies and hind quarters having been well dressed, they are to be comfortably re-clothed in their standing clothes; a hood having been thrown over their quarters, and their manes and tails combed out, their bandages are to be removed, and their legs well rubbed. The stables set fair, the horses are to be fed, hayed, and done up as the other horses, which will most likely be at about one o'clock; it may be either a little earlier or later, depending on what time in the morning the horses in question began their sweats. Their quarters being stripped and their heads let down, the whole of the stables are now shut up until four, or perhaps five o'clock; for the horses at this season of the year will only have to go out once during the day.

At whichever hour the stables are again opened, they are to be set fair, and the horses having been watered, their dressing muzzles are to be put on, and their heads chained up; they are then to be stripped, brushed over, and re-clothed, their legs rubbed, their beds set fair, the whole of them fed and hayed, and the stables again shut up until eight o'clock; at which hour they are again opened, the horses' heads being secured as usual, and the beds set fair.

To prevent my so often repeating that the horses' beds are to be set fair, suffice it to say, that the business of setting them fair is invariably to take place immediately on the stables being open, after the bales are taken down; and they are again to be set fair immediately after the horses are finished dressing. Any horse that from lying down may have displaced his clothes, should be stripped, wiped over, and re-clothed.

The manes and tails of all the horses being combed out, their legs rubbed, and their beds set fair, their muzzles are taken off, and their heads as usual let down to the end of the chain, and the whole of the horses in the establishment are now to be fed. But they are not all to be fed alike. Those horses that have been sweating should have given to them a warm mash, of equal parts of scalded bran and oats, which have in due time been got ready, and have been allowed to stand covered up in buckets until cool enough to use. Those horses that are rather light in their carcasses will require but a small portion of mash, say a couple of wooden bowls full; (see the dimensions of this bowl in Vol. I. p. 40). But the horses of strong constitutions, and that are apt to be costive, and some of them are more par-

ticularly so after sweating, should have four bowls full of mash. As soon as these horses have eaten their mashes, and the others their corn, their hay is to be given them; and their heads being unchained, their quarters are stripped. The boys having had their suppers in the early part of the evening, now let down the bed settles, make their beds, undress themselves, and go to bed. The lights are to be put out by the groom or head lad; and the stables at about nine o'clock are locked up until the next morning.

I wish, previous to my concluding this chapter, to make some few remarks on the advantages and disadvantages of applying bandages to the legs of horses in training. It was not the custom at the time of my juvenile days, in the stables, to make use of bandages about the legs of race horses, unless in case of their being amiss on their legs; woollen bandages are, under those circumstances, if immersed in proper fluids, of the greatest utility. Why I have recommended them to be applied to the legs of horses, after they have been sweated, is merely for the purpose of drying their legs quickly; they should be put on in the way I have already directed; but they are not to

remain on longer than while their bodies are being dressed after long sweats or severely contested races; and more particularly are they useful in case of horses having run heats of two or four miles. On no other occasions than those just mentioned are bandages to be used about the legs of horses, (diseased legs being excepted); nor should they remain on for a longer period than I have advised; if they were allowed to remain on all night, the probability is, that the groom would be led into an error. For, as it is an invariable rule with him, or at least it should be, the first thing in the morning to examine the legs of those horses that may have sweated the day previous, if the bandages remained on, their legs would most likely be found perfectly fine, although perhaps one or other of a horse's legs or fetlock joints may have received an injury—on the tendons of the former, or ligaments of the latter—neither of which injuries may be visible on examination, as the bandages, being left on up to the period above-mentioned, would from heat, and a certain degree of pressure, act somewhat upon the principle of fomentations and poultices, in preventing the natural enlargement that would otherwise arise from an injury done to any part; and thus, as I

have before observed, the groom would be led astray. But, if the bandages are taken off the horses' legs immediately after their bodies are dressed, there will be time by the next morning for any part of a leg injured to become enlarged by inflammation. The groom, on examining his horses' legs in the morning, if he observes the leg or joint of any one of them to be out of shape, immediately stops his work. But, on the other hand, if the bandages are continued on during the night, and the groom in the morning, on examining his horses' legs, finds them clean and in shape, he, very naturally, would take his horses out to go on with their usual exercise; the consequence of this would be, that a horse, which may previously have injured one of his legs in going along in his sweat, would now, by taking his gallop, make it much worse; in all probability the horse would pull up lame. This sort of thing happening to a horse near the time of his running, would of course do away with his race.

CHAPTER XXII.

SWEATING CONTINUED.

In the last chapter I endeavoured to enumerate the practical details in giving horses their first sweat in the early part of the season, and which are also to be observed in the sweating of almost all horses while in training; during which time, unless they should be unwell, they must not miss a single sweat; but the number of sweating days, and the intervals between each, must be regulated, as we have already stated, by the constitution of the horse. But as horses are getting into condition, (and more particularly so as they approach the time of their running), some little alterations must progressively take place, as to the length and pace they will have to go in their sweats; and there will also be some little

precautionary measures to be observed in the treatment of them afterwards.

After giving horses their first sweat, and when the stables are sufficiently adjacent to the training ground, they should be immediately taken into them, to be scraped and dressed. But as it more frequently happens that the stables are at an inconvenient distance from the sweating ground, which is the case even at Newmarket, with the exception of a stable or two at the west end of the town, they must be taken into the rubbing-house on the downs, to be got done, after they have gone through their sweats. On such occasions some little previous arrangements must be made, as taking there a change of dry clothes, with scrapers, straw, and rubbers. The number and quantity of the articles to be taken to the rubbing-house will depend on circumstances, as the number of horses that are going to sweat, and the season of the year; if early in the spring, and the weather cold, more dry clothes would be wanted than in summer.

The usual way of packing up the dry clothes is, by doubling up the spare clothes a convenient length, so as to admit of their being rolled snugly

up inside the quarter pieces spread for the purpose, which latter are to be tied round their ends with rubbers; and whatever straw may be wanted, for wisping the horses, may be tied up in rubbers, which the spare boys, who go up to help to get the horses done, can carry with them, as also the scrapers. But in the spring of the year, when there may be more dry clothes wanted than the boys could conveniently carry, the better way would be to take them up on a hack, or, if there be a colt or two in breaking, they might be strapped on to the saddles, and carried up by the colts: the same course is to be adopted in taking the sweaters back to the stables. They should then be immediately unrolled and put to dry on the rails in the centre paddock in the rear of the stables; or, if the weather will not allow of their being dried here, they are to be put before the fire in the boys' hall, as we have already stated in the preceding chapter.

We now proceed to speak again on the subject of sweating different horses, under the various circumstances in which they may be required to undergo that operation throughout the whole of their training. We will first notice the horses of light, delicate constitutions. As these are

very irritable and flighty in their tempers, and will not bear much exercise of any sort, (as we have already noticed), but as, on the other hand, they are mostly in good wind, nor, generally speaking, are they disposed to put up flesh to any very great extent, there is therefore the less to come off them, be their ages what they may. There are two motives for sending these light horses over the sweating ground; the principal one is, to get something like a length into them, so as to bring them a little stouter for the distance they have to come in their races; the other is, that clothing them up when they come into the stable or rubbing-house causes them to sweat sufficiently to relieve their constitutions, and the scraping tolerably well cleanses their skins, and makes them afterwards appear fine and glossy in their coats.

Some of these horses may have to go over the sweating ground once in a fortnight, others once in three weeks, others not during the whole time they are in training. The commencing their sweats will depend much on the month in which their engagements are to take place: if in the beginning of April, they will have to sweat early in the spring, and after breakfast, the mornings then

being generally cold; but if their engagements are later, they will not be required to sweat before the season is more advanced, and the mornings warmer, in which case they would take their sweats before breakfast.

The precautionary measures to be adopted, as to how they are to sweat, must of course be determined by the good sense of the training groom; having had the horses in question for some time under his care, he is supposed to know their tempers, and has previously arranged proper boys to ride them. He will probably say to himself, and which is most likely to be true, that such a horse of the above description will perhaps go more peaceably over the sweating ground alone, than in company with others; and should this be the case, the horse is of course to be allowed to do so. If the morning is cold, the horse may be moderately clothed; but if it is warm, he may go in a single light quarter-piece breast cloth and hood; or, should it be in the middle of summer, and the morning hot, he may go stripped. These little arrangements must very much depend on the horse's temper, as must also the orders given to the boy how he is to ride him. If the boy who looks after the

horse is a good rider and kind in his temper, and has always been on good terms with his horse, he may be the most proper one to ride him in his sweat. But if the groom has any doubt in his mind as to the capability of the above boy to ride the horse as he could wish, he had better put up one of the six named in the chapter on the Instruction of Boys in Riding.

The description of horses we are now alluding to require little or no preparation in the way of setting; walking them out on the downs for a short time, merely to allow them to stretch their legs and empty themselves, (which latter they very readily do), is almost all that is necessary. But the groom must observe that the length any horse has to sweat is to be regulated according to his age, (which has already been noticed in the preceding chapter on Horses doing their first Sweat, p. 270.)

We will now mention the necessary orders to be given, as to how we wish this sort of horse to be managed by the boy who is to ride him over the sweating ground, and which ground may, perhaps, be a four-mile course. The groom may, either in the stables, or as he is going with the

horse and boy to the course, speak to the latter much in the following way—"Frank, you must mind to sit very still on your horse, and let him go off as he likes, only endeavour as soon as you can, and in as quiet a way as possible, to get an easy steady pull at him; the sort of pull, you know, must be with that degree of strength which will best answer to keep him, while he is going along, as collected in his stride as you can; and as soon as you find you have done this to your wish, should you feel him getting at all anxious to increase his pace, speak softly and kindly to him, and endeavour now and then gently to give and take with your reins to keep his mouth alive, so that, if you find it necessary to draw on him quietly, you may the more readily do so, with a view to keep him striding quietly along the whole of the way home to the passing of the rubbing-house. (See the situation of the Rubbing House, in Plate the 3rd, Vol. I). After which, give him a sufficient length of ground to be pulled up on, and give and take with your reins in pulling him up, until he feels inclined to stop almost of his own accord. Be sure you do not pull rashly or suddenly at him, with a view to stop him in a short length; if you do you will alarm him—a thing, of all others,

you know, we wish to avoid. (For further instructions on the riding of this sort of horse, see Vol. I. Chap. 18).

The horse having been pulled up, and let stand just for a moment to recover his wind, is to be walked back into the rubbing-house. The boy, having turned his horse round in the stall, dismounts, slacks his horse's girth, and then takes charge of his head. As there is no necessity for reducing the muscular surface of a horse of this description, (he having but a short length to run), he may, if the morning is warm, have been sent over the ground very lightly clothed, or perhaps stripped: be this as it may, it will be necessary, on his coming into the stall of the rubbing-house, to throw an additional portion of clothes on him, to produce a sufficient degree of perspiration to relieve his constitution, or rather to prevent any bad effects from arising—fever or inflammation. This is a circumstance which grooms should particularly attend to with all horses when sweating, and more particularly in their first sweats; for, although I have directed, in the preceding chapter, that they are to go slow in their first sweats, it is still necessary that they should be made to sweat profusely when

standing in their stalls under their additional clothing; and for this reason, that when horses in training begin their sweats, they are not only fat on the surface of their bodies, but they are also very fat in their insides; and consequently in this state they are more liable to become constitutionally diseased from exertion, unless, as I have observed, they are allowed to sweat in the stables to the extent I have already noticed.

If the precautions in sweating horses in the stalls of the stables or rubbing-houses are adopted as I have advised, there will be no occasion for grooms to bleed their horses after their first sweats, as was formerly too much the custom, for fear that they should take cold, and be heard coughing on the following day. After the horse we have sweated has been scraped and dressed, he is to be comfortably re-clothed, agreeably to the state of the weather, and ridden out on to the downs, where he should take a short quiet gallop; and on being pulled up he is to be walked about for an hour, if it is a fine pleasant morning, to give him an appetite for his food. Should he have been a little alarmed by the exertion he has undergone, the boy who rides him may, by speaking kindly to him, and making much of him,

clapping him on the neck and fondling him, remove his fears. This is so very important a point to gain, that no trouble should be thought too much to produce a good temper in a light, delicate race horse.

We now come to the sweating of the horses of the second class, which we have termed the hearty ones. The sweating of them will also depend upon their constitutions. Some of them may require to sweat once a week, others once in eight days, and others once in nine; and it may occasionally be necessary to deviate from these periods, depending entirely on the effects produced upon them by their sweats. Some of them, that are more delicate than others, may not require more than four or five sweats during the whole time they are in training, while others may have eight, nine, or ten sweats within the same period.

As few horses of this class will bear being drawn fine, that is, having their muscular surface much reduced, and more particularly those of them that are young, as the two and three year olds, it becomes highly necessary that the greatest attention should be paid to them on the part of

the training groom;—he is to bear in mind that all horses on beginning their sweats are to go slow in them; he must observe in due time what effect a first or second sweat may produce on each, and afterwards in their other sweats regulate their clothing accordingly; and, if he sees it requisite, make their days of sweating more or less frequent. Should a horse in this class be more flighty than any of the others, that is, if he should be of too irritable a temper, such a horse, like those of the first class, should sweat by himself. How many horses of the second class may sweat together, will of course depend on the number there may be in training, and how often the sweating days of each may come round, which is to be arranged by the groom according to the conclusions he draws from the points to which I have directed his attention. But be the number what they may, as six, eight, or ten, as soon as they are pulled up at the end of their sweats, they are to be allowed to stand a moment or two, that they may blow their noses; they are then to be moved rather quickly on to the rubbing-house. On their being turned round in their stalls here, the boys are to dismount and slack their girths; and, as I have elsewhere observed, their additional clothes are to be thrown over

them. They are then to be allowed to stand blowing (with a boy at each horse's head) until they are in a fit state to be scraped, the mode of doing which I have described in the preceding chapter. Horses are said to scrape well when the perspiration is observed to pass on before the scrapers in a sufficient, or rather a considerable quantity, from the whole surface of their bodies.

As soon as they are scraped, and rubbed perfectly dry, they are to be wiped over with rubbers, and, being comfortably re-clothed and saddled, they are to be ridden out on to the downs to take their gallops, and afterwards walked about till the time arrives for them to go into the stables to be well dressed and done up with the other horses.

Before we proceed to the sweating of the third class, it may not be out of place here to make some further remarks on the tempers and dispositions of thorough-bred horses that are in training; for those of my readers who may not have become familiar with such horses early in life, or who may not have made them their particular study, can have but very confined ideas of the sagacity and resolution some of these animals

possess. Those of the first class are timid and easily alarmed at mere trifles; this may be considered as a constitutional infirmity, and as proceeding from nervous irritability; they, therefore, require (as we have already observed) kind and gentle treatment. Of the second class, the hearty horses, if I may be allowed thus to express myself, are more courageous, that is, they are not so easily alarmed by trifling circumstances, and when out at exercise they are playful and full of their gambols; nor, with but few exceptions, have I found them much addicted to vice, either in or out of the stables. The horses of the third class, which consist of those of strong constitutions, of course differ in their tempers; some of them are quiet, others are disposed, in the stables and rubbing-house, to be vicious, and, speaking of them generally, they are almost all inclined to be idle or sluggish at exercise, requiring great perseverance to get them along in their gallops and sweats; at least such was my experience of them in my juvenile days.

As the horses of this class are very great feeders, they put up flesh quickly, and the consequence of this is, that a groom is obliged to give them a great deal of work. They have,

therefore, frequently to go long gallops, and many of them have to sweat at least three times a fortnight. I have known some, from having to undergo great exertions in this way, to get sulky with their work; and, when they do, it is extremely difficult to make them keep straight on with the pace it may be necessary they should go in their exercise; they lurch or swerve, or they will, in spite of the boy's exertions, slacken their pace, and then suddenly run right out from the straight course in which it was intended they should have gone. A horse that does this is said, in the language of the turf, " to have shut up and gone out."

Whatever habits, as to vice or tricks, horses may be addicted to, it has been thought, by most of those who have had the care of them, that they are hereditary in them, and I am myself much of this opinion; notwithstanding, I do not think that it is by any means the natural disposition of horses to be vicious, if well and kindly treated. Horses of the description we are now alluding to must in times back have undergone as great and repeated exertions in their training, to have brought them out in a fit state to run, as the same description of horses have to do at the

present day; and it was most likely, from the mismanagement of people in former times, who had the care of such horses, that their tempers have been totally spoiled; and whatever habits of vice were thus acquired, they have occasionally transmitted them to their progeny. To this source I attribute the disposition to vice so frequently observable in the craving horses while in training; and let me here observe, that such horses are never more disposed to shew their bad dispositions than at the time of their being scraped or dressed in the stables or rubbing-houses, after being sweated.

As we have already noticed, with regard to the first and second classes, as soon as they are pulled up from their sweats, they are to be ridden into the rubbing-house, where they are turned round in the stalls; their girths being slacked, and their additional clothes thrown on them, they are then allowed to stand to blow for the usual period, or until they are fit to be scraped.

It was the custom in my time to select the smallest of the boys to take charge of each horse's head. This was done by the groom for the pur-

pose of having the bigger boys to work at the horses in scraping, wiping, and finishing them after their sweats; and such an arrangement is proper enough, provided all the horses are kind in their tempers. But should there be, among a number of horses that may have sweated, one or two having a propensity to vice, the small boys ought never in such a case to be allowed to take charge of the heads of such horses at the time of their being scraped, as accidents might probably occur, not to the horses, but to the boys, in consequence of their not having sufficient strength to keep the reins of the bridles wide apart and firmly strained, which is at all times absolutely necessary, but more particularly so in the present case, to prevent these horses from forcing themselves on too near to the boys, when, if they have become irritated from scraping, they will watch for their opportunity to seize them. Accidents of this sort will occasionally occur from the mismanagement of the groom, either in not giving proper orders on such occasions, or by putting boys of insufficient strength to hold the heads of such horses as are disposed to vice. By way of example, I will here mention an instance that occurred when I was an exercise boy :—I had been riding my horse, which was

very vicious, in his sweat, and, on his being pulled up to be scraped, the groom ordered a little boy that had lately come into the stables to take charge of my horse's head. I knew the disposition of my horse well, and had my doubts of the capability of the boy, as regarded both his strength and knowledge, and was afraid of what might happen; nor was it long before my fears became realized, for we had scarcely begun to scrape the neck and fore quarters of the horse in question, when he seized the poor boy by the upper part of the arm, and, raising his head at the same time, he drew the little fellow off the ground, and with apparent contempt threw him from him. The groom then ordered me to take charge of my horse's head myself, which is what he ought to have done at first. I repeat, that a small boy should never be entrusted to hold any horse's head disposed to be vicious, at the time he is going to be scraped. Other accidents similar to the one just described often occur where the small boys are imprudently selected, and cause their being laid by for some time; which was the case in the instance above alluded to.

The manner of dressing race horses in the

stables daily, and particularly those that are vicious, has already been noticed in Vol. I. Chap. 14. But there are a few other rules to be attended to in regard to the management of thoroughbred horses, and which are also applicable to almost all other horses of courage. Now, there is a kind of familiarity with which all horses should be treated, but this must not be carried to too great an extent; they should on no account be played with, as they will be found to be rather rough playfellows, and, by making too free with them, they are apt to become tricky. Thoroughbred horses while in training should be kept by those who look after them at a respectful distance. The boys, as I have before noticed, should on no pretence be trusted alone with them, whenever any thing is to be done to them that is likely to annoy them, as particularly the scraping them after their sweats. The boys on these occasions have not at all times sufficient patience; and those who do not possess too much of this virtue are apt to be too handy in applying their scrapers to an improper use, in striking the horses with them, if they are not narrowly watched, either by the training groom or head lad. If a horse's mane is thick and long, a boy may be permitted to strike the sweat out of it;

but beyond this he should never be allowed to strike a horse with a scraper, or indeed with anything else, more particularly should the horse be disposed to vice; for such a horse will sometimes wait for an opportunity to resent such unfair treatment.

As horses go progressively on with their sweats, some of them, towards the conclusion of their condition, draw rather fine or thin, from being stripped of what is commonly called their waste and spare, by which their bones become more exposed to the pressure of the scraper when it is applied to them after their sweats, and this causes many of them on such occasions to be extremely irritable. However, if there is any danger to be apprehended from the scraping of a vicious horse after his sweat, the best way is to get his head and neck done first, and then turn him round in his stall; put on his collar and muzzle, and, having chained up his head, get his quarters and body done as we have already directed, the groom being particularly careful that the boys do not give more pressure to their scrapers than is absolutely necessary to remove the sweat from the surface of the horse's body.

By taking the above precautions in not irritating a vicious horse more than can possibly be avoided, and if the plan of turning him round and securing his head be adopted, he will be deprived of much of the powerful advantage he would otherwise have in being held by a boy alone. Notwithstanding the savage disposition of some horses, yet, generally speaking, most of them, as I have elsewhere noticed, if properly treated, appear to be more inclined to shew kindness towards us than otherwise; even a vicious horse seems to attach himself to, or make a favourite of, the boy who looks after him. I speak here from a tolerable share of experience. The former is seldom known to injure the latter, unless indeed the boy should be so churlishly rash as unprovokedly to insult him by unnecessarily striking him. As a proof of what I have here stated, the vicious horse I looked after, and which I described as seizing the boy by the arm that was put to hold him while being scraped, I was once travelling with alone, and I well remember being tired of sitting on his back as he walked along. I got down, leaving him loose with the reins on his neck. I moved a little in front of him, and then spoke to him to follow me, which he did very quietly

for about a couple of miles, on a public road, where vehicles of different descriptions were frequently passing and repassing. I confess what I did was very wrong, but I was very young at the time, and knew no better. I have merely mentioned this circumstance, by way of example, and, indeed, I could state a variety of others equally thoughtless and neglectful; but the one I have here given may suffice to shew how very incorrect it would be in any groom to intrust a valuable horse to the entire care of a young, thoughtless, inexperienced boy. I confess I have made a long digression from the subject with which I began this chapter; I have done so merely to give my readers such necessary hints as I hope will guard them against any negligent sort of errors, which might, if allowed to take place, be the cause of serious inconveniences or accidents occurring among the horses.

Let us now return to the sweating of the third class of horses. In the preceding chapter on this subject, we described six horses doing their first sweat in the early part of the season, and we stated that a difference of a week or ten days would perhaps take place in the sweating days of different horses; the period when these days may

come round depending upon their constitutions. But the six horses we are now about to sweat are very nearly alike as to their constitutional properties; and therefore they will all have to sweat within a day or two of each other, some of them sweating three times a fortnight, others once in six days. Be this as it may, the groom is at all times to endeavour to arrange the sweating of this class of horses so as not to have any one of them sweat alone; that is, there should be a horse of the second class, who may be kind in his temper and wanting a sweat, to lead any idle horse of this third class that would otherwise have to sweat alone, his sweating day coming round oftener than that of the four or five others of the same class, whose constitutions are not quite so strong.

Now, as the class of horses in question proceed in their sweats, the various changes produced by them will be readily observed in each horse. Some of them will of course undergo much greater changes than others: one boy finds, in buckling on his horse's body-clothes when he is done after the sweat, that his roller buckles up a hole tighter; another boy finds, in doing the same thing, that his horse's roller buckles up two holes tighter.

Thus, as these horses proceed on with their sweats, so in proportion will the whole surface of their bodies have become more or less diminished. The groom, therefore, after his horses have come in from taking their sweating-gallop, must, just previous to their being clothed up, observe how each horse may have become affected by his first two or three sweats, and, indeed, by every sweat, but particularly by the first two or three, as it is from the effects produced on them by these that he must arrange the different intervals of time that each horse will have between one sweating day and the other, as well as the quantity of clothing he will require.

The groom being fully aware of the lusty state his horses were in before they began their sweats, must now steadily watch the changes their sweats produce on them. He is to go up into the stalls of each of his horses, previously (as I have just observed) to their being clothed up; on these occasions he is not only to look them well over, but he must feel and handle them in such parts as are likely to guide him as to how each horse may have become affected by his sweats. He should first feel the crest of his horses, to ascertain how they handle in those

parts as to substance and firmness, and whether it will be necessary to make the addition of another hood in the next sweat, or to remove the thick sweating hood for a lighter one, which may answer the purpose better; this will depend on whether a horse has a thick high crest, or a low thin one. Having examined the neck and crest, he should pass his hand from the top of the withers down the muscular part of the shoulder to the top of the fore-arm, and then round the front to the muscles of the chest, and here ascertain whether the horse is light, or too much loaded with flesh about those parts; then, placing his hand on the centre and posterior part of the shoulder, he should give it that degree of pressure which may be necessary to imbed it, as it were, in or on a level with the muscles here; and then, with the same degree of pressure, he should pass his hand straight along the centre of the ribs to the centre of the horse's flank, a little below his hip; in doing this he is to observe what height, portion, or substance of muscles goes before his hand, as he passes it along. Having ascertained the state and portion of muscle here, the groom is next to examine the muscular substance and firmness of his horse's loins; which parts ought to feel hard, firm, and springy. In proceeding

on, he is next to bring his hand to the top of the horse's quarters, that space between the hip and the setting on of the horse's tail, and examine carefully what alteration may have taken place in those parts, as whether the muscles of the posterior part of the quarters, which extend from the croop down to the haunches or lower parts of the horse's thighs, are gradually beginning to shew themselves, by the depth of the cavity which divides them, and which is so well marked in all thorough-bred horses, as they are progressively getting into their best form or condition. Those muscles, like almost all others on the surface of the animal's body, should appear distinctly divided, with a plump swell or bulk in the belly part of them.

The method I have here described, of examining or handling horses in training, to ascertain how they are going on in their condition, is an old-fashioned one I allow; yet it is the best with which I am acquainted; and it is one I would strongly recommend grooms strictly to adhere to, while their horses are proceeding with their work, and particularly their sweats. According as the horses become affected by the latter, as in suddenly drawing too fine, or not drawing suf-

ficiently fine or thin, agreeably to their ages and constitutions, or the length they have to run, the groom is to increase or diminish the number of sweaters, and regulate the intervals of time between the sweating days of different horses, as occasion may require, after the examinations he may have made.

Having set them over-night, we will now proceed to sweat half a dozen of the craving sort of horses, the arrangements for which will be much the same as for the like number of horses that went through their first sweat, in the preceding chapter on this subject. But as these have made some progress in their condition, there must therefore be a few alterations made in the orders given by the groom as to how they are to be ridden in their sweats; for having now become somewhat more settled in their stride, and their wind being also improved, they are better able to maintain a certain pace in going over the sweating ground; consequently, they must have boys upon them of sufficient power to hold them as they are going along, and to keep them collected and steady in their places; for it is not because this class of horses have a little improved, and are more capable of going a better pace in

their sweats, that they should be allowed at the present time to do so.

Let us suppose the horses in question to be clothed up for their sweats, and proper boys put up to ride them, (let us say, for example, the six boys already mentioned, as being in the groom's confidence). The groom will thus briefly give his orders to the boy on the horse that leads—"Frank, keep fast your horse's head, and mind you do not hurry them; come with them the whole of the way, (say four miles), at a slow, fair, and even sweating pace." The orders to the other boys are, to hold fast their horses' heads, and mind to keep their places.

The horses having come over the ground, and pulled up, they are ridden into the rubbing-house, their additional clothes being thrown on them, and the other little matters arranged. The groom is now to observe how kindly or freely the sweat may flow from each of them, for they may not all sweat exactly alike; there may be a couple of hardy horses that may not sweat sufficiently; these will require to be differently treated; and if so, it will be proper they should, on the next sweating day, sweat by themselves.

Let us therefore, by way of example, say that the six horses, that have just come in from their sweats, have been scraped, roughly dressed, re-clothed in their dry clothes, have taken their sweating gallop, and, having walked their usual time, are ridden into their stables; here they are well dressed, and shut up with the other horses. I have stated my directions on shutting them up after their sweats rather briefly, without noticing how they are to be watered and fed; but we will take another opportunity of mentioning these matters.

Let us suppose the day to have come round for the sweating of the two hardy horses just mentioned, which did not sweat sufficiently well on the day they sweated with the six horses above alluded to. The two horses being set over night, in the morning are to be clothed for their sweats rather differently to what they were before; their sweaters, or clothes, are to be increased in number or quantity to the extent of four or five times double; and, that they may be of as little incumbrance to the horses as possible, they should be snugly and well put on, commencing from the upper part of the horse's neck, covering his chest, and extending along to the setting on of his tail. In addition to the sweating hood, if thought ne-

cessary, a second one (such as is used on common occasions) should be added; and when a horse is thus heavily clothed, the old fashioned long breast sweater may be put on, which appears to be very well adapted for excluding the admission of air, by keeping the clothes well in place over the shoulders and chest of the horse. To aid the effects of this additional clothing we have just put on the horses, we can, if we think it necessary, give them a good short steady gallop to set them on their legs and warm them a little. In addition to this gallop, we must, if the horses are four or five years old, increase the length of their sweats to very near or quite the extent of five miles. But, as our two horses are heavily clothed, and the length of ground increased, that nothing may happen to their legs, the best riding boys of the lightest weights should be put up to ride them; and if there be one, a better or more patient rider than any of the others already mentioned, he should be put up on the present occasion to lead the sweat. We will give him the name of Bill; and the boy put up to ride the second horse we will call Tom. The groom, in giving his orders, cautions the boy as to the length of ground the horses are to come in their sweats. He says—"Bill, you must mind you are going a long

length this morning with these horses, and you know they are heavily clothed, be sure you keep a steady pull on your own horse; look well before you, so as to keep clear of any small hillocks or uneven parts of ground, that we may have no accident happen to a leg of either of them: be sure you do not hurry them. Rate your own horse at a steady sort of stride, and don't forget to keep him collected, and as well within himself as you can; you must not on any account attempt to draw him out now with a view to finish the concluding part of the ground at the usual sweating pace; just keep him the whole of the length at the fair even pace with which I have told you to begin. And, Tom, mind that you follow Bill steadily; keep your place; be sure you don't let your horse lay out of his ground."

The horses, having gone over the sweating ground and pulled up, are turned about and ridden immediately into the stalls of the rubbing-house; being here turned round, the boys dismount, and as usual slack the girths. The groom is directly to order what portion of clothes he is of opinion is necessary to be thrown on them, according to the effects he may have observed to have been

produced by the increased quantity of sweaters, together with the additional length of ground they had to come in their sweats. The criterion by which he must be guided in regulating the quantity of clothes his horses will have to sweat in in future, is the readiness with which the perspiration may begin to flow down the fore and hind extremities of the horses.

Should it appear that the horses have not sweated sufficiently from the additional clothes and the increased length of ground, I would recommend, on their next sweating day, adding to the former in preference to increasing the latter; for, in adding to the length of ground when horses are heavy in themselves and heavily clothed, they are more liable to become leg-weary, and it may then happen that a leg of one or the other of the horses in question may get amiss.

The horses having been scraped in the rubbing-house, during the time of their being roughly dressed (that they may dry kindly and not break out into a second sort of sweat) should in due time be gradually cooled by throwing open the ventilating apertures or windows. The boys,

having done rubbing their horses, are to re-clothe them in their dry clothing, according to the season of the year; their saddles being put on, they are to be sent out to take their sweating gallop, after which they go to walking exercise for the usual or sufficient time. They are then ridden into the stables; here they are to be well dressed, and, being carefully watered and fed, they are to remain in during the day.

Having now noticed the different ways of horses being sweated, at least as far as we can do so for the present, we will leave them for a short time; but of course, considering them to be going quietly on with their gallops and sweats as directed: and if these matters are properly regulated agreeably to the different constitutions of different horses, they will, when we return again to them, have got rid of much of their superfluous flesh. Their bodies will have diminished in weight, while their legs, from the action they have had, will have increased in strength; and this is the state in which we wish to find them. After having examined them as to what improvements they have made, we shall want to be doing what is called a bit of strong

work with some of them; that is, we shall have to send them along in their gallops and sweats, bye-and-bye, at rather a better pace than we have hitherto done for a certain time previous to their coming to post.

CHAPTER XXIII.

TRAINING OF TWO-YEAR OLDS.

We have appropriated seven chapters to describing the manner of teaching, physicking, training, sweating, trying, and running of yearlings, because they are sometimes taken up from their paddocks at this early age to be tried in private, and even to run in public. These trials and races are often solely with a view to ascertain what the colts are, so as to keep those that are very promising, and, to save expense, by disposing of those that are not likely to become racers.

Should the colts we are now about to train not be taken up from their paddocks until they are two years old, they will have to be treated in all respects as the yearlings were; we therefore

refer the reader to the last chapter in Vol. I. on the Breaking of Yearlings; and to the three first chapters in our second volume, on Teaching, Physicking, and Training them.

As it will be necessary to adopt the same sort of treatment with the two-year olds as with the yearlings, only allowing for the difference of their year, we will not recapitulate what we have already stated, but confine our observations to the alterations in treatment consequent upon their being a year older. First, as to the physicking of the colts in question: the same course is to be adopted as with yearlings, with this exception only, that the aloes may be increased in quantity a drachm or a drachm and a half in each dose, for the strong-constitutioned colts of the first class. But to those of the second class, as the hearty ones, an additional drachm only should be given. As we shall want six clear weeks for the further teaching as well as training of the first class colts, they should have their two or three doses of physic through them by the middle or end of January, depending on when they have to come to post, whether in the middle of March or the beginning or end of April. With these, as with the yearlings, it is always better to keep a

dose or two in reserve, in case of its being necessary to give a third or last dose to any of them after the first sweat.

As the colts of the second class, the hearty ones, do not require so much work in training as those of the first class, it is not necessary to physic to the same extent; a couple of doses is generally sufficient for them, and which may be given at the end of January, as we shall not want more than a clear month for getting these colts ready to run. The colts of the third class, as the flighty ones, will not be in much want of either physic or work; the plan with them is, as we have observed, to let them have such exercise as will give them an appetite for their food, taking care not to do any thing with them that will be likely to put them out of temper; and if some among them will stand any thing in the shape of work, the better way will be to steal it into them, if I may thus express myself. This is all we shall at present say about the third class.

Having finished our directions, at least for the present, on physicking our two-year olds, and considering that they have also been forwarded as directed in the third chapter on training year-

lings, it is now to be supposed that they are ready to commence their gallops. A description of the length of these, and the pace the colts are to go in them, at least those with whom galloping exercise may be found to agree, we shall now proceed to point out.

The length of gallop for two-year old colts is generally from half to three quarters of a mile, or, under particular circumstances, a mile. The two former lengths are usually taken by the delicate and hearty colts, and the latter length is occasionally taken by those of stronger constitutions, as the colts of the first class. If a groom is desirous of occasionally sending his colts the latter length in their gallops, the pace should be moderately slow, approaching to half speed, till towards the conclusion of the gallop, where the length of rally begins; in coming to this part of the ground, the pace, if it is necessary, but not otherwise, in due time may be increased, so that the colts may finish their gallop at about three parts speed.

The effect galloping exercise (see the chapter on this subject) will have on all horses in training, either as young or old, will of course de-

pend on the pace and length they are made to go in them. It is to be understood, as a general rule, that horses of all ages, on their coming into training, must have, as we have before observed, a sufficient portion of flesh on them; and in training the greatest care must be taken not to strip them of it too suddenly; and this rule more particularly stands good in the training of yearlings, two-year olds, and three-year olds. As the two first-mentioned, if they run in their own classes, have but short lengths to come in their races, they do not require being drawn so fine, nor by any means in the same proportion as some of the five or six-year olds do, that have to come much longer lengths in their running.

The galloping exercise two-year olds will have to take, with a good steady three or four-year old to go before them as occasion may require, will be the same as with the yearlings, (except as to length), according to the effects it is likely to produce, or, more properly speaking, the effects the trainer is desirous of producing on each colt But as a guidance to the reader on this subject, we beg to refer him to the chapter on Training the Yearlings, from p. 224 to the conclusion.

The manner of sweating two-year olds is of course very similar to that of sweating the yearlings, the only difference to be observed is, that the former, being a year older, and having to run rather longer lengths than the latter, it is necessary that the lengths of their sweats should be proportionably increased, as from two miles and three quarters to three miles and a quarter; the last-mentioned length will mostly be found to be far enough for the flighty or hearty ones, as we do not wish to take much off the surface of the bodies of two-year olds, any more than we do off of yearlings; we only want to have them sufficiently clear in their wind, and also sufficiently stout to come the length they have to run with others of their year with whom they may be engaged; and the lengths we have mentioned, particularly the latter one, will most likely be found to answer very well for both these purposes. But in the spring of the year, as in the months of March or April, those colts are approaching to three years old, or indeed, if early bred, they are quite so. And as some strong thick ones among them may have to run with horses of all ages, it will be advisable to bring these colts into something like the shape or appearance of race horses, and to make them stout enough to run on

at the pace with the last-mentioned horses, to sweat them three miles and a half, or pretty close upon four miles; but in doing the latter length with them the pace proportionably slower, until they come to that part of the ground where it may be necessary for them, according to their year, to finish their sweats at rather a better pace, more particularly if it be near the time of their coming out to run. And it is further to be observed, that when these colts have to sweat the above lengths, the lightest and best riding boys should be put up to ride them, and in concluding their last sweat or two they should be made to come a good, fair, sweating pace for a little longer length than they have to run, and their sweating gallop should not be less than a mile.

Whenever it may be thought necessary to increase the lengths of either their gallops or sweats, the pace, the constitutions, and ages of all horses must be duly considered, that is, the horses must go proportionably slower, if the length of ground they have to go over in any part of their exercise is increased; and this rule stands good more particularly with young ones. By this we mean to be understood, that the

pace is not to be increased until they come to that part of the ground at which it is thought the hearty or light horses can finish or live in their own length of rally in concluding either their gallops or sweats, and which is occasionally necessary for them to do, as when they are drawing near to the time of their running. But with regard to the stronger-constitutioned colts or horses, these, in the concluding of their condition, that is, in their last two sweats, should be made to come at a good telling pace for a little longer length than they have to run, provided the weights upon them, including the clothes, the exercise saddles, and boys, do not much exceed the weights they will have to carry when they come to post.

To avoid as much as possible enlarging this volume to an unreasonable size, we refer the reader, for the further orders necessary to be given as to how two-year olds are to be sweated, to the two chapters on sweating yearlings (Chaps. 17, 18); and for the details of how they are to be got ready for their sweats, and the treatment to be had recourse to on their being pulled up from them, to two other chapters, the one (Chap. 21) on half a dozen horses

doing their first sweat early in March, and the other (Chap. 22) on how horses are to be sweated under all the various circumstances in which it may be necessary to be done, and in which chapter will also be found the precautions that are to be taken to prevent accidents occurring to them.

We shall now suppose that the two yearlings we laid by in April were again taken up in June: that they were both handled; that is to say, that their cavessons were put on, and that they were lounged until they were steady enough for the boys to ride them out to exercise as usual; that they had their physic given them, and that our best colt was progressively forwarded during the summer, so as to keep his memory refreshed; that our second best colt was put into regular training, and that he did occasionally run during the summer with other colts of his year, the majority of which he beat, and at the October meeting at Newmarket he won a good stake with little difficulty.

Considering the middle of November to have arrived, the racing season may be said to have concluded. Let us now take our leave of Newmar-

ket, and travel our horses off to our home stables. On arriving there we will give our horses and our second best colt ten days or a fortnight's rest, to recover from their journey; but we will at the same time give them such exercise as will keep them sufficiently clear in their wind to come at their best pace for any length we may want them, to try our best colt, or any other colts or horses on the premises. These arrangements, taking place in the month of December, used to be called " the Christmas trials."

As our best colt is now a pretty strong two-year old, and very fresh and well, we will try him for speed with our second best colt, and a couple of others, one of whom should be a three-year old, and which we will consider as the trial horse; the other a four-year old. This latter we put in merely to make up something like a field, or party of horses, so that our best colt, that has never started in public, may not be alarmed when he comes to run with other horses in any race in which he may be engaged. The length of the trial ground should be the same as the two-year old course on the flat at Newmarket (see the Calendar). On the two young ones we will put six stone two pounds; on the

trial horse we will put eight stone. This is putting the weights up in favour of the trial horse, because we want to know whether the opinion we formed of our best colt, when we tried him as a yearling, was correct or not.

The orders for riding this and other trials we will fully explain in the next chapter, when we come to try our two young ones again in the spring. Let us consider the above trial to have been run, and decided much in favour of the young ones, the best colt winning very easy by a long way, and that the second best beat the trial horse two clear lengths.

CHAPTER XXIV.

TRYING OF TWO-YEAR OLDS.

In trials as in races the weights and lengths must be regulated by the ages of the different horses at the time of their running. But in the present chapter it is not my intention to detain the reader by stating what weights are required under different circumstances, nor how the saddle trusses are to be loaded, as we shall have occasion in a subsequent part of this chapter to enter rather minutely into this subject. At Newmarket, where speed is the principal object, the weights are seldom so high, or the lengths of the courses for the young ones to come over so long, as at most of the spring meetings in the North, where, generally speaking, the horses are not quite so leggy as those that are trained at

Newmarket. Consequently, in the North, the young ones, agreeably to their ages, are trained like the old ones, more for stoutness than for speed. And as a greater number of horses are bred in the North than in the South, the breeders in the former country have an opportunity of selecting from a greater number of colts and fillies, and are consequently better enabled to pick out young ones of substance, and less leggy than those breeders in the South can do, who have not quite so large a produce to choose from. But to return to the trying of our young ones.

When yearlings run at Newmarket, they of course run their own length, the yearling course, a little short of half a mile. (See the Racing Calendar). The weight they carry in running this length is from eight stone to eight stone three pounds, making the usual allowance of three pounds to fillies, if they run with them. The weights are much the same for the two-year old colts and fillies, when running in their own class and at their own lengths, which, at Newmarket, is a little short of a mile. But when two-year olds are engaged to run, in stakes or plates, with horses of all ages, the weight to be given by a three-year old to a two, in this sort of race, is

two stone one, two, three, or four pounds, varying the odd pounds according to circumstances, as whether the weights may be considered to be in favour of the young ones or the old ones, and which will depend on the length and difficulty of the course, as well also as the season of the year, whether in the spring, summer, or autumn. We shall reserve our observations on the weights to be carried by the four, five, and six year old horses for the chapter on the subject of Trying Horses of all Ages.

We have stated the weights that two-year olds have to carry when running with horses of all ages, because, unless we try them at the weights and lengths they will have to run according to their year, we cannot accurately get at the truth of what they all are, either as to speed or stoutness. To ascertain those facts, we must come to rather a minute description of how our colts are to be tried. The reader may not have forgotten that we have already pointed out the great advantage which various noblemen and gentlemen in this country possess in being the owners of extensive parks, where their horses may be trained under their own eye. We will suppose, therefore, that the boys and horses have now arrived, in the

autumn, at some such establishment, and are to be stationary in the home stables for the winter, and that there is no other racing establishment in the neighbourhood sufficiently near to cause us to entertain the slightest suspicion that we are to be over-looked at any time that we may be trying our horses.

It will be remembered, that, in a preceding chapter, we pretty well ascertained the character of our two colts to be of a very superior cast, not only when they were tried as yearlings, but also when they were tried as early two-year olds; and, indeed, unless it was so, it would not be worth our while to take the trouble of getting them ready and trying them again.

Now, we know our best colt to be a good one in private, and that he has extraordinary speed. Our second best colt has good speed, and is particularly stout. Notwithstanding we know this much of both our colts, yet we cannot say we know the end of either of them; that is, we are not aware how fast or how long they can go; for, in trying them in their own class as yearlings, we found our best colt so very superior to the whole of the twelve he was tried with, that, for him, it

could scarcely be called any trial at all; and our second best colt, (when in his best form), when running in public, was, as we have noticed, far superior to any of the company he ran in. Therefore, as neither of them have been drawn out to the top of their mark, by weight, pace, or distance, we must now endeavour to come at pretty nearly the truth of what they really can do, not only for speed, but for stoutness; and as our second best colt has been running as a two-year old so well in public, he will be a tolerably good school-master to try our best colt.

The reader is to bear in mind that we are still at our home stables, where, having properly wintered our colts and horses, we have begun in due time, as in the early part of January, to get them all ready to be tried, according to the time of their engagements. We shall now consider the winter to have passed over, and that it is the spring of the year, let us say towards the middle of March, so that our two colts, which we are again about to try, having been foaled early in January, are very nearly three years and three months old, although considered as two-year olds until the month of May.

It now becomes necessary for us to get as near to facts as we possibly can: we will, therefore, arrange things a little out of the common way, by trying our two colts at higher weights, and longer lengths, than it has formerly been customary to do; and this not only because they are now above three years old, but because, from the treatment and training they have undergone since the second time of their being taken up early in June, their muscular and tendonous powers are considerably improved, both as to strength and substance.

Let us now state what means are to be adopted by which we may be likely to ascertain, as near as possible, the racing powers they possess, both as to speed and stoutness. The first thing I shall mention is the trial ground, which we will suppose to be the last mile and a quarter (which is rather more than the three-years old length at Newmarket) of a two-mile course we have in our park; and, near to the concluding part of this ground, there should be a very gradual rise, to the passing of the winning-post, similar to that of many of our race courses. Now, the colt we will make choice of to try our two-year olds with shall be a good three-year old, such a one as may

the year previous have come second in running with a good lot of horses for the Derby, and that has been running on in public in good form with those of his year, as well as with horses of all ages. He has therefore, by his running during the summer, proved himself to be a good fair three-year old, and whom we have no reason to suppose has gone back from his usual form. By way of distinguishing him from the others, we will call him "the old one," although he is but three years old.

In the early part of this chapter we mentioned the weights yearlings and two-year olds carried, and the lengths they ran when they were engaged to run in their own separate classes; we also gave the difference of the weights between the two and three years old, whenever they had to run with horses of all ages. The former, on such occasions, giving to the latter from two stone to two stone one, two, three, or four pounds, depending on the length of the course and the weights the two-year olds have to carry, as from six to seven stone, or seven stone two. But as we are now about to try colts instead of running them, we shall deviate from the above-mentioned weights; and it is to be recollected, that, although

nominally two-year olds, they are above three. As there is nothing jadish about them, and as the Derby meeting is not far distant, we will try them a mile and a quarter. On the young ones we will put six stone seven pounds, and on the old one, the trial horse, (the three-year old), we will put eight stone seven; this will be giving to the trial horse a year and eight pounds, which is of course more than any two-year old could give to a three-year old, where the running properties of the former and the latter are equal, allowing for the difference of their ages. The term "year," in the common acceptation of the word, means that one horse gives to another, or others, so many pounds weight, in public running, according as their ages may vary, where the younger horse runs the length of the older; but when a horse is known to possess great superiority from having won any great stake, as the Derby at Epsom, or the St. Leger at Doncaster, or in a handicap, such horse is generally highly weighted, to bring him on a fair equality with the others.

But to return to our trial. Having arranged the length of the trial ground, and the weights the trial horse and the colts are to carry in run-

ning over it, our attention will next be directed to the boys we are to put up to ride them. In the fifth chapter of this volume, I recommended the training groom to select from among his exercise boys half a dozen in whom he can place the greatest confidence. These six boys, it is to be taken for granted, that the groom for a couple of years has spared no pains in instructing, in the riding not only of different horses, but also of difficult ones. By attending to the instructions of the groom, these boys will in a short time become strong on horseback, and in good riding condition, and are thus enabled to put the groom's orders into practice in the riding of any particular horse. These boys will often have to be put up to ride many of the light weights privately as well as publicly. We will suppose that the groom has selected, out of the above six boys, two of the lightest and best riders, with the most patient tempers and still tongues, and that they have had to look after the two above-mentioned two-year old colts from the time of their first coming into training as yearlings; for the sake of brevity we will call them Sam and Bill; the former looking after the best colt, and the latter looking after the second best. These two boys

we intend to ride the colts in their present trials, and on the trial horse we will put our own jockey, who is, as we have described, an honest man, and in whom the strictest confidence may be placed. Now, it may so happen from our best colt being so very superior, that he may, in running the trial at the weights and length mentioned, beat the three-year old—the trial horse. The latter may, unknown to us, have gone back some few pounds; that is, he may not now be in as good running form as we supposed him to be; in which case we could not say for certain, that our colts had for the whole length of the trial ground been gradually drawn out to the top of their pace. To prevent our being deceived in this respect, we will put in, to go with the colts in the trial, a good four-year old, lightly weighted, and we we will put upon him Charles, our head lad. But we do not select this four-year old as having any thing to do with the trial, but only to go up near the head with the colts, so that in case the trial horse should be getting beat near the conclusion, the four-year old may come on and finish them at their best pace, without any attempt to defeat them.

We will now proceed to explain the method

of weighing the jockey, the lad, and the two boys who are to ride them in their trials. In Vol. I. p. 22, I recommended that there should be kept in the training groom's study one of the dial plate weighing-machines, to which of course there is to be attached a weighing-chair, (for a description of this chair, see again Vol. I. p. 261). It is to be observed, that there should not be, on the premises of any racing establishment, either private or public, any other convenience for the riders to be weighed than the one above-mentioned; if there is, the boys will be frequently weighing each other, whereby they will all accurately ascertain their weights, at least this was the practice amongst exercise boys when I was one myself. This machine is so constructed, that the person who is being weighed, if he sits properly back in the chair, is unable to see the index on the dial plate, and as the index immediately on his rising points to 0, he is of course unable to ascertain how much he weighed. This is a matter of some importance, as the training groom is thus enabled to conceal their exact weight from the jockeys and boys, more especially the latter, if they are too much inclined to talk. Of course, the trainer admits only one at a time into his room to be weighed, and makes a me-

morandum of the precise weight of each. Having ascertained their exact weights, he has next to calculate how much each will require to make up the proper weight for the particular horse he may be going to ride in the trial, and this is done by means of his loaded saddles and trusses, all of which should be privately marked according to the weight of each. (For the method of making racing saddles and trusses, and the various occasions on which they are to be used, see Vol. I. p. 216).

Some of my readers may perhaps be of opinion, that the secrecy I have recommended on this as upon many other occasions is quite unnecessary, especially in a private trial; but a very slight acquaintance with the turf will convince them of the propriety of these precautions. In the third volume I shall have to describe a still more secret method of making up the weights of the riders, when we come to try the horses of all ages; and more particularly so, when public jockeys are put up to ride horses that may be engaged in any very great match or stakes, and which horses may be standing to be trained at a public racing establishment.

Notwithstanding we have been thus particular in laying down injunctions for secrecy in weighing riders for trials or races, yet no precautions can dispense with the necessity of a perfect good understanding, as regards racing, between the private training groom and the private jockey belonging to the racing establishment of any nobleman or gentleman, and strict integrity towards their employer; if this does not exist, they should be parted; for, unless the above two men agree to do the best they can for their employer, the business of the establishment cannot go on with that certainty with which it ought. But from the description we have given of our jockey, and from the long and repeated experience we may be supposed to have had of his integrity in all matters of racing in which he has been engaged, it is not to be apprehended that any jealous suspicion can exist between him and the training groom. When the jockey is wanted to ride, the trainer apprizes him of it in due time, as well as of the weight, if a light one, as perhaps eight stone, he will require him to be on such a day. The jockey instantly prepares, by wasting or punishing, (taking but small portions of food), to get himself down to the weight. But when

the weight he is ordered to ride is very high, the requisite increase is effected by means of a loaded saddle or trusses, or indeed, perhaps, by both. While the jockey is thus employed, the trainer quietly by himself in his study makes up with the saddles and trusses the weights which the two boys Sam and Bill are to ride the two two-year olds in the approaching trial; and as to the weight Charles, the head lad, on the four-year old, should be, it is not of much importance, except that he must not exceed eight stone and a half. With respect to the four-year old, care must be taken that he is in sufficient good form to come, if necessary, his best pace in the conclusion of the trial.

The night previous to the horses being tried, they are of course to be set, that is, their setting muzzles are to be put on the last thing at night, or early in the morning, depending on what sort of horses they may be, as well as the time of day when they are to run the trial. The training groom and head lad in due time take the trial saddles into the stables, and put them securely on the four horses in question, who have been previously bridled and brought round in their stalls, their heads being attended to by the boys

who look after them, and stripped of their standing clothes. To prevent the chance of the saddles shifting, those who are to ride the horses are to be handed up by the leg in the usual manner, instead of being allowed to get on the horses while they are standing in the stalls, by the help of the stirrup. The riders being mounted, and having knotted their reins, the stable door is opened, and the horses are now ridden out to the trial ground, attended by the groom on his hack, at a proper distance, who usually at this time gives his orders as to how the trial is to be run.

We will here make a few general remarks on the subject of riding trials, as the manner in which horses are to be ridden in them differs so very widely from that in which they are to be ridden in their races. Now the reader is to bear in mind that the trial horse, virtually speaking, has nothing to do with respect to how the other horses he is trying may run on with him; for, as soon as they are started, the jockey on the trial horse is to commence making such running with him immediately from the start as he thinks he can safely rate him on at for the whole length of the trial ground; that is, he is

made to come for the above length in as short a time as he possibly can without being over marked, and to have been so evenly and gradually well rated by the jockey as to have nothing more left in him in the way of running. The proper pace our jockey will be easily able to manage, as he has ridden all the horses in the establishment, both in public and in private, and knows well the best pace they can come in their different lengths. Now the head lad, Charles, and the two boys, Sam and Bill, whom we have described as having to ride in the trial, know pretty well from experience what they are going about. The two latter are fully aware that they are to get the colts they ride well away from the start with the trial horse, and that they are to stay with him in the trial as long as they can, and to beat him as far as they can; but they know also that they are not to do either the one or the other of those things at the expense of abusing their colts, by persevering too much with them, or by having recourse to too severe means, as that of spurring or striking them unnecessarily.

After what has just been said of the knowledge of the jockey, the head lad, and the two boys, we

will return to the training groom, whom we left about to give his orders how the horses are to be ridden; and although these orders are concise, still they are sufficiently expressive, and are quite intelligible to those who have been brought up in the stables from early life. Speaking to the jockey, as to how he is to ride the trial horse, he says—"As soon as you see the young ones on their legs, and settled in their stride, go you away home with your horse in as short a time as you can, without over-setting him." To Sam, who is on the best colt, he says—"You know your colt is a free resolute goer, therefore be sure you keep a steady hold of his head, and sit as quiet and as still on him as you possibly can. As Mr. Day on the trial horse will, I expect, go fast enough for both of you, so do not you attempt on any account whatever to draw your colt out. If Mr. Day finds his horse in getting near home is beat for pace, he will in due time call to Charles on the four-year old to come head and girth with you, which will be quite a sufficient challenge for your colt to finish the length, and pass the winning-post at his best pace, which is what I want your colt to do; and as he is a free ready comer, this is I expect what he will do, without any aid of yours, as hustling, spurring,

or striking him. Therefore mind, Sam, you have nothing to do but to keep a steady hold of his head." The orders he gives to the boy on the second best colt will be to this effect—"Bill, you know what a thick idle colt that is of yours; be sure you do not let him humbug you. As soon as you have got him well away with the other horses, and he has settled in his stride, do not forget to observe, sufficiently early, the pace the trial horse is going, and be sure you stop with him as long as you can. I mean by this, you are to make use of your colt in good time, by getting busy at his head and rousing him along; but observe, I do not mean that you are to persevere with him too severely, (never attempt any thing of that sort, and particularly with a yearling or two-year old). What I want you to do with your colt on the present occasion is, as soon as he is settled in his stride, to begin immediately, but gradually, to draw him well out, by keeping fast hold of his head; and, as you find it necessary from the pace the trial horse is going, you must now and then hustle your colt along; and further, if you find by the pace they have been going, and that are likely to go on with it in finishing the length of the trial ground, and it may appear to you too fast for your colt, although

in reality it may not be the case, to be certain you are right, you had better take a good pull at him, and prick him on once or twice with your spurs, speaking sharply to him at the same time; then get up your whip and flourish it over either his head or your own, and if he do not increase his stride from being thus called upon to come in concluding the trial, if he is up and well placed among them, (but not otherwise on any account), give him a blow or two to make him finish at his best pace, just as he is about passing the winning-post. Now, unless you ride your colt as I have ordered you to do, he is so very craving a one we may be deceived in him." The orders to be given to Charles, who rides the four-year old, will be very concise, as the head lad is always supposed, from long experience, to know well what he is going about. The trainer therefore need only say to him—"Charles, as the trial ground is quite straight, there is no great occasion for you to study much about the choice of places at the start. If Mr. Day in going off takes the whip-hand, take your place sufficiently wide on the outside of them, and just keep your horse's head up or near to the quarters of the two colts, for, in case Mr. Day should find his horse not quite fast enough in the finish to draw our

best colt pretty well out to the top of his pace, he will turn his head and give you a hint to come closer up with your horse; therefore mind to keep your eye upon him, and if you find he wishes you to take up the running, take a pull at your horse, and go immediately up head and girth with the best colt, for I expect he will be in the front; and, if you find it necessary to urge him to the top of his pace, you may in the last few strides home go a little farther up and lay head and neck with him, but on no account defeat him. If he should have shaken off the other two horses in the running, he will have done all I want him to do in this trial; so be sure you let him win from your horse. I would not on any account he should be disappointed of winning the trial under the circumstances I am now stating to you."

The trainer then gives the following general directions:—"All of you go down a little below the start, and, having given your horses a short gallop to set them on their legs, pull them up and turn them about; then walk them up as evenly and as quietly as you can towards the start. When Mr. Day sees you are all ready, he will give you the word—Off! You two boys at-

tend to the running that may be made for you, and be sure neither of you deviate in any way from the orders I have given you as regards the riding of each of your colts."

The trainer now leaves the horses that are about to be tried, and goes on his hack up towards the winning-post, placing himself at such a suitable distance in width from it, and in length within or below it, as to give him an opportunity of seeing as much of the running as he possibly can, and not only how each horse may be placed in the trial, but how well each of them, after being challenged or called upon to come, can finish the length in passing the winning-post.

We will suppose that the most material part of the trial was run strictly according to the trainer's orders, and that the colts have come in it as follows:—Our best colt having beat the old one, the trial horse, cleverly, nearly half a distance from home, and when challenged by the four-year old to come, ran on and won the trial—our second best colt being a good second to him. The general practical directions we have here stated as to the trying of two-year olds should not be deviated from without suffi-

cient reason. If we want to find out the end of a good one, we must try him as to weight reasonably high, and in the same proportion we must increase the length of the trial ground, so as to give to a colt that may be considered a regular flier sufficient scope to shew (without allowing him to be abused) the powers he may possess, as to how fast or how long he can go under a weight a little higher than he has a right to carry. We have therefore stated this second trial to have terminated thus, merely to shew how we are to make the most we can of such a colt as we have represented our best one to be; and in the next chapter we shall recommend how the groom is quietly to turn those matters over in his own mind.

The above trial is supposed to have taken place at our home stables about the middle of March, just previously to our travelling the whole of our horses off to Newmarket, at which town we will now consider them to have arrived. From this time to the running for the Derby, which will be this year on the seventh of June, we shall have about twelve weeks to do what we think is best for our colts. Of this time we will take three weeks to give to all our horses, according as

their constitutions and engagements will permit, a couple or three doses of physic each. This we advise being done for the purpose of taking the little staleness out of them which the work they have been doing to get them ready for their trials may have occasioned, as well as to refresh them after their travelling. When they have recovered from their physic, we shall have eight weeks left to get our colts and horses ready to run; the former for the Derby, and the latter for whatever engagements they may be entered in.

The time we have here allowed is quite as long as is necessary for getting horses ready to run that have previously been trained or treated in the way we have already mentioned, as by keeping them longer, provided they have been on dry nutritious food, without physic, would be more likely to injure than improve them. Light flighty horses, however, require but a very short time indeed to get them ready to run; consequently they require little or no physic; but it is a very different thing with horses of strong constitutions; that sort of horses require, according to their ages and the work they have been doing, and the races they have run, to be physicked at proper intervals, about the time we

have mentioned, so as to cool and refresh them. Unless this plan is had recourse to with them, they will not only get stale in their conditions, but they will get hot and feverish, and be more subject to fall amiss from attacks of inflammation.

CHAPTER XXV.

THE TRAINING GROOM'S REFLECTIONS, AFTER HAVING TRIED A COUPLE OF COLTS, BOTH AS YEARLINGS AND AS TWO-YEAR OLDS, WITH THE OPINION HE HAS FORMED OF THEM AS TO HOW THEY MAY RUN.

In this chapter it is my purpose to state what further is to be done with the two colts which we are supposed to have been trying as yearlings and two-year olds. The trainer, in musing over the pros and the cons relative to the two colts, but particularly as to the best one, with which he thinks he has a right to win the Derby, says—"It is true we have only tried him privately, yet I think we have found him to be the best we ever did try, and he is not only a fine lengthy colt, but he is of good substance, and is therefore

likely to run on; his speed appears to be extraordinary; for, in his trials with the colts and fillies as a yearling, he went with great ease clean away from the whole of them, and beat the colt that was second to him several lengths, without his ever being called upon to do so. Now, we know from public running, that our second best colt is any thing but a bad one; for from the yearling race (already mentioned), in which he ran, we have a right to think pretty highly of him, and the more so, as he was not then, for want of a little more time, quite at his best form, and the race he ran in must, according to the account our jockey gave of it, have been truly run, with all but our own colt, and he was well up as a third; and the whole of them must have come their best pace for as long a length as they could in the running, as the other three colts, admitting they were bad ones, could never have been beat so very far from home as they were but by the pace; for, from what I saw of the race myself, they were beat from the early and resolute running that the winning colt made of his own accord, although with difficulty, against the colt that was second to him. But now, supposing from bad management that the three last colts that were in the race did not come out as

near their best form of running as they ought, they could not under those circumstances have taken as good a measurement of the colts in front of them as we have done; they must therefore be more in the dark than we are. However, we must not lose sight of them: if I should not meet them with any colt of ours, other men of course will, so that we shall know bye-and-bye whether they are good for any thing or not. In looking back to the trials of our two colts as two-year olds, the lengths they have run, and the weights they have carried in them, were unusually high for colts of their age; yet, as far as I could observe at each trial, our best colt appeared to win easy; and, in questioning Sam, who rode him, he said, " he did not think his colt had been drawn out to the top of his pace." Again, in looking back to the public running of our second best colt, to say nothing of what he met and beat in the country, in the October meeting at Newmarket, he won a good stake, running not only in a strong field, but also in good company, and which goes to prove him to be a pretty good colt. Therefore, from the above calculation, our best colt must not only be a regular flier, but I think he can run on. However, in his next trial, we

will see how fast and how long he can fly under the weight, and for rather a longer length than he will have to run in the first race. It is true that private trials are not at all times to be depended on like public running; but, as our colt is so very good-tempered, and from his having been tried in rather large parties, I do not think he is likely either to swerve or shut up when running in public; because, when we took him with the other horses to the April meeting, in our neighbourhood, (where our second-best colt ran), merely to accustom him to the crowd, he was but a yearling; yet, from the little I saw of him, he kindly followed the horses on each day of their running at the meeting, up between the rails of the course, through the crowd, to the passing of the winning post, without shewing any symptoms of either fear or vice; and, on questioning Charles, the head lad, who was on a hack riding with him, and Sam, who rode him, they both said he was not the least alarmed in going up between the rails, nor did he shew any symptoms of being so after he was pulled up, nor on his being walked about among the crowd on the outside the rails; and what goes further to prove this is, the colt, on returning home each day from the meeting, ate, drank, and rested well; in fact, he has al-

ways been a good doer, as well in as out of the stable. And, if we are fortunate enough to get him well to post, that is, if nothing happens to him, either from disease or accident, as he is well engaged, he will be likely to do us some good. I think, if he comes to post in his proper form, we have a right to win the Derby with him. This stake is not only an interesting one, but it is a respectable one to win, and it is also a valuable one; and, it being a play and pay race, it makes the betting P. P.; and, as we have both colts in the race, our second-best colt having good speed, and being so very stout, as from his public running he appears to be, it will, I think, be rather difficult for any party of horses to continue to run fast enough and long enough to draw him well out and beat him, before he gets sufficiently near home as to be within the length of rally in which our best colt can live or finish at near the top of his pace, when called upon by his jockey, or challenged by any horse in the company he is running with, to the passing of the winning post.

The trainer now begins further to calculate on what steps he had better take to ensure, as near as he possibly can, the winning of the above race with the colt in question. He says—We must

take every precaution to keep things as quiet as possible. Luckily, our stables and training ground are so privately situated, that what we have hitherto been doing with our colts, and more particularly as regards the best one, cannot be known; we may, therefore, be able to bring him out, not exactly as a dark horse, his pedigree being known; yet, as he has never started, we may expect, except among ourselves, to be able to prevent his getting up a very great favourite; if we can do this, he may be considered, in the betting market, as rather approaching to an outsider; the odds then would most likely be rather high against him, in which case he would come out as a dark horse with the public. Therefore, instead of betting round, we must begin to take the long odds that will in all probability be against our colt; and, although we have each of us money enough to back ourselves on in the losing of a small stake to the winning of a large one, there is no occasion for us to risk the losing of the former to win the latter, as there will be plenty of time for us to hedge our money before the race is run; or rather, our master, who luckily for us is a very good judge, in balancing his book will take care to do this little matter for us, as well as for himself, if he sees occasion

for it; so that, if our colt should be beat, we are, with regard to our money matters, but where we were; and, if he should win, each of us will draw a handsome stake. Our master, our jockey, and the head lad, have all very still tongues, and for their own sakes, in the present instance, they will take care to keep them so. But, with Sam and Bill, I must have some small quiet talk: for the time they have been in the stables they have kept very light; and, as they ride both so well, I have been obliged almost constantly to put them up to ride not only different horses, but very good ones; and whatever I have wanted to know, as to what any such horses were capable of doing in regard to the changes they may have made towards improvement in their gallops, sweats, and trials, I have at all times given those two boys the very best orders I possibly could, how they were to ride on all such occasions; and whenever I have thought proper to question them, after they have pulled up their horses, I have mostly found their answers to be pretty correct. Sam is a very patient rider, and, for the experience he has had, he is a tolerable good judge of pace. Bill is very strong and determined on horseback, and can go very near to making the most of a craving horse, in gradually drawing

him out to the top of his pace; so that for me to attempt to deceive these boys, as to what the two colts they have been looking after, and at all times have been riding in their exercise as well as in their trials, and particularly in the last one, can do, would be downright folly. Therefore, to make all as safe as we can, they must, if they wish it, be allowed to stand their money in the betting. As the time is now drawing near for us all to move off to Newmarket, and as our boys will be meeting with their old companions there, some of whom may endeavour to draw from Sam and Bill their opinions of the two colts they look after; or perhaps, through an unsuspected channel, some person may attempt to corrupt either or both of them, by offering them a bribe to tell what they know of their two colts, in which should they succeed it would destroy the chance we think we have got of doing some good for the stable, I will, to-morrow, with a view to prevent any thing of this kind from taking place, have some talk with Sam and Bill. I must also have much the same sort of talk with Tom, for he is a good judge of pace; and from the circumstance of my having so often to put him up to go before young ones at the time of their doing a bit of work, and on a horse too

that he knows can come from end to end; and as he also knows that we keep this same horse principally for the purpose of telling us a true story about our two and three-year olds; and has on this same horse, and for the same purpose, occasionally gone before the two colts in question; and will have to do the same sort of thing at Newmarket, previous to our trying them there at their last trial, as well also as at Epsom, when we are about to finish them for their races, he must have a pretty good idea of what we expect from our colts—we must not, therefore, if Tom chooses to stand his money, shut him out of the betting. Although none of those three boys know any thing of the weights they have been riding in private, yet they have a tolerable idea of what weights their colts ought to have carried in their trials, so as to enable us to judge, with some degree of accuracy, how they may be likely to run in public—I must therefore, when talking to those boys, shew them that I am placing some confidence in them.

CHAPTER XXVI.

THE TRAINING GROOM CONVERSING PRIVATELY WITH THREE OF HIS BEST RIDING BOYS.

The trainer takes an opportunity in due time, as on some morning after the stables are shut up, of saying to the boys Sam, Bill, and Tom, whom we have mentioned in the last chapter, "You will come to me in my private room, after you have had your breakfast." The boys having assembled in the room, the conversation that takes place between the parties will be much to the following effect:—"I have sent for you three boys, for the purpose of cautioning each of you to keep your tongues very still; not, I confess, that I have any reason to find fault with any of you for not having kept them so, as regards what any of the horses we have

hitherto had in the stables have been capable of doing; yet there is no harm in my putting all three of you on your guard just now; because, from what the two two-year olds that you, Sam and Bill, look after, have been doing here in their private trials, I have rather a good opinion of them, but particularly of your's, Sam." Who in reply may say—" I do not know what my colt may do in public, but I am sure he is the fastest I was ever on the back of in private: he has always hitherto, in the running of his trials, beat every thing he has been tried with, without my ever having had occasion to call upon him to come; all I have had to do, when riding him, has been to sit still on him, and keep a good steady hold of his head; he then appears to me to go quite away from his horses with great ease; so I do not think it is known yet how fast he can run." The trainer, in addressing the boy who looks after the second-best colt, and who has ridden him in public, says—" I have not a bad opinion of that colt of your's, Bill." And he would probably reply—" I like my colt very well; I know he is not as fast as Sam's, but he can come well home; I do not care what running any party of horses may make that my colt is running with; and the earlier they begin to do so, the better for my

colt, even if it is a little longer length than one of his year ought to come, provided the weight he has to carry is proportionably light, according to the increased length he may have to run. It must be a good one that can shake him off; he can not only come from end to end, but in taking a pull at him he always finishes well; and what goes to prove this is, I have never once had occasion to get up my whip, at least not to strike him with it, in either of the races I have ridden him. In the race he was beat in you said, when giving me my orders, ' That if I found the horses he had to run with were too fast for him, not to be severe upon him, for that he was not so well as he ought to be:' nor could he be so, for, as I told you, after weighing, he gave over running almost a distance before we came to the winning post; yet I do not think he ran in better company in that race than he did in any of his other races, but, as he was not well, I could not expect him to win." The trainer, in addressing himself to the third boy, says— " That horse of your's, Tom, has been going before these two colts when they have been doing any thing like a bit of work." Tom, in reply, says—" Yes, he has; and they have both

kept closer to the old horse than I remember any of their year ever to have done before; and, what is more, I think the old one is as fresh and as well as he ever was, for the length he usually comes." "Well, Tom, (says the trainer), we must keep that to ourselves. You are the only three boys in the stable that can have any idea of what the two colts we have been talking about may be likely to do, for, as you are aware, not one of the other boys has ever been on or near the ground when we have wanted to do any thing of any consequence with them. Do not, on any account, say a word to the other boys in our own stable, or to any one out of it, about the colts. If you three keep your own counsels, we may do some good for the stable; and if any of you like to stand the chance of losing a small stake to the winning of a large one, you may, as our master will let you stand your money on his book. And, that you may have no occasion to be making bets with the boys of other stables, only tell me, in a day or two, what you can afford to stake, and I will take care to get it done for you. Why I have taken this opportunity of talking to you just now is, as you know we shall soon move off with the horses to Newmarket, had I not cautioned you as I have

now done, one or the other of you might unintentionally let slip among your old companions that we had in our stable a better nag or two than the world knew about. Were either of you to have been so unguarded, it would soon have been publicly known, which would have set aside any good we could fairly have done for ourselves. Another thing I want to guard you against is, that when at Newmarket, or any other racing place, or at any racing establishment to which we may go with the horses, never to be taken by surprise by any person whatever that may unexpectedly come up and talk to you, with a view of drawing you out as to what knowledge you may have with respect to the stables, or as to the properties, either good or bad, of any horse you may look after. Should a person come up to ask you questions on such matters, tell him, what is very likely to be true, that you do not know any thing about the horses in the stables, and then walk away from him. If such person should still persevere with you to obtain his object, and perhaps offer you a bribe, shew him that you are above any such dishonourable conduct, by looking at him as you have been taught to look at a vicious horse, while attending to his head when he is being scraped

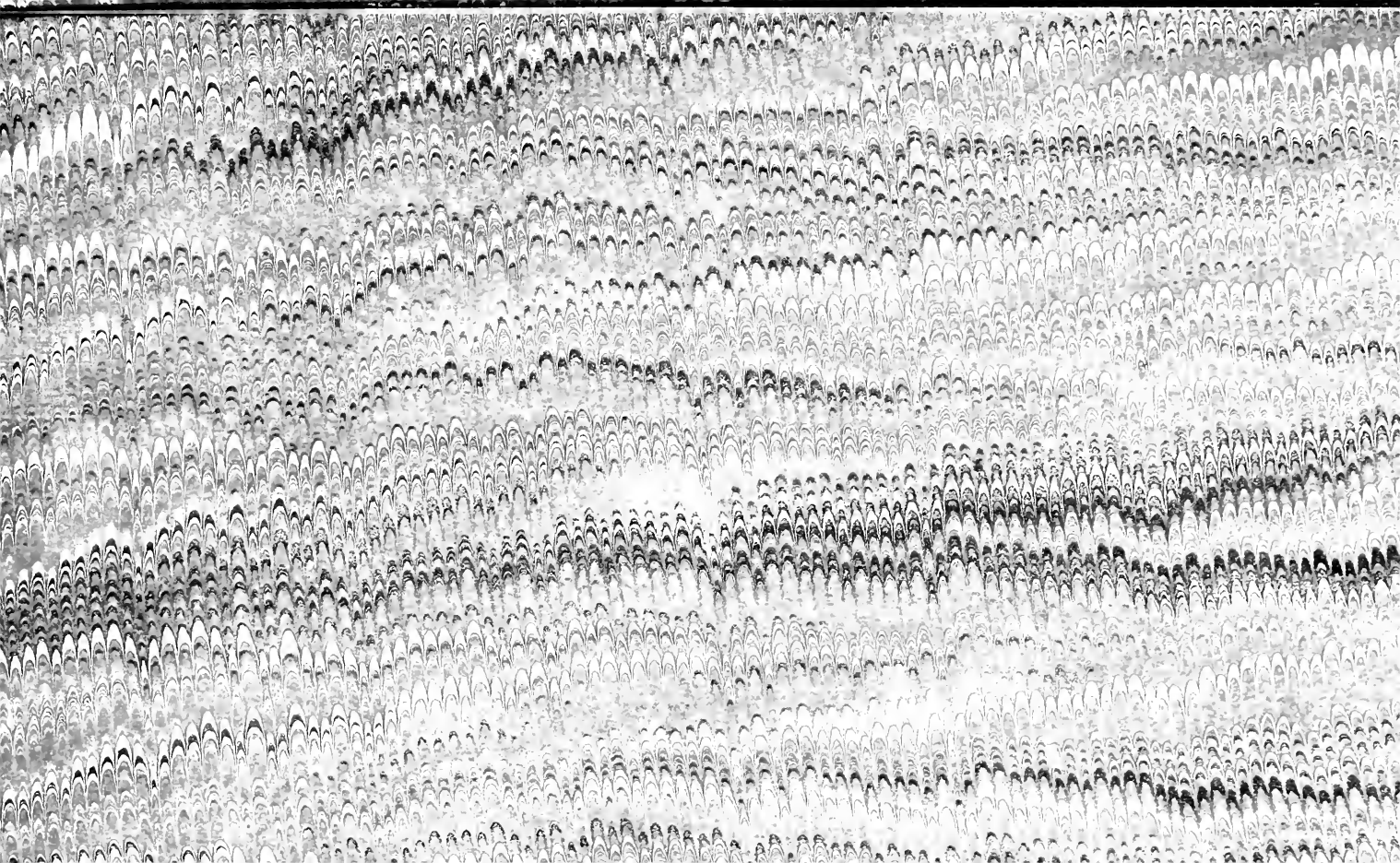
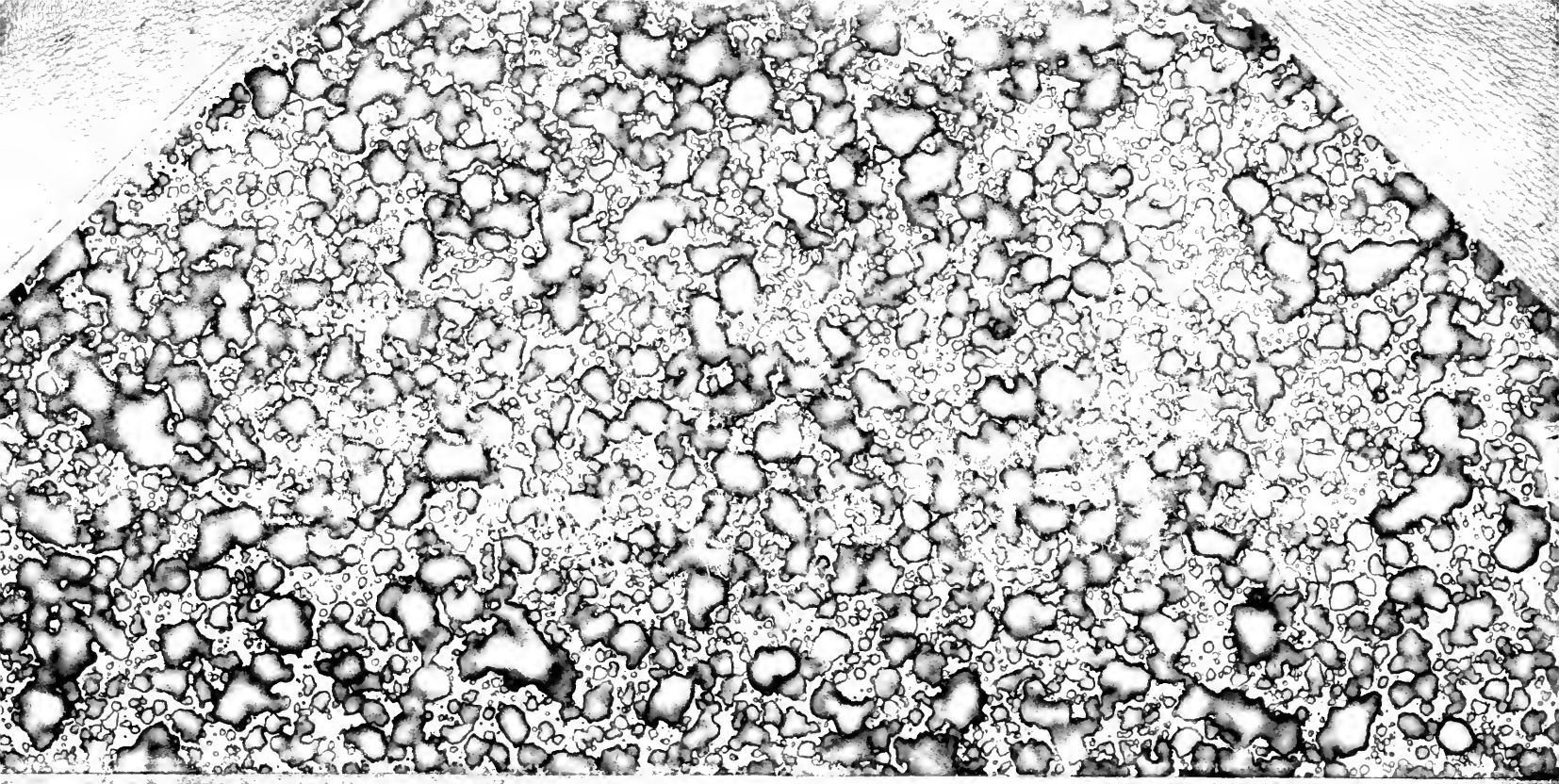
after his sweat; that is, look at such a man full in the face, fix both your eyes on his, and then again tell him that he is only losing time to attempt to go flat-catching with you, for that you are too good a judge to be landed as one. If you talk to him in this way, he will most likely not trouble you any more. Always bear in mind, boys, that honesty, as I have often told you before, is the best policy, and that secrecy is one of the very essential requisites we should all possess. There is no harm in your keeping your ears open, but, whatever you do, be sure you keep your mouths shut as regards any knowledge you may have of what any of the horses in our stables may be capable of doing. I feel very confident you will all do as I have desired you, in being particularly careful what you say on the subject of horses to any description of person whatever. You may now go."

Here ends the conversation between the groom and his boys; and here also ends the second volume. In the third we shall endeavour to lay down all the matter that further concerns our two two-year olds, as in what manner they are again to be tried previous to their coming out to

run, and at what time we shall travel them to Epsom, and, when there, how we shall finish them as to the length and pace they will have to go in their work, when the time is drawing near for them to come to post, and how they are each to be set agreeable to their constitutions; with orders to the jockeys how each colt is to be ridden, so as to insure us, barring an accident, every prospect of honestly winning that valuable and very interesting stake, the Derby.

In this volume we have principally confined ourselves to the training of horses for the Newmarket lengths; but in the ensuing volume, which is preparing for the press, where we shall have to describe the training of horses of all ages, we will make our remarks on the varying of the different lengths horses are to go in their work to bring them sufficiently stout to come the lengths they may be wanted to run upon any occasion; and in other chapters will be found all the necessary information on the entering, training, running, and riding, of different horses according to their ages, the lengths they have to run in their races, with all other practical details connected with horse racing; and, if it is not considered that we may be entering too far

into the secrets of office, we intend to make some further remarks on the subject of money matters.

END OF VOL. II.

LONDON:
W. M'DOWALL, PEMBERTON ROW,
GOUGH SQUARE.